



Islamic History At a Glance

By
Razi Ata Karim
Khalifa
of
Shaikh Maulana Hakim Mohammed Akhtar
(Daamat Barakaatuhum)

ISLAMIC HISTORY AT A GLANCE

Web:- islamichistory.com

INTRODUCTION

The book in general has been written for the Muslims and specially for the young generation so as to know what our Prophet Mohammed SA, Sahaba (followers of Prophet SA), Tabayee (followers of Sahaba), Taba Tabayee (followers of Tabayee) and the Khulafa (Caliphs) had given sacrifices for spreading Islam, and what are those basic qualities which were present in their lives due to which people of the world accepted Islam.

It also gives us the lesson that Islam has spread by the moral characters, justice and kindness of the Muslims.

Since the fall of Muslim Khilafat (Caliphate) almost a century has passed, but the Ummat (Muslim people) could not rise up again only because of not following the complete deen (religion) collectively.

Islam has stopped spreading in the world and rather going out from the lives of Muslims because we have lost those qualities and character which were present in the lives of Sahaba RA.

Now the only solution for getting out of this disgrace, humility and calamity is, to go through the Islamic history and find out how the Sahaba followed the teachings of Prophet Mohammed SA and developed those qualities by which they spread the Islam and attained the honour and grace in the eyes of Almighty Allah(God), and then Almighty Allah blessed them in the holy book Quran with the glad tidings of "Allah is pleased with them and they are pleased with Allah".

Then and then only we Muslim can attain the honour and grace in the human society, and get the success of this life and the life hereafter.

Reference Books

Following books have been referred in compiling this "Islamic History"

1-Seerat Ibne Hisham (Urdu)	by Ibne Hisham	209H
2-Tabqaat Ibne Saad "	by Ibne Saad	230H
3-Tareekh Ibne Kaseer "	by Ibne Kaseer	774H
4-Tafseer Ibne Kaseer "	"	"
5-Tareekhul Khulafa "	by Jalaluddin Suyuti	911H
6-Al-Farooq "	by Shibli Nomani	1333H
7-Seeratun Nabi "	by Syed Sulaiman Nadvi	1373H
8-Tareekh-e-Millat "	from Nadvatul Mosannifeen-Dehli	1400H

9-Life of Prophet Mohammed SA by Haikal-Egypt

The dates have been reconfirmed from:-

- 1-Encyclopedia Americana
- 2-Encyclopedia Britannica

Razi Ata Karim
Khalifa of
Shaikh Maulana Hakeem Mohammed Akhtar
Damat Barkatuhum

INDEX**VOL - 1****Prophet Mohammed SA*****Historical Background******Prophets Race******Makki Period******Madni Period******Important Incidence******Miracles of Prophet SA******Ghazwat*****VOL - 2****Khilafat-e-Rashida*****1-Khalifa Abu Bakr RA.******2-Khalifa Umar RA.******3-Khalifa Usman RA.******4-Khalifa Ali RA.*****VOL - 3A****Khilafat-e-Banu Umayya*****1-Ameer Mua'via RA bin Abu Sufyan bin Harab bin Umayya******2-Yazeed bin Mua'via******3-Marwan bin Hakam******4-Abdul Malik bin Marwan bin Hakam bin Abul Aas bin Umayya******5-Waleed bin Abdul Malik - 51 yrs.******6-Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik - 39 yrs.******7-Umar bin Abdul Aziz bin Marwan******8-Yazeed bin Abdul malik-34 yrs.******9-Hisham bin Abdul Malik-55 yrs.******10-Waleed bin Yazeed bin Abdul Malik-36 yrs.******11-Yazeed Naqis bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik-35 yrs.******12-Ibraheem bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik-******13-Marwan bin Mohammed bin Marwan-60 yrs.*****List of Khulafa****List of Ameer in Spain****VOL - 3B****Khilafat-e-Banu Umayya in Andalus/Spain*****1-Abdur Rahman bin Mua'via bin Hisham bin Abdul Malik******2-Hisham 1st. bin Abdur Rahman******3-Hakam 1st. bin Hisham******4-Abdur Rahman 2nd. bin Hakam******5-Mohammed 1st. bin Abdur Rahman******6-Munzir bin Mohammed******7-Abdullah bin Mohammed******8-Abdur Rahman 3rd.bin Mohammed******9-Hakam 2nd.bin Abdur Rahman 3rd.******10-Hisham 2nd.bin Hakam 2nd.******11-Mohammed 2nd.bin Abdul Jabbar bin Abdur Rahman******12-Sulaiman bin Hakam 2nd.******Mohammed 2nd. (Again)******Hisham 2nd. (Again)******Sulaiman (Again)***

*13-Abdur Rahman Murtaza bin Abdul Malik
Ali bin Hamood (shiya')*

Qasim bin Hamood (shiya')

Yahya bin Hamood (shiya')

14-Abdur Rahman bin Hisham

15-Mohammed bin Abdur Rahman

16-Hisham 3rd.bin Mohammed

List of Khulafa

Discoveries & Development

VOL - 3C

Kingdom in Spain

Al-Moravid enter Spain

1-Yousuf

2-Ali bin Yousuf

3-Tashfeen bin Ali

4-Abu Ishaq bin Tashfeen

Al-Mohads Kingdom

1-Yousuf bin Abdul Momin

2-Mansoor

3-Abu Mohammed

4-Al Mamoon

5-Ibne Hawad

6-Arakan

Mohammed bin Al Ahmar on Gharnata & Hunain.

Jamayat bin Zayd on Balancea.

Muslim kingdom remained in Ashbelia, Tulaitla & Gharnata only.

Rulers after Banu Umayy

Ashbelia

1-Qazi Abul Qasim.

2-Al Motazid.

3-Leghaya.

4-Al Mo'tamid.

5-Yousuf bin Tashfeen (African Kingdom).

Tulaitla

1-Ismaeel.

2-Yahya Mamoon.

3-Yahya Qadir.

Gharnata

1-Shah Mohammed Al Ahmar

2-Shah Mohammed Saani (2nd.)

3-Shah Mohammed Saalis (3rd.)

4-Shah Abul Juyoosh Nasr

5-Shah Abul Waleed Ismaeel

6-Shah Mohammed Rabea'(4th.)

7-Shah Abul Hajjaj Yousuf Awal (1st.)

8-Ismaeel/Abu Saeed

9-Mohammed Khaamis (5th.)

- 10-Yousuf Saani (2nd.)
- 11-Mohammed Saadis (6th.)
- 12-Yousuf Saalis (3rd.)
- 13-Mohammed Sabia' (7th.)
- 14-Yousuf Rabea' (4th.)
- 15-Mohammed Saamin (8th.)
- 16-Usman Ismaeel
- 17-Mohammed Taasia'(9th.)
- 18-Mohammed Aa'shir (10th.)
- 19--Shah Abul Hassan

VOL - 4A

Khilafat-e-Banu Abbas

- 1-Safah bin Imam Mohammed
- 2-Mansur bin Imam Mohammed
- 3-Mehdi bin Mansur
- 4-Hadi bin Mehdi
- 5-Haroon bin Mehdi
- 6-Ameen bin Haroon
- 7-Mamoon bin Haroon
- 8-Motasim bin Haroon
- 9-Wasiq bin Mo'tasim
- 10-Motawakal bin Mo'tasim
- 11-Muntasir bin Motawakkil
- 12-Mustaeen bin Motawakkil
- 13-Mo'taz bin Motawakkil
- 14-Mohtadi bin Waist
- 15-Motamid bin Motawakkil
- 16-Motadhid bin Mowaffiq
- 17-Muktafi bin Motaddhid
- 18-Muqtadir bin Motaddhid
- 19-Qahir bin Motaddhid
- 20-Raazi bin Muqtadir
- 21-Muttaqi bin Muqtadir
- 22-Mustakfi bin Muktafi
- 23-Motee bin Muqtadir
- 24-Tay bin Motee'
- 25-Qadir bin Ishaq
- 26-Qaim bin Qadir
- 27-Muqtadi bin Mohammed
- 28-Mustazhar bin Muqtadi
- 29-Mustarshid bin Mustazhar
- 30-Rashid bin Mustarshid
- 31-Muqtadhi bin Mustazhar
- 32-Mustanjid bin Muqtadi
- 33-Mustadhi bin Mustanjid
- 34-Nasir bin Mustadhi
- 35-Zahir bin Nasir
- 36-Mustansir Abu Ja'far bin Zaahir
- 37-Mustasim bin Mustansir

Vol - 4B

Khilafat banu Abbas in Egypt only

- 38-Mustansir Ahmed bin Zaahir
- 39-Hakim bin Ali bin--bin Mustarshid
- 40-Mustakfi bin Hakim
- 41-Wasiq bin Mustamsik bin Hakim
- 42-Hakim bin Mustakfi
- 43-Motadhid bin Mustakfi
- 44-Motawakal bin Motaddhid
- 45-Wasiq bin Ibraheem
- 46-Mustasim bin Ibraheem
- Again-Motawakkil bin Motaddhid
- 47-Mustaeen bin Motawakkil
- 48-Motadhid bin Motawakkil
- 49-Mustakfi bin Motawakkil
- 50-Qaim bin Motawakkil
- 51-Mustanjid bin Motawakkil
- 52-Motawakal bin Ya'qub
- 53-Mustamsik bin Motawakkil
- 54-Motawakal Alallah 3^d

List of Khulafa

Discoveries & Development

Baghdad after Khilafat

Kingdoms

VOL - 5

Khilafat-e-Usmania

Background

- 1-Ameer/Sultan Usman Khan bin Artughral
- 2-Sultan Aur Khan bin Ameer Usman.
- 3-Sultan Murad Awal bin Aur Khan
- 4-Sultan Bayazeed Awal bin Murad.
- 5-Sultan Mohammed Awal bin Bayazeed.
- 6-Sultan Murad Saani bin Mohammed Awal.
- 7-Sultan Mohammed Saani bin Murad Saani.
- 8-Sultan Bayazeed Saani bin Mohammed Saani.
- 9-Sultan Saleem Awal bin Bayazeed Saani.
- 10-Sultan Sulaiman Aa'zam bin Saleem.
- 11-Sultan Saleem Saani bin Sulaiman.
- 12-Sultan Murad Saalis bin Saleem Saani.
- 13-Sultan Mohammed Saalis bin Murad Saalis.
- 14-Sultan Ahmed Awal bin Mohammed Saalis.
- 15-Sultan Mustafa Awal bin Mohammed Saalis.
- 16-Sultan Usman Saani bin Ahmed Awal.
- 17-Sultan Murad Rabea' bin Ahmed Awal.
- 18-Sultan Ibraheem bin Ahmed Awal.
- 19-Sultan Mohammed Rabea' bin Ibraheem.
- 20-Sultan Sulaiman Saani bin Ibraheem.
- 21-Sultan Ahmed Saani bin Ibraheem.
- 22-Sultan Mustafa Saani bin Mohammed Rabea'.
- 23-Sultan Ahmed Saalis bin Mohammed Rabea'.
- 24-Sultan Mahmood Awal bin Mustafa.
- 25-Sultan Usman Saalis bin Mustafa.
- 26-Sultan Mustafa Saalis bin Ahmed Saalis.
- 27-Sultan Abdul Hameed Awal bin Ahmed Saalis.

- 28-Sultan Saleem Saalis bin Mustafa Saalis.*
- 29-Sultan Mustafa Rabea' bin Abdul Hameed Awal.*
- 30-Sultan Mahmood Saani bin Abdul Hameed Awal.*
- 31-Sultan Abdul Majeed Awal bin Mahmood Saani.*
- 32-Sultan Abdul Aziz bin Mahmood Saani.*
- 33-Sultan Murad Khaamis Bin Abdul Majeed.*
- 34-Sultan Abdul Hameed Saani bin Abdul Majeed.*
- 35-Sultan Mohammed Khaamis bin Abdul Majeed.*
- 36-Sultan Abdul Waheed Khan bin*
- 37-Sultan Abdul Majeed bin Abdul Waheed.*

List of Sultan

Architecture

Kingdom & Dynasties

Vol - 6

Hind Islamic History

1-Muslim Kingdom in Hind

Khilafat-e-Rashida Period

Khilafat-e-Banu Umaiya Period

Khilafat-e-Banu Abbas Period

2-Moghal Kingdom in Hind

Historical Background

600 AD.

Two great empires were ruling at the time of Prophet SA.

1-Byzantine/Roman Empire

Religion:- Christianity & Judaism/Jewish.

Ruling:- Europe, Anatolia, Shaam/Syria & Egypt.

2-Sasanid/Persian Empire

Religion:- Zoroastrianism

Ruling:- Persia, upto Indian border & Iraq.

PROPHET MOHAMMED SA**Age:-** 63 yrs.**Birth:-** 12 R.Awal=22 April 571 AD. In Macca**Death:-** 12 R.Awal 11H.=28 May 632 AD. In Madina**Prophethood:-** 610 AD. At age 40 yrs.**Migration:-** 622 AD. At age 53 yrs.**RACE****Ismaeel****Qidar to Adnan=37 generations****Adnan to Quraish(Fahar)=10 generations****Ghalib****Loui****Kaab--8th. Generation Umar RA.****Murra--7th. Generation Abu Bakr RA.****Kalab****Qussa--440 AD. Got the Power of Macca.****Abde Munaf--5th. Generation Usman RA.****Hashim****Abdul Muttalib--2nd. Generation Ali RA.****Abdullah****Mohammed SA.****Prophet SA Family****Father -** Abdullah. Died few months before birth of Prophet SA.**Mother-** Amna. Died at Prophet SA age 6.**Foster mother-** Haleema Saadya. Died at Umar caliphhood.**Gr. Father-** Abdul Muttalib. Age=120 yrs. Died at Prophet SA age 8.**Uncle=9**

1- Abbas RA.--88 yrs. Died 32H.

2- Hamza RA--56 yrs. Died 3H.

3- Haris

4- Abu Lahab-- Died 2H.

5- Zubair

6- Mugheera

7- Alghidzq

8- Qusum

9- Abu Talib--Died 10N.

Aunty=6

1- Safya RA.2-Ume Hakeem RA.3-Atka.4-Ameema.5-Arwa.6-Bara.

Wives=11

<u>Name</u>	<u>D/O</u>	<u>Age</u>	<u>Married</u>	<u>Death</u>	
1- Khadeeja RA.		65	15 BN	10N	
2- Aisha RA.	Abu Bakr	66	10N		58H
3- Sauda RA.	Zama	75	10N		24H
4- Hafsa RA.	Umar	63	03H		45H
5- Zainab RA.	Khazima	30	03H		04H
6- Ume Salma RA.	Abi Umayya	84	04H		62H
7- Zainab RA.	Jahash	55	05H	20H	
8- Juairia RA.	Haris	70	05H		56H
9- Ume Habiba RA.	Abu Sufyan	74	07H		55H

10- Safia RA.	Hai b Akhtab 6007H	50H	
11- Maimoona RA.	Haris 81 07H	61H	
12- Maria Qibtia Slave	07H	16H	
13- Raihana	Slave	10H	

Sons = 5**From Khadeeja RA.:-**

1- Qasim	2 yrs.	Macca
2- Abdullah	3 yrs.	Macca
3- Tayab		Macca
4- Tahir		Macca

From Marya Qibtia RA.:-

5- Ibraheem	1,5 yrs.	Madina 10H.
-------------	----------	-------------

Daughters = 4**From Khadeeja RA.:-**

<u>Name</u>	<u>Age</u>	<u>Birth</u>	<u>W/O</u>	<u>Married</u>	<u>Death</u>	<u>Grave</u>
1- Zainab RA.	31	10BN	Aas bin Rabi		8H.	Madina
2- Ruqaya RA.	22	07BN	Usman 13N		2H.	Madina
3- Ume Kulsoom RA.	27	07BN	Usman 03H	9H.		Madina
4- Fatima RA.	24	01 N	Ali	02H	11H.	Madina

Son in Law = 3

1- Usman RA.	81	H/O Ruqaya & Kulsoom	35H.	Madina
2- Ali RA.	63	H/O Fatima	40H.	Najaf/Kufa
3- Abul Aas RA.		H/O Zainab	12H.	

Gr. Sons = 5

1- Hassan RA.	45	S/O Ali/Fatima	3H.	49H	
2- Hussain RA.	57	"	4H.	61H	Karbala- Iraq
3- Mohassan RA.	Child	"		5H.	
4- Ali RA.		S/O Aas/Zainab		15H.	Battle of Yarmuk
5- Abdullah	6	S/O Usman/Ruqaya		04H.	

Gr. Daughters = 4

1- Ruqaya RA.		D/O Ali/Fatima		childhood
2- Ume Kulsoom RA.		D/O Ali/Fatima	W/O Umar RA.	
3- Zainab RA.				
4- Umama RA.	50	D/O Abul Aas/Zainab	W/O Ali RA.	50H.

Makki Period**Different Incidence****1N to 3N.**

-First revelation on Prophet SA. Sura Alaq
90.

-Glad tiding by Warqa bin Noufil of prophethood.

-Delay in revelation, and revelation of 2nd. Sura Waddoha # 93.

-Divine command of Salaat/Namaz (non obligatory).

-First converts of Islam:-

Khadeeja RA.

Ali RA.

Zayd bin Harsa RA.

Abu Bakr RA.

-Others acceptance of Islam by preaching of Abu Bakr RA.

Sabiqoon Al Awaloon:-

1-Usman bin Affan RA.

2-Zubair bin Awam RA.

3-Abdur Rehman bin Auf RA.

4-Saad bin Abi Waqas RA.

5-Talha bin Ubaydullah RA.

-Some other glorious Sahaba:-

Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah

Saeed bin Zayd

Abu Salma

Fatima binte Khattab- sister of Umar

Asma binte Abu Bakr

Khabbab bin Arat

Abdullah bin Masood

Abdullah bin Jahash

Jafar bin Abi Talib

Yasir

Ammar bin Yasir

Sohaib Roomi

Sumaya- First woman martyred .

Bilal

Abuzar Ghefari.

4N**Openly Inviting towards Islam**

Quranic verses were revealed to invite your relatives towards Islam.

Sura Hijr # 15. Ayat # 94**Sura Shura # 26. Ayat # 214 & 215.**

Prophet SA collected them on feast, Ali RA accepted Islam, rest of all denied.

Next time order came to call the nation towards Islam. Prophet SA climbed on Mount Safa and called the people towards Islam. None accepted and abused Prophet SA. Specially Abu Lahab & his wife. On which both were cursed in Sura Lahab.

First delegation of Quraish

The delegate of Quraish came to Abu Talib asking to stop his nephew from preaching, but he turned them back.

Preaching of Prophet SA in Akkaz Fair

Prophet SA went in the festival of Akkaz and invited people towards Islam. Amar bin Absa accepted Islam.

Speech of Abu Bakr RA

Savagely beaten and tortured. Every one thought him to be dead.

5N**Revelation of Sura Kausar**

Prophet SA. son Abdullah expired. Kuffar Macca became happy. Sura Kausar was revealed against the happiness of Kuffar, praising the dignity and fame of Prophet SA.

First migration to Habsha/Abyssenia

First migration of 11 men and 4 women to Habsha (Ethopia) in Rajab.

2nd. Delegation of Quraish

Prophet SA replied to Abujahal, Abu lahab and kuffar, that if you bring the sun on my one hand and the moon on the other hand I am not going to stop giving dawar.

Wickedness & Tortures by Abu Jahal & other Kuffar Quraish

Prophet SA and prominent Sahaba were also being tortured badly by Kuffar Quraish.

Story of wrestler Rakkana bin Yazeed

Rakkana challenged Prophet SA for bout and was defeated thrice. So he accepted Islam.

Questions of Quraish after consultation with jews

1-About Ashabe Kahaf:- Reply came in Sura Kahaf # 18. Verse # 10 to 27, people of cave.

2-About Zulqarnain:- Reply came in Sura Kahaf. Verse # 84 to 89.

3-About Soul:- Reply came in Sura bani Israel # 17. Verse # 85.

6N**Delegation of Quraish to Habsha**

When Sahaba migrated to Habsha Kuffar Quraish sent a delegation to the King Najashi of Habsha to bring them back. Jafar RA replied to the questions of King confidently satisfactorily. The King was pleased and refused to return the muslims. Announcement was made to treat with the muslims as the guest of the King.

First Hamza RA and then Umar RA accepted Islam.

7N**Besiegement of muslims in the george of Abi Talib & boycott of Quraish**

Quraysh and kuffar Macca boycotted Banu Hashim and Banu Al Muttalib and a treaty was hanged on 1st. Muharram inside Baitullah. They had to bear great hardships for about 3 years in the valley of Shabe Abi Talib, till the treaty was eaten away by white ants.

Prediction of Quran

The Persian defeated the Romans, destroyed Baitul Muqaddas and slaughtered 90,000 christians. Quran predicted that again the Romans will get victory. History proved that just after 9 years the Romans got victory on Persians, in the same year muslims got victory over Kuffar Quraish in Ghazwa Badar.

8N**Miracle of Splitting of moon**

During haj in Mina Quraish asked to split the moon. Prophet SA pointed towards the moon and it split into two.

This miracle was also seen in other parts of the world, but still they didn't accept Islam.

9N**Treaty of boycott eaten by white ants**

Prophet SA informed that the treaty has been eaten up by white ants. Abu Talib said to Quraish that if this information is correct would you end the boycott? Kuffar Quraish seeing the miracle ended the boycott.

Story of Tufail Dosi

Tufail narrates that I plugged my ears with cotton on the saying of Kuffar Quraish, but when I reached Prophet SA, I decided to hear him. When I heard his speech I accepted Islam.

10N

Khadeeja RA passed away.

Abu Talib passed away.

Aisha RA nikah with Prophet SA & marriage in 1H.

Prophet SA travelled to Taif for preaching Banu Saqeef. They behaved harshly and Prophet SA bled badly due to their stoning.

Acceptance of Islam by delegate of Habsha. The verses 52 to 55 of Sura Alqasa # 28, were revealed in favour of this delegate.

Listening of Quran by jinns and acceptance of Islam.

Prophet SA marriage with Sauda RA binte Zama(2nd.wife). She was the first to be married after Khadeeja RA

Prophet SA nikah with Aisha binte Abu Bakr RA.

11N

Musab bin Umair RA migrated to Madina and started teaching Islam in the house of Asad bin Zurara RA.

Abdullah ibne Maktoom, Ammar bin Yasir, Bilal & Abu Salama RA migrated to Madina.

On 27th. Rajab miracle of Asra & Meraj took place.(see miracle of Prophet SA.)

Divine command of 5 times Salat/Prayer was awarded at Meraj.

Title of Siddiq was given to Abu Bakr RA by Prophet SA on immediate acceptance of miracle of Meraj.

Following are the first 6 from Khazraj tribe of Madina who accepted Islam at the time of haj in Makka:-

1-Asad bin Zurara RA. 2-Auf bin Afra RA. 3-Rafe bin Malik RA. 4-Qutba bin Amir RA. 5-Uqba bin Amir RA.

6-Jabir bin Abdullah RA. They started preaching Islam in Madina.

12N

First Pact of Aqaba

Baite Aqaba Oola(first) took place, 12 persons from Madina accepted Islam and took oath of allegiance.

On request Musab bin Umair RA was sent with them for preaching Islam in Madina.

Saad bin Moaz & Usayd bin Huzayr RA accepted Islam on the hands of Musab RA.

Migration of Sahaba to Madina

Prophet SA allowed Sahaba to migrate to Madina.

1-Abu Salma RA. 2-Amir bin Rabiya RA with his wife. 3-Abdullah bin Jahash RA with his wife and his brother Abd bin Jahash RA. Then after other Sahaba started migrating.

13N

Second Pact of Aqaba

Baite Aqba Saani (second) took place, 73 men & 2 women sahaba from Madina accepted Islam in the valley of Aqaba Mina and requested Prophet SA to migrate.

Migration of other Sahaba

Umar and several other sahaba migrated to Madina.

14N.

Committee held in Darul Nadva to kill Prophet SA.

A young man from each tribe surrounded the house of Prophet SA to kill him as soon as he comes out in the morning. Prophet SA came out threw dust which blinded the eyes of Kuffar and he escaped to Cave of Saur.

Migration of Prophet SA

Prophet SA migrated to madina on 1st. R.Awal (13th. Sept. 622 AD). Started from cave of Saur and reached Quba on 8th. R.Awal (20th.Sept.622 AD.) On one camell Prophet SA, on second camell Abu Bakr RA and his slave Amir RA, and on third camell Abdullah bin Areeqat (Guide) was riding. In Quba 1st.masjid was built. Left Quba on Friday, prayed first juma on the way. On reaching Madina the camel Qaswa sat in the garden of Abu Ayub Ansari RA. He became the host of Prophet SA.

Story of Cave of Saur.(details in note).

Story of Suraqa bin Malik.(details in note).

Prophet SA arrived and stayed in Quba and made a mosque.

Prophet SA stayed in Abu Ayub Ansari RA house.

*Ali RA. Joined Prophet SA.in Quba.
After 7 months Zayd, Usama, 4 daughters of Prophet SA., Usman, Aas, Abdullah bin Abu Bakr, Aisha RA.and others migrated to Madina.*

Madni Period**1H.**

Abdullah bin Salam the first jew to accept Islam

Masjid-e-Quba completed.

Masjid-e-Nabvi built.

Abdullah bin Zubair the first Muhajir sahaba was born in Madina.

Marriage of Aisha RA(3rd.wife) with Prophet SA.

Call of Aazan was seen in dream by Abdullah and Umar RA.

Prophet SA. Sent 3 teams to check caravan of Quraish.

A platform called Suffa was made in the corner of Masjid Nabvi for poor Sahaba having no family. So called Ashabe Suffa.

Brotherhood between Muhajir & Ansar sahaba was made by Prophet SA till this time there were about 45 Muhajir sahaba.

The dry date tree on which Prophet SA use to take support while giving sermon started weeping when pulpit was made. Prophet SA embraced it then it came quiet.

Mischief of jews

The jews with enmity and jealousy entered in Islam as hypocrites and started trying to break the unity & brotherhood amongst the muslims.

2H.

Change of Qibla in Rajab.

Christian delegation from Najran.

Invitation for Musahila (Praying for curse on liars.

Revelation for Fasting in Ramzan.

Ghazwa Abwa/Wudan in Safar.(see ghazwat).

Ghazwa Buwat.(see ghazwat)

Ghazwa Al Ushayra (see ghazwat).

Ghazwa Safwan/Badar Oola. (see ghazwat)..

Sarya Saad bin Waqas RA.

Sarya Abdullah bin Jahash RA.

Ghazwa Badar Kubra in Ramzan. (see ghazwat)

Marriage of Ali RA with Fatima RA.

Migration of Zainab RA daughter of Prophet SA. She was wounded which caused abortion.

Ghazwa Saweeq/Banu Sulaym in Zilhaj(see ghazwat).

3H.

Ghazwa Zi Amar/Ghatfan/Najad in Safar (see ghazwat).

Ghazwa Bahran/Fura in R.Awal (see ghazwat).

Ghazwa Bani Qaynqah in Rajab (see ghazwat))

Sarya Zayd bin Harisa RA in Rajab.

Sarya Mohammed bin Muslima RA.

Muslima RA killed Kaab bin Ashraf jew who use to abuse Prophet SA.

Ghazwa Uhad in Shawal (see ghazwat)

Ume Kulsoom RA D/O Prophet SA married with Usman RA.

Hassan RA Gr.S/O Prophet SA was born.

4H.

Expedition of Abu Salma RA in Mhrm

Expedition of Abdullah bin Unays RA In Mhrm.

Marriage of Prophet SA with Zaynab RA binte Khuzayma (5th.wife).

Prophet SA married Ume Salma RA (6th wife) in Shawal.

Incidence of Rajee. (see note).

Expedition of Amar bin Umaya Zamri. (see note).

Expedition of Beer Maoona in Safar (see note).

Ghazwa banu Nazeer in R.Awal (see ghazwat)

Ghazwa Zatur Riqa in J.Sani (see ghazwat)

Ghazwa Badar the second in Shaban

(see ghazwat)

Birth of Hussain bin Ali Grandson of Prophet SA.

Prohibition of drinking wine revealed in Safar.

5H.

Ghazwa Daumatul Jandal in R.Awal (see ghazwat)

Ghazwa Khandaq/Ahzab in Shawal (see ghazwat)

Breach of Agreement by Banu Qurayza and bravery of Safya RA.

Acceptance of Islam by Naaym bin Masood and his political tactics in battle of Khandaq

Ghazwa bani Qurayza in Ziqad (see ghazwat)

Repentance of Abu Lubaba RA.

Arbitration of Saad bin Muaz RA.

Assassination of Hai bin Akhtab jew.

Martyrdom of Saad bin Muaz RA.

Campaign of Abdullah bin Ateeq RA. who murdered Salam bin Haqeeq jew(Abu Rafe).

Prophet SA married Umme Habiba binte Abu Sufyan RA. King Najashi rected the nikah.

Prophet SA married Zainab RA binte Jahash. She was cousin of Prophet SA.

Commandment of veil came in verses 53 & 59 of Sura Ahzab.

Adultry & fornication was prohibited and first few verses of Sura # 24 were revealed for its punishment.

6H.

Ghazwa bani Lehyan in R.Sani (see ghazwat).

Ghazwa Zi Qirad in J.Awal (see ghazwat).

Expedition of Zayd bin Harisa RA in J. Awal.

Expedition of Zayd bin Harisa in J.Sani

Expedition of Abdur Rahman bin Auf RA in Shaban.

Ghazwa bani Mustaliq in Shaban (see ghazwat)

Revelation of Quranic verses of Sura Al munafiqoon regarding hypocrisy of Abdllah bin

Ubay.

Prophet SA married Juvayria RA.

Story of Ifak and revelation of Quranic verses of Sura Noor regarding chastity of Aisha

RA.

Treaty of Hundaybia & Covenant of Ridhwan in Ziqad (see ghazwat)

Incident of Abu Baseer RA.

Migration of Umme Kulsoom RA daughter of Uqba and prevention of returning/marrying muslim women to infidels.

Divine command of haj revealed in Ziqad.

Prophet's delegates with letters to the kings inviting towards Islam.

7H.

Ghazwa Khyber in Mhrm.(see ghazwat)

Peace treaty with jews.

Prophet SA married Safya RA.

Zainab binte Hars wife of Salam bin Mashkam jew sent poisoned meat to Prophet SA.

Prophet SA chewed and spitted it saying it is poisoned.

Martyrdom Of Aswad Rayee.

Return of Muhajirs of Habsha/Ethopia to Madina. On return of Jafar RA Prophet SA exclaimed; I don't know what makes me more happy? The victory of Khyber or return of Jafar. 50 men and 16 women came from Habsha. Umme Habiba binte Abu Sufyan wife of Prophet SA was with them.

*Expedition of Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah RA.
 Umratul Qadha performed in Ziqad.
 Prophet SA married Maimoona RA binte Hars. Abbas uncle of Prophet SA arranged the matrimony.
 Acceptance of Islam by Khalid bin Waleed, Amar bin Aas & Usman bin Talha RA.*

8H.

*Ghazwa/Sarya Muta in J.Awal(see ghazwat).
 Glad tidings for the martyrs of Muta.
 Breaking of treaty of Hdaybia by Kuffar of Quraish.
 Preparation of attack on Makka and letter of Hatib bin Balta RA.
 Victory of Makka in Ramzan (see ghazwat).
 Acceptance of Islam by Ekrama bin Abu Jahal.
 Acceptance of Islam by Abu Qahafa father of Abu Bakr RA.
 Assassination of few Criminal enemy of Islam.
 Tawaf of Kaaba by Prophet SA and Sahaba RA.
 Entrance of Prophet SA inside Kaaba.
 Sermon by Prophet SA standing at the door of Kaaba.
 Handing over the key of Kaaba to Usman bin Talha.
 Worry of Ansar sahaba RA about settling of Prophet SA in Makka.
 Breaking of idol Uzza by Khalid bin Waleed RA.
 Ghazwa Hunayn in Shawal (see ghazwat).
 Ghazwa Taif in ziqad (see ghazwat).
 Prophet SA obligation on Hawazan.
 Acceptance of Islam by Malik bin Auf.
 Prophet SA made him the Chief of his tribe.
 Distribution of Booty obtained from Hawazan.
 Prophet's SA talk with Ansar. Happiness of Ansar sahaba on the stay of Prophet SA with Ansar in Madina.
 Performance of Umra by Prophet SA.
 Acceptance of Islam by Kaab bin Zohair RA. Prophet SA hearing the laudatory poem praising Prophet SA, he gifted his Yameni cloth sheet on his body to Kaab. So this poem is also known as Qaseeda Burda.*

9H.

*Ghazwa Tabuk in Rajab (see ghazwat).
 Prophet SA pray for rain.
 Demolition of Masjide Dharrar built by munafiqeen/hypocrites by the order of Allah.
 Story of Kaab bin Malik, Murara bin Rabi & Hilal bin Umaya RA, who remained behind in Ghazwa Tabuk.
 Martyrdom of Urwa bin Masood RA by his own tribe.
 Delegation of Banu Saqeef to Prophet SA.
 Prohibition of idolators/infidels to enter Haram-e-Makka.
 Funeral prayer of Abdullah bin Ubay hypocrite. Revelation came not to offer funeral prayer of Hypocrites on the concern of Umar RA.
 Revelation of Sura Fateh/Al Nasr.*

Delegates coming to Prophet SA

*Delegate of Banu Tameem
 " Banu Amir
 " Banu Saad bin Bakr
 " Banu Abdal Qais
 " Banu Haneefa
 " Hamdan*

" Najran
 " Kunda
 " Banu Tai
 " Tajeel

Acceptance of Islam by Ady bin Hatim Tai
 " " Prince of Hameer

10H.

Expedition of Khalid Bin Waleed RA to Banu Hars in J.Awal. They accepted Islam.
 Prophet SA sent Moaz bin Jabal & Abu Moosa Ashari RA to Yamen for preaching Islam.

Appointing of Governors

<u>Name</u>	<u>Place</u>
1-Mohajir Bin Umayya RA--	Sana - Yamen
2-Zayd bin Lubaid RA---	Hazar Maut
3-Adey bin Hatim RA---	Banu Tai & Asad
4-Malik bin Novayra RA--	Banu Hanzla
5-Ula bin Hadhrami RA---	Bahrain.

Hajatul Wida

Prophet SA left Madina on 25 Ziqad for performing haj.

11H.

Burial of Prophet SA

On 12/13 R.Awal Prophet SA expired in the lap of Aisha RA and buried in the house of Aisha RA at the age of 63 years.

LIST OF IMPORTANT INCIDENTS

<u>N/H Dates</u>	<u>AD Dates</u>	<u>Incidents</u>
	545	<i>Birth of Abdullah F/O Prophet SA.</i>
	571	<i>Incident of Elephant army.</i>
	Apr.571	<i>Birth of Prophet SA.</i>
	573	<i>Birth of Abu Bakr RA.</i>
	576	<i>Death of Amna m/o Prophet SA</i>
	578	<i>Death of Abdul Muttalib g.f/o Prophet SA</i>
	581	<i>Birth of Umar RA</i>
	582	<i>First travel to Sham by Prophet SA</i>
	585-590	<i>Battle of Fужjar</i>
	595	<i>Second travel to Sham by Prophet SA</i>
	596	<i>Marriage with Khadeeja RA</i>
	605	<i>Birth of Ali RA</i>
	609	<i>Rebuilding of Kaaba.</i>
	610	<i>Prophethood with first revelation</i>
	611-626	<i>Sasanid armies capture Jerusalem & overrun Asia Minor.</i>
7N	617	<i>Boycott by Quraish.</i>
10N	620	<i>Death of Khadeeja RA</i>
10N	620	<i>Death of Abu Talib.</i>
11N	621	<i>Asra & Meraj (Ascension).</i>
12N	621	<i>Baite Aqaba Ula(First pact of Aqaba)</i>
13N	622	<i>Baite Aqaba Sania(Second pact of Aqaba)</i>
13N	June 622	Migration to Madina.
	623	<i>1-Sarya Ubayda bin Harris RA.</i>
Safar.02H	June-623	1-Ghazwa Abwa
<i>Safar.02H</i>	<i>June- 623</i>	<i>2-Sarya Hamza RA.</i>
R.Awl.02H	July- 623	2-Ghazwa Buwat
<i>R.Awl.02H</i>	<i>July. - 623</i>	<i>3-Sarya Saad bin Waqas RA.</i>
J.Awl.02H	Sept-623	3-Ghazwa Ushaira
J.San.02H	Oct.- 623	4-Ghazwa Safwan (Badar Oola)
<i>Rajab.02H</i>	<i>Nov. - 623</i>	<i>4-Sarya Abdullah bin Jahash RA.</i>
Rmzn.02H	Jan. - 624	5-Ghazwa Badar(Kubra)
Zilhaj.02H	Aprl.-624	6-Ghazwa Saweeq/Bani Sulaim
Safr. 02H	June-624	7-Ghazwa zi Amar/Ghatfan/Najad
R.Awl.03H	July- 624	8-Ghazwa Bahran/Fura
Rajab.03H	Oct.- 624	9-Ghazwa Banu Qaynqa
<i>Rajab. 03H</i>	<i>Nov.- 624</i>	<i>5-Sarya Zaid bin Harsa RA.</i>
<i>Shabn.03H</i>	<i>Dec.- 624</i>	<i>6-Sarya Mohammed bin Muslima RA.</i>
Shwal.03H	Feb.- 625	10-Ghazwa Uhad
<i>Mhram.04H</i>	<i>April- 625</i>	<i>7-Sarya Abu Salma RA.</i>
<i>Mhram.04H</i>	<i>May - 625</i>	<i>8-Sarya Abdullah bin Unays RA.</i>
<i>Safar. 04H</i>	<i>May - 625</i>	<i>9-Incident of Rajey.</i>
<i>Safar. 04H</i>	<i>June- 625</i>	<i>10-Incident of Beer Maoona.</i>
R.Awl.04H	July- 625	11-Ghazwa Banu Nazeer
J.Akhr.04H	Oct.- 625	12-Ghazwa Zatur Riqa
Shabn.04H	Dec.-625	13-Ghazwa Badar second
R.Awl.05H	July- 626	14-Ghazwa Daumatul Jundal
Shwal.05H	Feb.- 627	15-Ghazwa Khandaq
Ziqad. 05H	April-627	16-Ghazwa bani Qurayza
<i>Zilhaj. 05H</i>	<i>May - 627</i>	<i>11-Sarya Abdullah bin Ateeq</i>
R.Sani.06H	July -627	17-Ghazwa bani Lehyan
J.Awl. 06H	Aug.-627	18-Ghazwa zi Qarad

<i>J.Awal.06H</i>	<i>Sept.-627</i>	<i>12-Sarya Zayd bin Harsa RA.</i>
<i>incident</i>		
<i>J.Akhir.06H</i>	<i>Oct. - 627</i>	<i>13-Sarya Zayd bin Harsa RA.</i>
<i>Shabn.06H</i>	<i>Dec. -627</i>	<i>14-Sarya Abdur Rehman bin Auf RA.</i>
<i>Shabn.06H</i>	<i>Dec.-627</i>	<i>19-Ghazwa bani Mustaliq</i>
<i>Shawal.06H</i>	<i>Jan.- 628</i>	<i>15-Sarya Abdullah bin Rawaha RA.</i>
<i>Ziqad. 06H</i>	<i>Feb.-628</i>	<i>20-Treaty of Hdaybia</i>
<i>Zilhaj. 06H</i>	<i>Mar.-628</i>	<i>Letters to the Kings.</i>
<i>Mhrm.07H</i>	<i>April-628</i>	<i>21-Ghazwa Khyber</i>
<i>R.Awal.07H</i>	<i>June- 628</i>	<i>16-Sarya Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah RA.</i>
<i>Ziqad. 07H</i>	<i>Feb.- 629</i>	<i>22-Umratul Qadha</i>
<i>J.Awl. 08H</i>	<i>Aug.-629</i>	<i>23-Ghazwa/Sarya Muta</i>
<i>J.Akhir.08H</i>	<i>Oct. - 629</i>	<i>17-Sarya Zatus Salasil</i>
<i>Rajab. 08H</i>	<i>Nov.- 629</i>	<i>18-Sarya Al Khabt</i>
<i>Shabn.08H</i>	<i>Dec.- 629</i>	<i>19-Sarya Abi Qitada RA.</i>
<i>Rmzn.08H</i>	<i>Jan.-630</i>	<i>24-Victory of Macca</i>
<i>Shwal.08H</i>	<i>Feb.-630</i>	<i>25-Ghazwa Hunayn</i>
<i>Shwal.08H</i>	<i>Feb.-630</i>	<i>26-Ghazwa Taif</i>
<i>Mhram.09H</i>	<i>April-630</i>	<i>20-Sarya Aynia bin Hesam</i>
<i>R.Akhr.09H</i>	<i>July- 630</i>	<i>21-Sarya Alqama bin Mujzar</i>
<i>R.Akhr.09H</i>	<i>July- 630</i>	<i>22-Sarya Ali RA.</i>
<i>Rajab.09H</i>	<i>Oct.-630</i>	<i>27-Ghazwa Tabuk</i>
<i>10H</i>	<i>630</i>	
<i>R.Awal. 10H</i>	<i>June-631</i>	<i>23-Sarya Khalid bin Waleed RA.</i>
<i>Rmzan. 10H</i>	<i>Dec.-631</i>	<i>24-Sarya Ali RA.</i>
<i>Zilhaj. 10H</i>	<i>Mar.-632</i>	<i>25-Hajjatul wida</i>
<i>Safar. 11H</i>	<i>May- 632</i>	<i>26-Sarya Usama bin Zayd RA.</i>
<i>R.Awal. 11H</i>	<i>June-632</i>	<i>Death of Prophet SA.</i>

Letters to Kings6 H.

<u>Name of Sahaba</u>	<u>Name of King</u>	<u>Kingdom</u>
1-Dahya Kalbi	Hiaraqal-Qaisar-e-Rome(Hercules)	Roman Empire
2-Hatib bin Abu Balta	Maquqas-Shah Iskandria-Misr	King of Egypt
3-Ula bin Hadhrami	Munzir bin Savi	King of Bahrain
4-Amr bin Aas	Julundi	
5-Shuja bin Asadi	Haris Al-Ghassani	Shah Balqa-Shaam
6-Mahajir bin Abi Umayya	Haris bin Abde Kalal	Shah Yemen
7-Abdullah bin Huzafa	Kisra-Shah Faras	
	Persian Empire	
8-Amr bin Umaiya	Najashi-Shah Habsha	King of Ethopia
9-Sulait bin Amar	Hauza-Banu Haneefa	
& Aamir bin Loie	Samama bin Asaal-	Shah Yamama

Ghazwaat (Battle in which Prophet SA. participated)

1-Ghazwa Abwa/Wuddan

Date- Safar 2H. (623AD)

Place- Abwa/Wuddan 80 miles South West of Madinah towards Makkah.

Tribe- Banu Zamra.

Duration- 15/20 days.

Muslims- 60 or more Muhaajir Sahaba only. Flag in the hand of Hamza RA.

Enemy-

Result- No fight; chief of tribe Makhshi bin Amar Zamri agreed for piece treaty. This is the first ghazwa of Prophet SA.

2-Ghazwa Buwaat

Date- Rabiul Awal 2H. (623AD).

Place- Buwaat, 50 miles West of Madinah. A hilly range.

Tribe- Quraish.

Duration-

Muslims- Above 100. Flag with Saad bin Waqqaas RA.

Enemy- 100 riders with 2000 camels.

Result- Enemy escaped, no fight.

3-Ghazwa Al Ushaira

Date- Jamadi Al Saani 2H. (623AD).

Place- Ushaira, 120 miles North West of Madinah near Yanbu.

Tribe- Caravan of Quraish/Banu Madlaj.

Sahaba- 150-200 Muhaajir Sahaba only. Flag with Hamza RA.

Enemy-

Result- Caravan of Quraish escaped. Prophet SA. Camped at Ushaira for one month and made peace treaty with Banu Madlaj.

4-Ghazwa Safwan/Badar first

Date- Jamadi Al Saani 2H. (623AD).

Place- Valley of Safwan near Badar.

Tribe- Kurz bin Jabir Fahri of Makkah.

Duration-

Sahaba- 70 Sahaba. Flag with Ali RA.

Enemy-

Result- Kurz bin Jabir Fahri with his companion attacked on the orchard near Madinah and after plundering & Looting the cattles ran away. Prophet SA. followed them till valley of Safwan but they escaped.

5-Ghazwa Badar

Date- Ramzan 2H. (624AD).

Place- Badar battlefield 80 miles West of Madinah in valley Yalail.

Tribe- Caravan of Quraish

Duration- 3 days.

Sahaba- About 313. 60-82 Muhaajir & rest Ansar, 60 Aus & 170 Khazraj. With 2 horses, 70 camels

and very little arms.

Enemy- 1000 fully armed.

Sahaba martyred- 6 Muhaajir & 8 Ansar.

Enemy killed- 70 including leaders of tribes, and 70 arrested. **Abu Jahal** was also killed.

Reason of fight- In the expedition of Abdullah bin Jahash, a well known leader of Quraish Amar bin Hadhrami was killed which became the cause of all the following battles with Quraish.

Result- Muslim got victory.

Detail:- Right wing command was given to **Zubair bin Awam RA** and Left wing command was given to **Meqdad bin Amar RA**. **Prophet SA** flag was given to **Musab bin Umair Ra**.

Satan Iblees came in the battlefield of Badar in resemblance of Suraqa and excited the leaders of Quraish on fighting, but when he saw the angels descending he ran away, saying I see that which you see not. I fear the wrath of Allah. This is narrated in verse 48 of Sura Nisa.

Masjid Areesh

Prophet SA camped in an Areesh (shed of date trees) on an elevated place commanding and viewing the battlefield. **At night Prophet SA** was busy in praying in front of **Almighty Allah** for victory.

Later on a masjid was constructed at this place named **Masjid Areesh**.

In 1992AD a very beautiful **Masjid Areesh** has been constructed at this place.

Sura Anfal

This whole sura is on Jihad.

Verse- 1,41 & 69:- Reply to the question of sahaba about booty of Badar.

Verse- 8 & 12:- Help by the angels.

Verse- 17:- Throwing of dust by Prophet SA.

Verse- 15,16,45 & 46:- To remain firm against the enemy disbelievers.

6-Ghazwa Saweeq/Bani Sulaym

Date- Zil Haj 2H. (624AD)

Place- Qarqaratul Qadar/Saweeq/Areed.

Tribe- Abu Sufyan with Quraish.

Duration- 5 days

Sahaba- 200

Enemy- 200

Result- Abu Sufyan army burnt the garden of an Ansar Sahaba and killed him at Saweeq 3 miles from Madinah. Prophet SA. chased the enemy but they ran away dropping the load of barley.

7-Ghazwa zi Amar/Ghatfan/Najad

Date- Safar 3H. (625AD).

Place- Najad/Zi Amar.

Tribe- Banu Ghatfan.

Duration- One month.

Sahaba- 450

Enemy-

Result- Prophet SA. camped at Zi Amar and slept with Sahaba under the trees. Enemy sent a brave

man Ghauras bin Haris to kill Prophet SA. When he came Prophet SA. woke up. He took out

his sword and said, who is going to save you from my sword? Prophet SA. replied calmly, Allah. His sword fell down. Prophet SA. picked up his sword and said, who is going to

save

you now? He said no one except you. Then he accepted Islam and called his people to Islam

8-Ghazwa Bahran/Fura

Date- Rabiul Awal 3H. (625AD).

Place- Vahran in Hijaz.

Tribe- Quraish/ Banu Sulaim.

Duration- 2 months.

Sahaba- 300

Enemy-

Result- Camped for 2 months but no fight.

9-Ghazwa Banu Qynqah

Date- Rajab 3H. (625AD).

Place- Locallity of Banu Qynqah.

Tribe- Jews of Banu Qaynqah.

Duration- Besieged for 16 days.

Sahaba-

Enemy-

Result- A jew insulted an arab women. A muslim hit the jew and he died at the spot. The other jews killed the muslim and started mischiefs to such an extent that Prophet SA. had to besiege Banu Qaynqah. After 15 days they surrendered. On request of Abdullah bin Ubai hypocrate Prophet SA. did not execute them. They left Madinah and settled in Khyber,

Fidak,

and Tayma.

10-Ghazwa Uhad

Date- Shawal 3H. (625AD).

Place- 5 Sqml. field in front of Mount Uhad 3.5 miles North of Madinah.

Tribe- Quraish.

Duration-

Sahaba- 700

Enemy- 3000 army comprising of brave wrestlers of Ahabeesh tribe, 100 brave soldiers of Saqeef

tribe, 200 cavalry, 700 completely armored soldiers, 3000 camels and 15 dignified ladies.

Sahaba martyred- 70 Sahaba were martyred. 4 from Muhajir and 66 from Ansar.

Hamza, Musab bin Umair, Abdullah bin Jahash, Hanzla, Anas bin Nazar, Amar bin Jamu

RA.

Enemy Killed- 22 were killed. Muavia bin Mugheera, Ubai bin Khalf etc.

Result- In the beginning Sahaba got victory but because of misunderstanding by 50 Sahaba who left their place on the mountain, muslims had to bear heavy casualties. Quraish army left for Makkah without any result.

Ghazwa Banu Nazeer

Date- Safar 4H. (626AD)

Place- Mohalla Banu Nazeer, South East of Masjide Nabvi.

Tribe- Banu Nazeer jews.

Sahaba-

Enemy-

Sahaba martyred-

Enemy killed-

Duration-

Result- Banu Nazeer conspired to kill Prophet SA. So they were exiled.

12-Ghazwa Zatur Riq

Date- Jamadiul Akhir 4H. (626AD)

Place- Zatur Riq in Najad-Hijaz.

Tribe- Banu Salba of Ghatfan tribe

Sahaba- 400

Enemy- Large number.

Result- Enemy escaped.

13-Ghazwa Badar the second

Date- Shaban 4H. (626AD).

Place- Badar

Tribe- Quraish

Sahaba-

Enemy- 2000

Duration- 8 days.

Result- Prophet SA. camped for 8 days in Badar but Abu Sufyan returned back from the way.

14-Ghazwa Daumatul Jundal

Date- Rabiul Awal 5H. (627AD)

Place- Daumatul Jundal 500 miles North of Madinah on trade route from Yaman to Syria.

Tribe- Different tribes/Romans.

Sahaba- 1,000

Enemy-

Duration- 10 days.

Result- Enemy escaped no fight.

15-Ghazwa Khandaq(trench)/Ahzab(parties).

Date- Shawal/Ziqad 5H. (627AD).

Place- Madinah. North of Masjid-e-Nabvi.

Tribe- Quraish, Banu Nazeer, Banu Wail, Banu Ghatfan, Banu Kinana, Banu Sulaym.

Sahaba- 3,000 + 300 with Zayd bin Harsa RA. to protect Madinah. + 200 with Salma bin Aslam R

to keep an eye on Banu Qurayza.

Enemy- 10,000 Abu Sufyan leader of the army.

Sahaba martyred- 6

Enemy killed- 8

Duration- 20 to 30 days.

Trench- 20' wide & 20' deep 3 miles long from Shaikhayn in the East till Mount Sula in the West.

Result- Almighty Allah alone defeated the enemy by heavy storm and cold wind and made the enemy to run away.

Fight- Amar bin Abde Wudd a great fighter of Quraish crossed the trench and challenged for duel

Ali RA. accepted the challenge. Amar with anger attacked fiercely on Ali RA. but he quickly

skipped and strongly attacked on Amar and cut him in two pieces. Next was Naufal bin Abdullah who challenged and Zubair bin Awam RA. with his first attack killed him.

Noaym bin Masood leader of Banu Ghatfan quietly accepted Islam and created political difference between jews and Quraish.

16-Ghazwa Banu Quraiza

Date- Ziqad 5H. (627AD)

Place- Mohalla Banu Quraiza in Madinah. South East of Masjide Nabvi.

Tribe- Jewish tribe Banu Quraiza.

Sahaba- 2,000 to 3,000

Enemy- 600 to 900

Sahaba martyred- 2

Enemy killed- 600 to 900

Duration- 25 days.

Result- The jews surrendered and were executed by the judgment given by Saad bin Moaz RA.

17-Ghazwa Bani Lehyan

Date- Jamadiul Awal 6H. (628AD).

Place- Mohalla Banu Lehyan South of Madinah near Makkah.

Tribe- Banu Lehyan.

Sahaba- 200

Enemy-

Duration- Few days.

Result- Enemy flew away.

18-Ghazwa Zi Qarad

Date- Jamadiul Akhir 6H. (628AD)

Place- Ghaba an orchard 12 miles from Madinah for grazing camels of Prophet SA.

Tribe- Banu Ghatfan.

Sahaba- 300

Enemy- 40

Sahaba martyred- 1

Enemy killed- 4

Result- Enemy flew away leaving the camels and their shields. Salma bin Amar bin Al Akwa a young boy who was famous for his running and archery fought bravely alone.

19-Ghazwa Bani Mustaliq

Date- Shaban 6H, (628AD).

Place- Spring of Al Muraysi near the sea shore, midway between Makkah & Madinah.

Tribe- Banu Mustaliq.

Sahaba- 700

Enemy-

Sahaba martyred- 1

Enemy killed- 10

Enemy arrested- 600

Camels siezed- 2,000

Goats siezed- 5,000

Result- Enemy surrendered and later mostly accepted Islam.

20-Treaty of Hdaybya

Date- Ziqad 6H. (628AD).

Place- Hdaybya 9 miles from Makkah.

Tribe- Quraish.

Sahaba- 1,400 with **Prophet SA.**

Enemy-

Duration- Few days.

Result- A treaty was signed at **Hdaybya** and muslim returned without performing Umra. **Allah** announces this treaty to be an open victory. (Verses 1 & 18 of sura Fatteh-48).

Detail- **Prophet SA** with 1,400 Sahaba set out towards **Makka** for performing **Umrah**, but they were stopped by **Kuffar Qureish at Hdaybya**. Later on after negotiation a treaty was signed.

Bayt-e- Rizwan/Shajara- On hearing the rumour of murder of Usman RA. Prophet SA took covenant under a tree by Sahaba to fight till death. In this regard sura Fatteh(48) verse 18-21 was revealed.

21-Ghazwa Khyber

Date- Muharram 7H. (629AD)

Place- Khyber km. North East of Madinah.

Tribe- Jews.

Sahaba- 1,400

Enemy- 20,000

Sahaba martyred- 15. 3 from Muhajir and 12 from Ansar.

Enemy killed- 93 including several jewish leaders.

Duration- 30 days.

Result- After a months siege all the forts were captured and the jews were defeated badly.

According to law of Moosa AS. Prophet SA. could have executed all the jews but Prophet SA.

spared their lives. A large number of booty was collected, which included wealth, jewelry, clothes, different goods, foodstuffs, cattle, 100 armour, 400 swords, 1,000 spears, 500 bows with quiver & arrows, different types of arms, catapults and fort breaking cannons

etc

Forts Captured:-

Fort Naim, Fort Saab, Fort Natat, Fort Ubbi, Fort Albar, Fort Qulla/Zubair, Fort Qamus, Fort Nazaar

Fort Kutaiba, Fort Wati, Fort Salalim.

22-Ghazwa Muta

Date- Jamadiul Awal 8H. (629AD).

Place- Muta a city of Sham, now it is in Jordan, on Southern border of Balqa.

Tribe- Romans and Arab tribes.

Sahaba- 3,000

Enemy- 200,000

Sahaba martyred- 4 Muhajir & 8 Ansar. Zayd bin Harisa, Jafar Tayar, Abdullah bin Rawaha RA.

Enemy killed- Several killed.

Result- Historical record of **Khalid bin Waleed RA.** that he saved 3,000 muslim army and brought

back safely to Madinah without defeat, against 200,000 strong enemy who could not dare to

follow the muslim army. Prophet SA. accompanied till Jarf 3 miles North of Madinah.

23-Victory of Makkah

Date- 20 Ramdan 8H. (630AD).

Place- Makkah

Tribe- Quraish including their ally.

Sahaba- 10,000

Enemy- Entire Quraish including their ally.

Sahaba martyred- 2

Enemy killed- Several

Result- Makkah was captured almost without fight and Quraish alongwith others surrendered.

Prophet SA. Broke all the idols and out of mercy forgave even his brutal enemy. Later on Quraish and nearby tribes accepted Islam.

24-Ghazwa Hunayn

Date- Shawal 8H. (630AD).

Place- Hunayn.

Tribe- Hawazan.

Sahaba- 10,000 from Madinah + 2,000 from Makkah.

Enemy- 4,000

Sahaba martyred- about 5

Enemy killed- about 100

Result- *In the beginning Sahaba fled away except few but immediately on the call of Prophet SA.*

returned back and defeated Hawazan. Most of them fled away to Taif, some to Autas and Nakhla and some were arrested. Their women and children became captives. All their wealth and animals came as booty.

25-Ghazwa Taif

Date- *Ziqad 8H. (630AD).*

Place- *Taif. At 3,000 ft. Elevation.*

Tribe- *Banu Saqeef.*

Sahaba-

Enemy-

Sahaba martyred-

Enemy killed-

Result- *After 17 to 20 days siege of Taif a peace treaty was signed between people of Taif and Prophet SA.*

26-Ghazwa Tabuk

Date- *Rajab 9H. (630AD).*

Place- *Tabuk.*

Tribe- *Roman army along with christian arabs.*

Sahaba- *30,000 to 70,000*

Enemy-

Sahaba martyred-

Enemy killed-

Result- *Prophet SA. attack on Roman borders terrified the Romans so much that they did not dare*

to face the muslim army in spite of their full preparation to attack on Madinah. Most of the border states agreed for confederation with Madinah, and like this a buffer state

was formed between Romans and muslims.

Nation of Samud-

*Asra & Meraj - 27 Rajab 11N. (Ascension of Prophet SA to Heaven)
Sura No. 17:1 & 60. Sura Maryam : First few verses.*

Asra:-

Jibraeel AS opened the chest of Prophet SA washed the heart with Zam Zam and filled it with faith and wisdom. Started journey on Buraq. On the way a young beautiful woman called him, he did not pay attention, then she came as an old woman, this was world which came decorated. At one place there was garden of dates, Jibraeel AS said this is your migration place. Then he saw Mount Toor, then Baitul Laham birth place of Eisa AS. Then reached Masjide Aqsa. Lead the Fajar prayer of all the prophets.

Meraj:-

Jibraeel AS brought him at Sakhra. From here journey of Meraj started and ended. On 1st. sky met Adam AS. Different types of sinners were being punished. Then came to 2nd.sky,met Eisa & Yahya AS. On 3rd.sky met Yousuf AS. On 4th.sky met Idrees AS. On 5th.sky met Haroo AS. On 6th.sky met Moosa AS. On 7th.sky Ibraheem AS was resting with the wall of Baitul Mamoor, the Kaaba of angels. Then ascended to Sidratul Muntaha, beyond which even Jibraeel AS cannot go. Beyond this Prophet SA went alone. Here Prophet SA saw Jibraeel AS in his actual shape having 600 wings. At this place is Jannatul Mava and Prophet SA visited it. Then Prophet SA ascended alone and met Almighty Allah. Conversation was done in the words of "Attahyat". Allah awarded him 50 Salat. On return Moosa AS said to get the Number of salt reduced. After several visits 5 times salat was made obligatory on Ummat. On return descended at Baitul Muqaddas. While traveling from Baitul Muqaddas to Baitullah, Prophet SA saw a caravan, his camel was lost. Prophet SA guided them and they found their camel. In the other caravan a camel's leg was broken. In the morning Prophet SA narrated the story. All the Kuffar falsified but Abu Bakr RA verified the truth and was given the title of Siddiq. When Kuffar asked about Baitul Muqaddas, it was brought in front of Prophet SA, and Prophet SA went on giving the answer.

In 7H. In the court of Hercules the priest confirmed that the door did not close at night in spite of great effort but in the morning it was closed easily.

Shaqul Qamar - N. (Splitting of moon)

Once Kuffar-e-Macca asked Prophet SA to split the moon in two. Prophet SA pointed his fing towards the moon and it split into two, and it was seen throughout the world, but still they did not accept Islam. They went away saying this is a great magic.

Crying of dry date tree - 1H.

Prophet SA use to give sermon resting on a dry date tree in Masjid Nabvi. When the member was shifted from the tree it started crying. When Prophet SA embraced, it stopped crying. This miracle was seen by everyone present there.

Falling of sword from the hand of Kafir(Infidel)

3H:- Prophet SA camped at Zi Amar and slept with sahabi under the trees. Enemy sent a brave man Ghauras bin Haris to kill Prophet SA. When he came Prophet SA. woke up. He took out his sword and said, who is going to save you from my sword? Prophet SA.replied calmly, Allah. His sword fell down. Prophet SA. picked up his sword and said, who is going to save you now? He said no one except you. Then he accepted Islam and called his people to Islam

KHULAFRA RASHIDEEN**1-Abu Bakr Siddiq RA - 63 yrs.*****R.Awal 11H-J.Sani 13H =2 yrs.3 months.******632 - 634 AD.******Race:-Abu Bakr bin Usman(Abu Qahafa) bin Amir bin Amar bin Ka'ab bin Sa'ad bin Taim bin Murra (7th.generation of Prophet SA)******bin Kaab bin Loui bin Ghalib bin Quraish(Fahar) to Adnan=10 generations******Adnan to Qedar=37 generations******Qedar to Ismaeel=*****2-Umar Farooq RA - 63 yrs.*****J.Sani 13H-Zilhaj 23H = 10 yrs.6 months.******634 - 644 AD.******Race:-Umar bin Khattab bin Nufail bin Abdul Uzza bin Rabah bin Abdullah bin Qarat bin Razah bin Adi bin Ka'ab (8th.generation of Prophet SA) bin Loui bin Ghalib bin Quraish(Fahar) to Adnan= 10 generations******Adnan to Qedar=37 generations******Qedar to Ismaeel=*****3-Usman Ghani RA - 80 yrs*****Zilhaj 23H-Zilhaj 35H =12 yrs.******644 - 656 AD.******Usman bin Affan bin Abul Aas bin Umaiya bin Abde Shams bin Abde Munaf (4th.generation of Prophet SA) bin Qassa bin Kalab bin Murra bin Ka'ab bin Loui bin Ghalib bin Quraish(Fahar) to Adnan= 10 generations******Adnan to Qedar=37 generations******Qedar to Ismaeel=*****4-Ali Murtaza RA - 63 yrs.*****Zilhaj 35H-Rmzn. 40H =4 yrs.9 months.******656 - 661 AD.******Race:-Ali bin Abu Talib bin Abdul Muttalib (2nd.generation of Prophet SA) bin Hashim bin Abde Munaf bin Qassa bin Kalab bin Murra bin Ka'ab bin Loui bin Ghalib bin Quraish(Fahar) to Adnan= 10 generations******Adnan to Qedar=37 generations******Qedar to Ismaeel=*****5-Hassan bin Ali RA - 47 yrs.*****40H-41H = 1 yr.******661 - 662 AD.***

1-KHALIFA ABU BAKAR R.A.

Title- "Siddiq" given by Prophet SA.

Birth- 573 AD in Makkah.

Death- 23 Aug. 634 AD in Madina.

Age=63 yrs.

His race with Prophet SA.meets at 7th ancestry i.e. Murra.

1st. Muslim to accept Islam, in 610 AD.

Qualities

Friend of Prophet SA before Islam.

Wazeer of Prophet SA in Islam.

Lying beside Prophet SA after death.

Father-in-law of Prophet SA.

The only one to migrate with Prophet SA to Madina.

Never separated from Prophet SA.

Having best qualities, and best man on the earth after Prophets.

Well known for justice, piety & simplicity

Kh.- R. Awal 11H. To J. Sani 13H.=2year & 3months.

June 632 - Aug.634 AD.

On Hijaz, Nejd & Yemen**Expedition of Sham & Iraq.**

R. Awal 11H- Sent the army of Usama bin Zayd RA prepared by Prophet SA. Army came back victorious.

Prepared 11 armies under following commanders:-

1-Khalid bin Waleed RA.

2-Ikrama bin Abi Jahal RA.

3-Sharjeel bin Hasna RA.

4-Muhajir bin Abi Umayya RA.

5-Huzaifa bin Muhasan RA.

6-Urfija bin Harsma RA.

7-Suwaid bin Muqrin RA.

8-Ula bin Hazrami RA.

9-Taraifa bin Hajiz RA.

10-Amar bin Aas RA.

11-Khalid bin Saeed RA.

False prophet Taleeha's repentance

Khalid bin Waleed was sent towards Taleeha who claimed for prophethood, defeated him. He escaped and later on returned to Islam.

Murder of Malik bin Nuwaira

Malik bin Nuwaira apostatized and a woman Saja claimed for prophethood. Khalid bin Waleed RA.attacked on them and killed Malik while Saja escaped to Yamama. Abu Bakar RA. ordered to kill the soldiers of Bani Hanifa, but Khalid RA.already gave them piece so they were freed and later all of them accepted Islam.

Murder of Musailma Kazzab(liar)

Ikrama RA. attacked on Musailma without waiting for Sharjeel RA.so he could not succeed. Later on Khalid bin Waleed RA.attacked on Musailma and after fierce fight got victory. Wahshi RA.

killed Musailma which became expiation for the sin of killing Hamza RA.

Murder of Aswad Ansi

The leader of muslim Iranian army Feroz killed Aswad with the help of his wife. Qays bin Abd Yaghus & Amar bin Madi Karab Zubairi apostatized and captured Sana-Yaman. Ikrama RA.and Muhajir bin Abi Umayya attacked and captured Sana again. Qays & Amar bin Madi Karab were arrested. Later on they repented and became true muslims.

Revolt in Bahrain

After death of Prophet SA. People of Bahrain apostatized. Hatam, Samama & Qays revolted in Bahrain. Abu Bakar RA. sent Ula Hadhrami RA. Muslim army attacked on them, killed and arrested them. Hatam was also killed. Some of the army escaped to Darayn Island. Muslim army jumped in the sea crossed the sea on horses reached the island and killed of them.

Persian Empire

Iran, Iraq & Afghanistan.

Persian Emperor's were called **Kisra**.

Roman Empire

After the Universal Greece Empire Alexander the Great in Europe, the second world wide Empire was the Great Roman Empire.

The Roman Emperor's were called **Qaisar(Scissors)**.

395 AD - the Great Roman Empire was split into two Empire. Eastern & Western Roman Empire. The capital of Eastern was Constantinople and of Western remained the city Rome of Italy. The western Roman Empire was distributed into small states due to continuous attack of Russia, but the Eastern Roman Empire went on spreading till it included Europe, Turkey, Egypt & Sham.

610AD to 641AD - Hercules was the Emperor of Roman Empire. In the beginning Jerusalem(Baitul Muqaddas) was also under his control.

604AD - Persian's destroyed completely Baitul Muqaddas.

616AD - Persian's captured Iskandria(Alexandria).

628AD - After piece treaty Alexandra and Jerusalem came back to Roman Empire.

Expedition of Iraq

Abu Bakar RA. ordered Khalid RA. to attack on Iraq from Persian Gulf side and ordered Ayaz bin Ghanam to attack from Northern Iraq.

1-Battle of Kazima:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Hurmuz.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Khalid RA.challenged for duel. Hurmuz came to fight. Khalid RA.killed him. Persian army ran away.

2-Battle of Suny:-

Muslim commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Qarin.

Result- Victory

Detail- Qarin challenged for duel. A young muslim came out and killed him. Muslims killed many of the Persian army. Many of them drowned in the canal and some flew away by boats.

3-Battle of Walja:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Andarzgar.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Both army fought boldly. Andarzgar was killed. Persian were defeated badly.

4-Battle of Alees:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Japan.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Khalid RA. challenged for duel. A leader of Bani Bakar came out and was killed. Persian's fought bravely but before sunset they flew away, and thousands were killed.

5-Victory of Hayra:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Arab Chiefs-

Result- Victory.

Detail- Hayra was the Capital Iraqi Arab Chiefs, when Khalid RA. reached there they ran away. Khalid RA. siezed their Castles and announced for acceptance of Islam but they refused. They agreed to pay 190,000 dirham tax/yr.

6-Victory of Anbar:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Sherzad.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Sherzad agreed to pay tax.

7- Victory of Ainut Tamar:-

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Persian Commander- Bahram.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Bahram kept the Arab tribes in front to fight. Khalid RA. arrested the Arab Chiefs. The Arab tribes flew away, seeing this the persians also ran away. Muslims captured the fort, and killed the arabs.

8- Victory of Dumatul Jundal:-

Muslim Commander- Ayaz bin Ghanam/Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Arab Commander- Akeedar bin Abdul Malik/Judi.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Due to the huge Persian army and Arab tribe Ayaz bin Ghanam RA. asked help from Khalid RA. Khalid RA. advanced towards Dumatul Jundal. Akeedar ran away and Judi was defeated. Muslims captured the fort, arrested Akeedar and assassinated him for the revolt.

9-Haseed & Khanafus:-

Khalid RA. came back to Hayra and sent 2 brigade to Haseed & Khanafus who defeated the Persian/Arabs.

10-Madeeh:-

Khalid RA. defeated the arabs

11-Battle of Feraz:- 15 ziqad 12H.

The Roman, Persian & Arab army jointly crossed river Farat(Euphrates) to attack on muslim army. Both army fought bravely and fiercely. Khalid RA. Was victorious.

Expedition of Shaam

13H- Abu Bakar RA. sent 4 armies:-

-Abu Ubaida bin Jarrah RA. to Hims.

Roman General- Qiqar bin Nastut with 60,000 army.

-Amar bin Aas RA. to Palastine.

Roman General- Tazaruq with 90,000 army.

-Yazeed bin Abu Sufyan RA. to Damascus.

Roman General- Jareer with 50,000 army.

-Sharjeel bin Hasna RA. to Jordan.

Roman General- Daraqas with 40,000 army.

Abu Bakar RA. Sent the army with remarkable advises.

The Roman army was in large number therefore they asked help from Abu Bakar RA.

Abu Bakar RA. ordered Khalid RA. to join the expedition of Shaam.

1-Battle of Yarmuk:-

On reaching Yarmuk all the 4 army joined together

Muslim Commander- Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Muslim army- 36,000

Roman army- 240,000

Muslims martyred- 3,000

Romans killed- more than 120,000

Detail- Khalid RA. Formed 40 Brigade of his army. Each Brigade of 1,000 army headed by a General. All the Generals were under the command of Central, Right wing, Left wing commander.

Abu Ubaida bin Jarrah RA. - Central army

Amar bin Aas RA. - Right wing army.

Yazeed bin Abi Sufyan RA. - Left wing army.

Abu Sufyan RA. - Proclaimer. He was moving around motivating the army by giving speech.

Khalid RA. and muslims fought so bravely that the Romans flew away but there was no way out, so about 120,000 were drowned in river, plus those killed by sword.

During this battle Abu Bakar RA. expired and Umar RA. became the Khalifa called Ameerul momineen.

Umar RA. made Abu Ubaida bin Jarrah RA. the commander instead of Khalid RA. but advised to fight with consultation of Khalid RA. He immediately handed over the power happily and fought bravely as before.

Governors of Abu Bakar RA.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Places</u>
Utab bin Usaid	Macca
Usman bin Abil Aas	Taif
Muhajir bin Abi Umayya	Sana
Ziyad bin Lubaid	Hazr Maut
Abu Moosa Ashari	Zubaid
Moaz bin Jabal	Jund
Abdullah bin Saur	Jarsh
Ula bin Hadhrami	Bahrain
Jareer bin Abdullah	Najran

The battle of Iraq & Shaam was in progress.

2-Khalifa Umar Farooq RA.**Kh-J. Sani 13H to 1st. Muharram 24H.=10 yrs. 6 months.****634 - 644 AD.****Title- "Farooq" given by Prophet SA.****First one to be titled-Ameerul Momineen****Age=63 yrs.****Muslim- 40th. Muslim.****Qualities****Father-in-law of Prophet SA.****Wazeer of Prophet SA.****The bravest and awful Sahabi.***Having best qualities, and best man on earth after Abu Bakr RA.**Well known for justice, piety & simplicity**Harmzan the great Persian General said, "I have been in the court of great kings but I never feared as I fear **Umar RA**".***Martyred on 1st. Muharram 24H.****Khilafat on Hijaz, Nejd, Yemen, Shaam, Iraq, Palestine, Egypt, Iran & Makran.****His race meets with Prophet SA at 8th ancestry i.e. Kaab.****-Prophet SA made special request to Allah for acceptance of Islam of Umar RA****-Accepted Islam on 6 N. 40th muslim. Till now acceptance of Islam was hidingly but****-Umar RA accepted Islam openly. On his Islam muslims in Dare Arqam exclaime with joy Allahu Akbar which was heard throughout Macca.****-After his Islam muslims started praying in Haram.****-His opinion for azan was accepted by Prophet SA****-Several of his opinion was supported by Quran.****-Umar RA migrated to Madina openly challenging the leaders of Quraish. No one dared to stop him.****-From Ghazwa Badar to Ghazwa Tabuk he fought beside Prophet SA.****-Umar RA was the first one to make Bait on the hands of Abu Bakar RA for caliphhood.****-On Umar RA suggestion Quran was compiled.****VICTORIES OF PERSIA****Victory of Iraq****Persian Emperor- Buran Dakht.****Commander in Chief- Rustam.****Battle of Namariq:- 13H.(634AD).****Muslim Commander- Musana bin Harisa.****Persian Commander- Narsi & Japan.****Result- Victory****Detail- Both army fought bravely and muslims got victory.****Battle of Kaskar:- 13H.(634AD).****Muslim Commander- Abu Ubayd Saqfi.****Persian Commander- Narsi.****Result- Victory****Detail- Irani arny fought bravely but was defeated.***Chiefs of different tribes brought nice food for Saqfi, but he refused and said Saqfi will eat that which all the army will eat.***Battle of Marwaha:- 13H.(634AD).****Muslim Commander- Abu Ubayd****Persian Commander- Bahiman****Muslims martyred- 6,000**

Result- Muslims were defeated.

Detail- Both the army camped at Marwaha near Kufa at the bank of river Farat (Euphrates) Bahiman brought a huge army of elephants. Arabic horses were terrified. Abu Ubayd and his army jumped from their horses and fought bravely and killed hundreds of elephant riders and cut the trunks of elephant but a joint elephant killed Abu Ubayd and he was martyred. Muslim army was defeated. Out of 9,000 6,000 muslims were martyred. Hundreds of Sahabi were martyred.

Battle of Baweb:- Ramzan 14H.(635AD)

Muslim Commander- Musanna

Persian commander- Mehran

Muslims- Few thousands

Persians- About 2 lacs

Persians killed- Above 1 lac

Result- Victory.

Detail- Both the army fought at Baweb near Kufa at the bank of river Farat. Mehran was killed by a young man of Tughlab tribe and above 1 lac Persian killed. Muslims got victory. The skeleton of Persians were lying for several months.

Musana RA was later on martyred due to the wounds in the battle.

Battle of Qaadsia:- Muharram 15H.(636AD).

Muslim Commander- Saad bin Waqas RA.

Muslim Army- 30,000. Badri sahabi=70, Bayte Rizwan sahabi=300, Fatteh Macca sahabi=300, Children of sahabi=700.

Muslims martyred-

Persian Commander- Rustam.

Persian Army- 60,000

Persian killed-

Result- Victory

Detail- Umar RA prepared a strong army and gave commands of different positions to Talha, Zubair, Abdur Rahman bin Auf etc.

Saad bin Waqas RA camped at Qaadsia, 39 miles before Kufa and as per order of Umar

RA

Sent a delegate of 14 tribe leaders to Yazdgard the Kisra of Persia.

First Noman bin Muqrin RA leader of the delegate gave dawat to Kisra, and then Mugheera bin zarara RA. We have come to take out the people from the worship of man to the worship of one GOD and to take out from the cruelty of false religion to the justice of Islam and to take out from the narrowness of this world to the wideness of this world and hereafter.

Saad bin Waqas RA then sent delegate to Rustam. Rebai bin Amir RA gave dawat to Rustam and then Mugheera bin Shoba gave dawat to accept Islam or pay tax if not then sword will decide.

The wazeer cut joke about his sword. He took out his sword and in one stroke cut the persian shield into two pieces. Persians were too much impressed.

Once Saad RA sent Taleeha RA for spying in the Persian army. He saw a very costly horse. He cut the rope and tied the horse with his horse. Meantime the army was alert and a Persian army officer who was famous for being enough for 1,000 army followed Taleeha RA and attacked him. Taleeha RA changed his position due to which the Persian fell down from his horse, Taleeha RA at once killed him by his spear and also killed a cavalry man and arrested another. He escaped safely out from 60,000 army.

Start of fight

Saad RA had sciatic pain so he was guiding the army sitting in the domb of an old palace.

1st day called Armas:- 5,000 muslims martyred.

A giant persian came out and challenged duel, Amar bin Maadi Karab RA came out lifted him up on his hand and striked on the ground and cut off his head.

1st fight was without result because of huge elephant army. 500 muslims of Banu Asad were crushed under the foot elephants.

2nd day called Aghwas:- 2,000 muslims martyred. 10,000 persians killed.

An army support of 6,000 came from Sham sent by Abu Ubaida RA.

Qeqa RA came out and challenged the persian army for duel. A persian fighter Behman came out but was killed. Several other fighters were killed.

Qeqa RA covered the camels with black tent. This was so terrifying that the persian horses started running back. The prince of Seestan Shahar Braz & Hamdani were also killed.

Abu Mohajan Saqfi RA who was imprisoned and tied with chain by Saad RA in punishment of drinking wine, saw the muslims in danger so he requested the wife of Saad RA to free him and he will return back after th fight. She freed him and he attacked so bravely that the entire army, even Saad RA was surprised. At the end of day Abu Muhajan RA came back and tied himself. Salma RA narrated the whole story to Saad RA. He freed him. Abu Muhajan RA also promised not to drink wine again. This day also no result. 4 sons of Khansa RA and 2,000 muslims were martyred, while 10,000 persians were killed.

3rd day called Amwas:- 6,000 muslims martyred. Rustam & 50,000 persians killed.

A persian wrestler challenged for duel, he was so giant looking that muslims hesitated, but he was killed by a common soldier. Maadi Karab RA attacked the persian elephants and was wounded badly, still when he caught hold the tail of a horse, it could not move. The persian rider ran away. Maadi Karab RA rode his horse.

Saad RA called Qiqqa, Asim, Humail & Rubail RA for the important attack of killing two huge elephants Abyad & Ajrab. Qeqa & Asim RA attacked by spear on the eyes of Abyad and then

Qeqa RA cut off the trunk. Humail & Rubail RA did the same to Ajrab. The black cloud of elephants ran away killing their own army. Persians one troop was completely covered with iron armour. The muslim tribe leaders attacked powerfully and destroyed the whole troop.

Qeqa, Qais, Ashas, Maadi Karab, Ibne Zilbardeen and all leaders of tribe attacked so bravely and powerfully that they reached Rustam. Rustam also fought bravely but when he was wounded badly he ran away and dived in the running water canal. A muslim soldier Bilal followed Rustam, killed him jumped on the throne and announced loudly.

Entire persian army started running away. About 50,000 persians were killed but Harmzan, Ahwaz & Qarin the persian commanders escaped. 6,000 muslims were martyred. Saad RA reported the victory to Umar RA.

Persians collected at Babul. When Saad RA reached Babul all persian leaders fled away.

Victory of Kusi:- Commander Shaharyar & thousands of persians were killed.

Saad RA camped at Babul and sent Zohra RA to Kusi, on the way at Bars he defeated Hurmuz. Feroz ran away to Nahawand, and Hurmuz to Ahwaz and the rest to Madain. Then he reached Kusi where Shaharyar was the persian commander. Shaharyar himself challenged for the bravest muslim. Zohra RA said I wanted to fight but because of your challenge I will send my slave Nayl or Nabil to you. Nayl killed Shaharyar.

Kusi is a historical place where Namrud imprisoned Ibraheem AS.

Victory of Bahar Sher:- Commander Shahar Bazar was killed and army escaped to

Madain.

Bahar Sher was the city where special army and a tamed lion of the emperor was living.

The lion suddenly attacked, but Commander Hashim RA by one stroke killed the lion. Saad RA kissed his forehead. After 2 months siege Commander Shahar Bazar was killed and persian army ran away to Madain. The citizens made peace.

Victory of Madain:-

The persian army destroyed the bridge on river Dajla. Saad RA and his army crossed the river on horse back seeing this persian army with fear shouted "Jin is coming" and fled away. The Persian Emperor leaving his capital fled away to Halwan. The capital Madain was captured and

the Islamic flag was flown on the White Palace. The throne of Kisra was made member and Juma prayer was offered. After 2 days all the precious jewelries and treasures of the kingdom was collected in which swords, daggers, armours etc. of all previous kings, Khaqan China, Raja Dahir, Scissor of Rome, Siaosh, Bahram were collected. The crown of Nausherwan royal dresses, a golden horse with silver saddle decorated with ruby and emerald jewels. A silver camel with golden saddle. The rider of the camel was decorated with jewels. In the royal court a green carpet was laid to enjoy the weather of spring, it was a very precious carpet made of silver the grass was of emerald (zamurrad), the trees were of gold and silver, the leaves & flowers of silk (hareer), the fruits of jewels. The curiosities, wonderful things and 1/5 of the treasures were sent to Madina and the rest were distributed. Umar RA distributed all the treasures even the precious carpet named "Bahaar"(spring) was cut into piecess and (Khizan) autumn came on it. Umar RA and Saad RA both accepted the honesty & piety of the soldiers who brought them without hiding anything, and thanked Allah.

Battle of Jalula:- Safar 16H.(637AD).

Muslim Commander- Hashim bin Utba RA.

" **Army-** 12,000

Persian Commander- Mehran Raazi.

" **Army-** 200,000

" **killed-** 100,000

Result- Victory

Detail- Muslims surrounded the city. Persians made 80 attacks but all the time retreated. In the last attack, after fierce fighting Persians were defeated badly, 100,000 were killed and 30 million valued booty was collected. When it reached Umar RA he wept and said wherever wealth comes jealousy & hatred come together.

When king Yazdgard came to know about the defeat he escaped to Rai.

Battle of Halwan:-

Muslim Commander- Qeqa RA.

Persian Commander- Khusru.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Qeqa RA reached Qasre Shirin. Khusru attacked but was defeated and escaped.

Entire Iraq was captured.

End of Victory of Iraq.

Kufa and Basra two big cities were constructed by the order of Umar RA.

Victory of Iran

Attack from Bahrain to Persia

Muslim commander- Ala Al Hadhrami RA.

Detail- Ala al Hadhrami RA a brave muslim commander seeing the victory by Saad RA attacked on Persia without consultation by Umar RA by naval fleet. He fought bravely but was surrounded by Persians at Taoos. Umar RA became angry and asked Utba RA Ameer Basra to help the muslims. He sent 12,000 army in the command of Abu Sabra. He attacked on persians and brought back safely the army of Ala Al Hadhrami.

Victory of Khuzistan

Battle of Hazeera :- 16H.(637AD).

Muslim Commander- Ayaz bin Ghanam RA.

" **Army-** 5,000

Result- Victory.

Detail- Saad RA sent Ayaz bin Ghanam RA with 5,000 army and in few days captured Hazeera.

Battle of Ramhurmuz:- 17H.(638AD).

Muslim Commander- Noman bin Muqrin RA.

" **Army-** 30,000

Persian Commander- Harmzan the king of Ahwaz/Khozistan.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Harmzan was defeated. He flew away.

Battle of Shostar/Tustar:- 17H.(638AD).

Muslim Commander- Abu Musa RA.

Persian Commander- Harmzan

Result- Victory

Detail- Harmzan fought bravely but was arrested and sent to Madina alongwith Anas RA.

Harmzan in the court of Umar RA:-

Umar RA wanted to assassinate Harmzan because he killed 2 big generals of muslim army.

Harmzan said when god was with us you people were our slave, now god is with you people

so we are your slave.

Harmzan said till I drink you will not kill me. Umar RA accepted it.

Harmzan threw the water and said, as per promise you cannot kill me.

Umar RA was surprised and said you have deceived me.

Harmzan recited kalima and said; I entered into Islam earlier but I wanted to show that I didn't accepted Islam with the fear of sword.

Victory of Nehavend - 20H.(641AD).

Muslim Commander-Noman bin Muqrin RA.

Muslim Army - 30,000

Muslim martyred-

Persian Commander-Marwan Shah.

Persian Army - 150,000

Persian killed - 100,000

Result - Victory

Detail - Umar RA ordered to take 30,000 army from to Nahawand and rest of the army in Persia to stop Persian army from going to help Nahawand army.

In the muslim army big sahabi were participating like Huzaifa bin Yaman, Abdullah bin Umar, Jareer Bajilli, Mogheera bin Shoba, Amar bin Maadi Karab, Naeem bin Muqrin, Qeqa RA.

The muslims fought bravely, Noman RA horse slipped and he was martyred, but his brother Naeem bin Muqrin RA atonce wore his cloak and amama took the flag so that nobody may know about hi death. The muslims fought bravely, killed about 100,000 of persians and won the battle. This was the victory over all the victories.

In this victory Feroze Lulu the muderer of Umar RA was also arrested.

Huzaifa RA sent the booty and news of victory to Umar RA. He thanked Allah and wept too much on the death of Noman RA.

Victory of Isphahan - 21H.(642AD).

Muslim Commander- Abdullah bin Atban.

Persian Commander- Fazusqan

Result - Victory

Detail - Abdullah fought a duel killed the persian commander Ispizan, got victory.

Abdullah advanced reached the capital. Fazusfan the Chief challanged to fight and decide no

need of killing the army. Abdullah agreed. Fazusfan made a full attack but Abdullah

defeenced so tactfully that he praised and surrendered to pay tax. Abdullah agreed, and

Isphahan was captured.

Victory of Hamdan - 21H.(642AD).

Muslim Commander- Noman bin Muqrin RA.

Muslim army - 12,000

Persian Commander- Wailum

Result- Victory.

Detail- After fierce fighting persians surrendered. Naeem RA advanced captured Rai & Qamus. Like this entire Iran was captured.

Victory of Khurasan- 22H.(643AD).

Muslim commander- Ahnaf bin Qais RA.

Persian Emperor- Yazd Gard.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Ahnaf RA advanced in Khurasan towards Marv Shahjahan where Yazd Gard was preparing

a huge army to fight with muslims. On the way Ahnaf RA captured Hirat. Yazdgard fled away to Marv Rud. Ahnaf captured Marv Shahjahan and advanced. Yazdgard fled away

to Balkh. Ahnaf RA captured Marv Rud and advanced to Balkh. Meanwhile help came from Kufa

Yazdgar fought bravely but was defeated and ran away to the Kingdom of Khaqan Turkistan.

Now again Yazdgar with Khaqan attacked with huge army.

Yazdgar reached Marv Shahjahan and Khaqan reached Marv Rud. Ahnaf RA killed three of

the brave commanders of Khaqan, so he returned back saying why to fight for others.

When

Yazdgar came to know about the retreat of Khaqan he was disappointed and took shelter

empty handed in the Kingdom of Khaqan of China till the end of Umar caliphhood.

Umar RA collected the people and said; the persians kingdom has perished today, now they

cannot harm muslims anymore. But if you will not remain on justice Allah will snatch away

the caliphhood from you and handover to others.

Victory of Tabaristan - 22H.(643AD).

Muslim Commander- Suwaid bin Muqrin RA.

Chief of Tibristan

Result - Victory.

Detail- Suwaid bin Muqrin RA. Captured Tibristan. The Chief agreed to paytax.

Victory of Azar bai jan - 22H.(643AD).

Muslim commander- Bakeer & Utba.

Enemy Commander- Isfandyar(Brother of Rustam)

Result- Victory.

Detail- Isfandyar was defeated and agreed to pay tax.

Victory of Baab - 22H.(634AD).

Muslim commander- Suraqa bin Amar & Bakeer RA.

Enemy commander- Shahar Baraz.

Result- Victory.

Detail- A city on the border of Iran, Armeenia and Russia.

Suraqa & Bakeer reached Baab. The chief Shahar Baraz surrendered.

Suraqa expired and Abdur Rahman became Governor of Baab.

Victory of Armeenia - 22H.(643AD).

RA
ended.

Victory of Persia -22H.(643AD).

Muslim commander- Hakam

Persian commander- Shahrak

Result- Victory

Detail- Usman bin Abil Aas RA Governor of Bahrain sent his brother Hakam with a great army to cope with the rioters. Hakam captured Tauj and camped there constructed mosques and inhabited Arab tribes. Shahrak attacked fiercely but was defeated and killed. Hakam advanced and captured several countries.

Victory of Kirman - 23H.(644AD).

Muslim commander- Sohail bin Addi RA.

Ruler of Kirman

Result- Victory

Detail- Sohail defeated a great Iranian army killing the Ruler of Kirman and captured the city.

Victory of Sajistan/Seestan - 23H.(644AD).

Muslim commander- Asim bin Unar RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Asim captured Seestan.

Victory of Fusa & Dar Abjard - 23H.(644AD).

Muslim commander- Sarya bin Zaneem Kalabi RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Sarya RA was surrounded by the enemy, when he heard the voice of Umar RA saying "ya Sarya aljabal, aljabal." (Oh Sarya towards the mountain). Sarya took his army in the foot of the mountain and got victory. Once Umar RA during his speech said these words which was heard by Sarya RA.

Victory of Makran - 23H.(644AD).

Muslim commander- Hakam bin Umayr RA.

Enemy- Rulers of Sindh & Baluchistan.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Muslims definite the enemy badly and they ran away. Hakam wanted to advance in Hind but Umar RA stopped him.

VICTORIES OF SHAAM

Sham had 6 provinces:-

1-Damascus 2-Hims 3-Jordan 4-Palestine 5-Baitul Muqaddas

6-Antakia (Palace of Hercules the Roman Emperor).

Victory of Damascus - Rajab 16H.(637AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah RA.

Roman commander- Nastar bin Nastut.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Muslim army sieged the city on one gate Abu Ubayda RA. 2nd. Door Amar bin Aas RA. 3rd door Khalid bin Waleed RA. 4th door Yazeed bin Abu Sufyan RA. Romans did not dare to come out and fight. One day Khalid RA at night climbed the city wall jumped down killed the guards and opened the door. Muslim army captured the city. Romans surrendered and piece

was signed.

Victory of Fahal - 14 H(635AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubaida RA. Alongwith Khalid bin Waleed, Amar bin Al Aas, Dharar bin

Aswad & Sharjil bin Hasna RA.

Roman commander- Saqla.

Romans killed- 80,000, leaving plenty of booty.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Muslim army sieged the city. The Romans attacked at night, whole night and whole day fierce fighting continued and at night Saqla the Roman commander was killed the army ran

away, but because they closed their own so they were drowned in water. 80,000 were killed

and left plenty of booty.

Victory of Jordan & Beesan- ziqad 14H.(635AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda & Sharjeel RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Abu Ubayda RA kept Moaz bin Jabal RA on Right wing army. Hashim bin Utba RA on Left wing. Saeed bin Zaid RA on Infantry and Khalid RA on Cavalry. Both places captured on the piece treaty of Damascus.

Victory of Hims - 14H.(635AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Khalid RA first attack made the Romans to take shelter inside the city wall. Sharjeel RA alone killed 7 Roman generals and 10 soldiers. The army ran and took shelter in the church

The people of the city stoned and martyred him as he was alone.

Khalid and Abu Ubayda RA sieged the city but it was so strong that they had to play a trick

Muslim army dug caves around the city at night so that the Romans could not see. Next day

Muslim army posed to retreat back but they came back at night and hid themselves in the

cave. Next day Romans thought that Muslims have gone away, so they opened the gates and started their normal life. Muslims came out of the cave and attacked suddenly and captured the city.

Victory of Qansreen - 15H.(636AD).

Muslim commander- Khalid RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Khalid RA sieged the city and captured on the condition of piece treaty of Damascus.

Victory of Halb - 15H.(636AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Abu Ubayda RA sieged the city and captured on the condition of piece treaty of Damascus.

Victory of Antakia - 15 H.(636AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Sieged the city and captured on the conditions of Damascus.

An army camp was made due to the army importance of the city.

Victory of Ajnadain - 15H.(636AD).

Muslim commander- Amar bin Aas RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Sieged and captured the city. Advanced onward and captured Ghaza, Sabt, Nablus, Lud, Amwas, Jabeereen, Yafa etc. and advanced towards Baitul Muqaddas.

Battle of Yarmuk- 15H.(636AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda RA.

Muslim army - 30,000. 100 Badri sahabi, 1,000 other sahabi RA.

Muslim martyred-

Roman army - 200,000

Roman killed-

Result- Victory

Detail- Abu Ubayda RA called back the entire army from Hims and Damascus to Yarnuk and returned the taxes back to the people. Seeing the justice and moral character of the the jews and christians of the locality was weeping.

First day in Yarmuk a Roman general challenged for duel, Qays RA attacked so powerfully

that the sword cutting the helmet cut his head into two. Roman army was defeated badly by

Khalid RA. Romans requested for piece. Khalid RA while going for piece talk walked in the

court of Bahan the Roman commander and looked towards the fully armoured army as if the lion looks towards the heard of sheep. Bahan respected Khalid RA but did not agree

on

the piece conditions.

Next day the Romans came out fully armed and armoured that the muslims were also surprised.

Khalid RA rearranged the army in 36 rows. In the center Abu Ubayda RA. In Right wing Amar bin Aas RA. In Left wing Yazeed bin Abi Sufyan RA.

2 lacs of the Roman army attacked so fiercely that the muslims retreated till the women tents. The women by couplets expressed the shamefulness.

Moaz bin Jabal RA and his son entered into the Roman army and fought with courage due to

which the foot of muslim became firm. The tribe of Azd stood firm like mountain. Umar bin

Tufail leader of the tribe fought bravely till death killing 9 brave generals.

Khalid RA attacked suddenly and tore the rows of Roman army.

Ikrama RA with 400 armies killed thousands of Romans and was martyred.

Jiash bin Qays RA fought so bravely that he didn't felt when his leg was cut.

Amar bin Aas, Sharjeel, Qabas, Saeed Yazeed & Qays RA fought bravely and pushed back

the Roman army till the trench behind the Romans were filled with their dead bodies.

Qaisar(Scissors) the Roman Emperor hearing the defeat flew away to Constantinople.

Umar RA hearing the victory went in prostration to thanks Allah.

The entire area upto Antakia was captured.

Victory of Baitul Muqddas - Rajab 16H.(637AD).

Muslim commander- Amar bin Aas/Khalid bin Waleed/Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah/Yazeed bin Sufyan

Result- Victory

Detail- Amar bin Aas RA sieged Baitul Muqaddas, meanwhile Abu Ubaida, Khalid &, Yazeed RA also

reached there after the victory of Sham. Seeing that all the big muslim commanders had reached, the Christians requested for piece on the hands of Umar RA.

Umar RA moved for Baitul Muqaddas and from wherever he passed his awe & dignity spread everywhere. When Umar RA saw the commanders wearing Royal gowns he became

angry, but when they said that we are fully armed from inside then he left them.

When Umar RA was asked to change the dress he refused and said we have not been because of dresses but because of Islam. He entered Baitul Muqaddas in his traveling

dress.

The piece treaty was signed by Umar RA. The saints seeing the signs in Umar RA similar to

whatever written in their book handed over the keys to Umar RA.

Umar RA entered Masjide Aqsa and in the Mehrab offered two rikat prayer and in the morning offered Fajar prayer.

Masjid-e-Umar was constructed at Sakhra in which Umar RA himself participated.

Ramla was also captured on same terms and condition.

Umar RA distributed the province of Palastine in two. The capital of one part was Baitul Muqaddas, and Alqama bin Mujarras was made Governor. The next part capital was Ramla,

and Alqama bin Hakeem was made Governor.

Romans reattack on Hims- 17H.(638AD).

Muslim commander- Abu Ubayda bin Jarrah/Khalid bin Waleed RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Romans attacked with full preparation alongwith the people of Jazeera, but they were defeated and never dared to attack again.

Victory of Jazeera - 17H.(638AD).

Muslim commander- Ayaz bin Ghanam RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Jazeera is the area between river Dajla & Firat.

By the order of Umar RA Saad bin Waqas RA sent Ayaz bin Ghanam RA to cope with the rioters of Jazeera and capture the entire area. He captured the entire area. In West from Badia Sham to the East upto Kurdistan-Armeenia.

Plague of Amwas - 18H.(639)!

Plague spread in Sham, Iraq & Egypt, and about 25,000 muslims were martyred.

Umar Ra travelled towards Sham to take care of the situation but when he reached Sura the chiefs advised him not to go onward. He agreed for return. Abu Ubayda RA said Oh Umar you want to run away from the fate of Allah. Umar Ra said yes I am running away from the fate of Allah towards the fate of Allah. Meanwhile Abdur Rahman bin Auf

RA

came and said I have heard Prophet SA saying "When you hear that epidemic has spread

in

a city then don't go there, and if you are in a city where epidemic has spread then don't

run

away with fear. Umar RA thanked Allah.

bin
 Jabal, and his son, Yazeed bin Abu Sufyan, Haris bin Hisham, Sohail bin Amar, Utba bin Sohail and thousands of Sahabi were martyred.
 Maaz bin Jabal RA at his death made Amar bin Aas RA the commander. He took the army
 on
 the top of mountains. This was liked by Umar RA.
 At the end of plague Umar RA came to Sham strengthened the borders and appointed
 the
 new Governors as follows:-
 -Maavya bin Sufyan RA Governor of Damascus.
 -Amar bin Aas RA Governor of Egypt.
 -Sharjeel bin Governor of Jordan.

Victory of Qisaria - 19H.(640AD).

Muslim commander- Maavia bin Abu Sufyan RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Yazeed bin Abu Sufyan sieged the city and at the time of death due to plague made his brother Maavia RA commander, so he went inside through a underground passage and opened the gate at night. 180,000 Roman army was defeated and 80,000 were killed and city was captured. Entire Sham was captured.

Victory of Egypt - 20H.(641AD).

Muslim commander- Amar bin Aas RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Egypt was politically under Roman Empire. The Ruler Maquqas was the Chief of "Qibtees" . An army officer was deputed by Qaisar Rome.

Umar RA allowed Amar bin Aas RA to advance in Egypt.

Amar RA reached Farma. This was an army camp. Romans fought for one month but was defeated. Amar advanced and captured "Bilbees" where daughter of Maquqas "Armanusa" was arrested, but Amar RA returned her to Maquqas. He was pleased with Amar RA.

Victory of Babylon(Qasre Shama)- 20H.(641AD).

Muslim commander- Amar bin Aas RA.

Roman commander- Ayeeraj.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Muslims sieged the fort for several months but could not be captured because the fort was

very strong and muslim army was very little. Amar RA asked help from Umar RA. He sent 12,000 army alongwith 4 sahabi Generals Zubair bin Awam, Ubada bin Samit, Miqdad bin Amar & Muslima bin Mukhalad RA and said each one is equivalent to 1,000 army.

Zubair RA climbed the fort and raised the slogan Allahu Akbar so loudly that the Romans were terrified. Meanwhile Zubair RA opened the gate and muslim army entered the fort. The Romans were so upset that they flew away by the fleet at river Nile.

Maquqas seeing the defeat of Romans requested to meet Amar RA for piece, which was agreed. The rest of the small cities were also captured with little effort.

Victory of Iskandria(Alexandria)- 21H.(642AD).

Romans fought remaining inside the fort so muslims could not succeed for long time.

Later they came out of their fort and attacked bravely but soon they retreated back and closed the gates. By chance Amar, Muslima and two others also

remained inside and wanted to fight till death. Romans offered to have a duel if the muslim wins they will be freed, but if the Roman wins then muslim may surrender. Amar RA wanted to fight but Muslima RA stopped him and fought himself and killed the Roman, and got freedom. Amar RA asked apology on his previous misbehavior. He forgave him. Umar RA wrote to Amar RA; I fear that the muslims are not following the Sunna of Prophet completely and have become weak in their moral. So collect them and motivate them for sincerity, bearing hardship and sword fighting training. Muslims obeyed Umar RA, and in the first attack city was captured. Amar RA sent armies in different directions and captured entire Egypt.

Bridal Feast of Nile

There was a religious tradition that every year the Qibtees use to sacrifice a virgin girl in river Nile. When that day came they asked permission from Amar RA. He said this is not allowed in Islam. It so happened that river Nile dried up and most of the tribes wanted to migrate. Amar RA wrote letter to Umar RA explaining the whole situation. Umar RA said whatever you have done is correct. I am sending a letter you put it in river Nile. The contents of the letter was:- "From slave of Allah and Ameer of muslims to River Nile- Oh Nile if you are running by your own then don't run, but if you are running is in the control of Allah then we pray to Allah to start you running. As soon as the letter was put in river Nile Allah started it run, and this year water was so full that it was never before.

Victory of Barqa & Tripoli - 23H.(644AD).

Barqa is between Egypt & Tripoli and its port is Benghazi. Amar RA advanced and captured upto Tripoli. He wanted to advance to Tunis but Umar RA stopped him. Amar RA made **Uqba bin Nafe RA** the Governor and returned back to Egypt.

Martyrdom of Umar RA. - 1st. Muharram 24H.(644AD).

While Umar RA was leading the Fajar prayer in Masjid-e-Nabvi, the Persian slave Abu Lu stabbed him by dagger. When he could not escape he suicided. Umar RA thanked Allah for not being killed by a muslim. At the time of death he asked his son to take permission from Aisha RA to be buried in her house beside his two respectable friends. Abdullah went to Aisha RA and asked permission. While crying she said; I kept this place for myself but I prefer Umar RA on myself. Hearing about the permission he thanked Allah and said to Abdullah to take permission again at the time of burial.

Governors of Umar RA. - 23H.(644AD).

Macca - Nafe bin Abul Haris
Taif- Sufyan bin Abdullah Saqfi
Kufa- Mugheera bin Shoba
Basra- Abu Musa Ashari
Egypt- Amar bin Aas
Damascus- Moavia bin Abi Sufyan
Hims- Umair bin Saad
Bahrain- Usman bin Abi Aas

Umar RA Origination/Reforms

Established

- 1- Baitul Maal (Public treasury) and its office
- 2- Courts & appointed judges.
- 3- Hijri calander.
- 4- Ameerul Momineen.
- 5- Army camps, offices and organized systems.
- 6- Salary of volunteers.
- 7- Land measurements.
- 8- Census(population).
- 9- Canals.
- 10-New cities like Kufa, Basra, Jeeza, Fustat, musal.
- 11-Provinces in each country.
- 12-Ushur(1/10 th.)
- 13-Revenue & Revenue collectors.
- 14-Foreign non muslim tades.
- 15-Prisons.
- 16-Whipping.
- 17-Patrol for looking after public security.
- 18-Police department.
- 19-Separate stable for good generation horses.
- 20-Postman / messenger.
- 21-Learning propagation of Islam.
- 22-Rest houses on the way from Maccaa to Madina.
- 23-Nourishment of thrown child.
- 24-Guest houses.
- 25-Arabs cannot be made slaves.
- 26-Poor christians & jews were given daily allowances.
- 27-Madrassa/ Schools and teachers for teaching Quran, Hadees, Fiqa(Islamic laws), literatures, Arabic language.
- 28-Salary of teachers & scholars.
- 29-Compilation of Quran in the time of Abu Bakar RA.
- 30-Judgment/Supposition in Islamic laws.
- 31-Proposal of Azan to Prophet SA.
- 32-Taraveeh prayer in congregation.
- 33-Three talaq as talaq bayn.
- 34-80 whips for drinking wine.
- 35-Endowment for pious use.
- 36-Four takbeer for Janaza prayer.
- 37-Zakat on trading horses.
- 38-Speeches in masjids.
- 39-Salary for Imam & moazin of masjids.
- 40-Penalty on blaming others.

Qualities of Umar RA.

- 1-Prompt and strong speaker.
- 2-Perfect in power of speech & writing.
- 3-He had poetic taste and interest.
- 4-Knowledge of names and races of tribes.
- 5-He knew Hebrew language.
- 6-His opinions/suggestions were supported by Quran.
- 7-Best ability of caliphhood.
- 8-Insight understanding, deep thoughts and wisdom.

- 9-Beside official duties and obligations he was a worshiper of nights.*
- 10-Not even prejudice to non muslims.*
- 11-Religious knowledge problems were discussed during the sittings of scholars.*
- 12-Use to regard the learned and excellent people.*
- 13-Use to respect and take care of relatives of Prophet SA.*
- 14-High morale, humble and simple.*
- 15-His awe dignity and fear was well known.*
- 16-His hot temper was reduced after caliphhood.*
- 17-He use to live very simple life with patches on dresses but still he had awe inspired dignified personality.*

Development

- 18H(638AD)-Foundation of first mosque in **Kufa**.*
- 21H(641AD)-Arabs capture **Ninvah** and invade **Armenia**.*
- 22H(642AD)-Foundation of **Fustat city in Egypt**, and **Great Mosque by Amr bin Aas RA**.*

3-Khalifa Usman Ghani RA.

Title- "Zun Nurayn" given by Prophet SA.

Age= 81 yrs.

Muslim-Amongst first 6 muslim.

Qualities

He was son-in-law of Prophet SA. Prophet SA married his two daughters one after the other.

He was full of modestly.

He took away all the copies of Quran and spread only one Quran throughout the muslim world.

He spread Islam in a large area.

He spent maximum wealth for propagation of Islam, so much so that Prophet SA said " Now there is no fear for Usman whatever he does".

Khilafat:-Moharram 24H to Zil Haj 35H.= 12 yrs.

644 - 656 AD.

On Arabian Peninsula, Iraq, Shaam, Iran, Afghanistan, Bulkh, Turkistan, Armeenia, Azerbaijan, Entire Sasanid Empire, Egypt, Barka, Tripoli & Cyprus.

Extended Masjid Nabvi.

Martyred on 18 Zil Haj 35H.(656AD).

Selection for Khilafat:-

Umar RA at his death formed a 6 member shura Ali, Usman, Abdur Rahman bin Auf, Saad bin Waqas, Zubair & Talha, to select khalifa, and ordered Miqdad bin Aswad to collect them in a house and decide the khalifa within 3 days. Those who do not agree with the shura cut off his head. At the end every one agreed on the selection of

Abdur Rahman bin Auf RA. He after taking the opinion of all the 6 members made bait (oath of elegance) on the hands of Usman RA. Soon after all the sahabi made bait, Ali RA also made bait.

He was made Khalifa by the 6 member Shura appointed by Umar RA.

His race meets with Prophet SA at 5th ancestry on Abde Munaf.

His Grandmother Ume Hakeem was Paternal aunty of Prophet SA.

He was called Zun noorayn because Prophet SA married his two daughter with Usman,

Ruqaya & Ume Kulsoom RA.

He was from Banu Umayya and was considered to be equivalent to Banu Hashim.

He was born after 6 yrs.of Incident of Feel(elephant).

He accepted Islam on invitation of Abu Bakr RA amongst the first three after Abu Bakr.

He was writer of Wahee(Revelation) on Prophet SA.

He was sometimes Deputy of Prophet SA in Madina.

He donated 1,000 camels, 50 horses and 1,000 dinar for Ghazwa Tabuk. On this occasion Prophet SA said; after today none of his action will harm him.

He purchased Bir(well) Rooma, and donated for the muslims, on the saying of Prophet.

He purchased land for extension of Masjide Nabvi on the call of Prophet SA.

Victories

Revolt in Azarbajjan & Armeenia-24H.(645AD).

Waleed bin Uqba RA crushed the rioters and the people of Azarbajjan again started paying tax.

Victory of Garjistan -24H.(645AD).

By Habeeb bin Muslima***Victory of Darband - 24H.(645AD).******By Abdur Rahman bin Rabeea.***

He captured Blunjar and went 200 miles onward. He was martyred during fight with Khaqan Khizr.

After his death entire Armeenia was taken away by muslims.

Victory of Iskandrya(Alexandria) - 26H.(647AD).***By Abdullah bin Abi Sarah RA & Amar bin Aas RA.***

Hearing the news of dismissal of Amar bin Aas RA, the people of Iskandrya rioted with the help of

Romans. Amar bin Aas & Abdullah RA defeated the Romans and captured their ships.

Victory of Tripoli - 25H.(646AD).***By Abdullah bin Abi Sarah RA.***

Entire Tripoli and its vicinity was recaptured.

Victory of Armeenia - 26H.(647AD).***By Salman bin Rabeea & Habeeb bin Muslima.***

They recaptured Armeenia.

Expedition of Anatolia - 26H.(647AD).***By Maavya bin Abu Sufyan RA. Governor of Sham.***

From Sham to Amoorya all the forts were captured.

Victory of North Africa- 26H.(647AD).***By Abdullah bin Abi Sarah RA.***

Usman RA sent an army from Madina in which Ibne Abbas, Ibne Umar, Ibne Amar bin Aas, Ibne Jafar, Ibne Zubair, Hassan & Hussain RA were present. From Barqa Uqba bin Nafe RA also joined the army. Abdullah RA advanced towards Tunis.

The Roman Jarjeer Governor of North Africa attacked with 120,000 army, both the army started fierce fighting. Meanwhile Jarjeer announced in his army that who so ever will bring the head of Ibne Abi Sarah he will be rewarded 100,000 dinar and will be married with my daughter.

Ibne Abi Sarah with the consultation of Ibne Zubair announced that who so ever will bring the head of Jarjeer he will be rewarded 100,000 dinar, will be married with the daughter of Jarjeer and the kingdom of Jarjeer will also be handed over to him. Abdullah bin Zubair killed Jarjeer and The flag of Islam was flown from Persia to Morocco.

Persians revolt in khurasan- 26H.(647AD).***Muslim commander- Abdullah bin Amir RA.***

Result- *Muslim victorious.*

Detail- *Persians killed the Ameer Ubaydullah bin Moammar RA. Ibne Amir RA with his army fought bravely with catapult crushed the rebellion and gave them admonitory punishment.*

Victory of Qibris(Cyprus) - 28H.(649AD).***By Maavya RA.***

He prepared a fleet of ship and anchored at Cyprus. After fierce fighting it was captured. Cyprus became the Naval army camp for muslims, for protection of Sham & Egypt.

Persians revolt in Tabaristan- 30H.(651AD).

Muslim commander- *Saeed bin Aas RA Ameer of Kufa.*

Result- Muslim victorious.

Detail- Saeed bin Aas RA alongwith Hassan, Hussain, Ibne Abbas, Ibne Umar, Ibne Amar bin Aas,

Ibne Zubair & Huzaifa bin Yaman RA took a great army and crushed the rebellions and recaptured Tabaristan & Jurjan.

Qaisar's attack on Iskandrya (Alexandria)- 31H.(652AD).

Muslim commander- Maavya & Ibne Abi Sarah RA.

Muslim army- Naval fleet.

Roman Emperor- Qustunteen s/o Hercules.

Roman army- Naval fleet of 500 ships.

Result- Muslim Victorious.

Detail- Muslim fleet stopped the way of Roman fleet in the sea. Muslim first time fought on the sea. Muslims fought bravely and the surface of the sea became red with the blood of Romans, thousands of Romans were killed. Romans escaped to Sicily island where the people of Sicily killed him.

Revolt in Khurasan- 31H.(652AD).

Muslim commander- Abdullah bin Amir RA.

Result- Victory.

Detail- Ibne Amir took an army from Basra crushed the rebellions, captured the two strong forts called Tibseen.

Victory of Neshapur, Toos & Hirat- 31H.(652AD).

Muslim commander- Abdullah bin Amir RA.

Detail- Ibne Amir advanced and captured Neshapur, Toos & Hirat.

Victory of Balkh & Takharistan- 31H.(652AD).

Muslim commander- Ahnaf bin Qays RA.

Detail- Ahnaf advanced to Takharistan where King of Turkistan brought a huge army, but was defeated badly, and captured Balkh & Takharistan.

Persian Emperor Yazdgard attack on Seestan- 31H.(652AD).

Yazdgard with the help of the Chiefs of China & Turkistan attacked on Seestan but Muslim Army defeated him badly. He ran away and took shelter in the house of a villager in Marvrud. The villager killed him and took off his precious dress & jewelries and threw his body in Marghab Canal. The flag of the Sasania Empire after 329 years came down for ever.

Naval attack on Rhodes & Crete Islands- 33H.(654AD).

Maaviya RA made successful attacks on both the Islands.

Martyrdom of Usman RA-18 ZilHaj 35H.(656AD).

Abdullah bin Saba was a wretched wicked & cunning jew from Yemen. At the time of Usman RA he came to Madina posed himself to be muslim and found out the weaknesses in muslims of that time. Then he formed a party to create political & religious differences between the muslims.

He strengthened his party in Basra, Kufa, Sham & Egypt. There was some opposition against Usman RA in Egypt, therefore he made Egypt the center of his mission.

He managed to take Mohammed bin Abu Bakr with him in his gang to Madina to kill Usman RA.

When Mohammed bin Abu Bakr along with few others jumped in Usman RA house from back and misbehaved with Usman RA, he said nephew if Abu Bakr would have been alive he would'nt have

liked your behavior. Mohammed bin Abu Bakr stepped back with shame. Amar bin Hamaq martyred Usman RA.

Murderer of Usman RA divided the unity of muslim and achieved their goal. The followers of Abdullah bin Saba called Shiya through out the muslim history played the role of dividing the unity of Muslim Ummah.

Governors of Usman RA - 35H.(656AD).

Macca- Abdullah bin Hadhrami.

Taif - Qasim bin Rabeea Saqfi.

Sana - Yala bin Munya.

Jund - Abdullah bin Rabeea.

Basra -Abdullah bin Amir.

Sham -Maavya bin Abi Sufyan.

Hims - Abdur Rahman bin Khalid bin Waleed.

Qansreen- Habeeb bin Muslima Fahri.

Jordan - Abul Awar Salma.

Palastine - Alqama bin Hakeem Kinani.

Kufa - Abu Musa Ashari

Qarqisyia - Jareer bin Abdullah.

Azarbaijan- Ashas bin Qays.

Mah - Utayba bin Nuhas.

Hamdan - Naseer.

Rai - Saeed bin Qays.

Isphahan - Saib bin Aqra.

Egypt - Abdullah bin Saad.

Qazi :- Zayd bin Saabit RA.

4-Khalifa Ali R.A.

Title- "Asadullah" "Door of Knowledge" given by Prophet SA.

Age- 63 yrs.

Qualities

He was son-in-law of Prophet SA, husband of Fatima RA, the most beloved daughter of Prophet SA.

He was very brave & wise.

Kh: 35H - 40H. (656-661AD).

Capital:- Kufa.

R.Sani 36H-Battle with Usman bin Haneef (Governor of Basra)

(657AD).

Aisha RA was performing haj when she heard the news of murder of Usman RA. She collected the people and demanded to punish the murderers of Usman RA. Zubair & Talha RA came from Madina. Saeed bin Aas, Waleed bin Uqba, Marwan bin Hakam and people of Banu Umayya came from Madina. 1,500 people agreed to move to Basra for help. The caravan moved to Basra and about 3,000 muslims camped at Marbad outside Basra. Usman bin Haneef Governor of Basra refused for help. After fierce fighting Usman was arrested Basra was captured. Talha & Zubair RA ordered to arrest those who were involved in the murder of Usman RA. Some were arrested and killed the rest fled away.

J.Awal 36H- Battle of Jamal(camel).

(656AD).

Hearing the news of Basra Ali RA advanced towards Basra. The great and noble sahaba fearing the bloodshed of muslims tried to stop him, but he insisted for compromise.

Following great & noble sahaba did not participate:-

Saad bin Waqas

Abdullah bin Umar

Mohammed bin Muslima

Usama Bin Zayd

The group of Abdullah bin Saba hypocrites also accompanied Ali RA.

9,000 muslims from Kufa also joined Ali RA.

Ali RA sent Oeqa bin Amar RA to Basra to compromise so as to avoid bloodshed. Ali RA camped outside Basra and Talha & Zubair RA also camped in front. Talks from both side continued till they reached on agreement.

When the Sabaee(Group of Abdullah bin Saba hypocrite) saw the failure of their plan, at night they attacked on the army of Aisha RA. Like this misunderstanding was created by the Sabaee and both the army got engaged in fighting. The plan of the enemy became successful.

Talha & Zubair RA were martyred & about 10,000 muslims were killed from both side.

Ali RA returned Aisha RA safely to Madina alongwith his brother Mohammed bin Abu Bakr RA.

Safar 37H- Battle of Saffayn.

657AD.

Ali RA came back to Kufa and made Kufa his capital. He sent delegates to Muavia RA for compromise but Shees bin Rebaee from Sabaee made the talks unsuccessful.

Both the army collected at Saffayn.

Ali RA army was 90,000.

Muavia RA army was 80,000.

Fierce fighting continued for several days til Ali RA was about to win. Muavia RA & Amar bin Aas RA raised the Quran and announced to form a shura from both sides and give decision according to Quran. Sabaee with Ali RA also wanted not to end the war, so they also supported the opinion. Six months time was given Abu Moosa Ashary RA was from Ali RA side and Amar bin Aas RA was from Muavia RA side.

90,000 muslims were killed from both sides.
During this time 3 groups were formed in the army of Ali RA. One group called Kharijee separated from Ali RA and started problems in the country.

38H- Battle with Khariji.

658AD.

Ali RA defeated the *Kharij* they fled away and collected at Naharwan.

38H- Battle of Naharwan.

658AD.

Ali RA killed Khariji's at Naharwan.

38H- Battle of Egypt

658AD.

Amar bin Aas RA recaptured Egypt.

Muavia RA announced his Khilafat in Sham.

39H- Basra & Kufa

660AD.

Muavia RA started sending armies in Kufa & Basra which shook the Khilafat of Ali RA.

Ramzan 40H- Martyrdom of Ali RA.

661AD.

Kharijees were against Ali RA as well as Muavia & Amar bin Aas RA.

After the killing of *Kharijees* in Nahrwan 3 of the *Kharijees* collected in Makka wept on their people killed in Nahrwan decided to take revenge.

Decision was taken that on 17 Ramzan 40H.

Abdur Rahman bin Mujjim Humairi will murder Ali RA.

Birk bin Abdullah Tamimi will murder Muavia RA.

Amar bin Bakar Tamimi will murder Amar bin Aas RA.

All the 3 hid in the masjid where they use to pray Fajr.

Abdur Rehman bin Mujjem martyred Ali RA.

He was arrested at the spot and assassinated.

Kh-Imam Hassan RA- 47 yrs.

40H - 41H = 6 months(661AD).

Birth:- 15 Rmzn. 3H

Capital:- Kufa.

Performed 25 haj on foot.

41H- People of Kufa selected Imam Hassan RA as Khalifa.

Muavia RA advanced with 60,000 army towards Kufa.

Imam Hassan RA advanced with 40,000 people towards Madain to stop Muavia RA.

Muavia RA sent Abdullah bin Amir RA to Imam Hassan RA for peace talk.

Imam Hassan RA said I am ready to hand over the Khilafat on certain conditions.

Muavia RA signed a blank paper and send it to Hassan RA saying whatever conditions you like write on it.

41H (661AD)- Handed over Khilafat to Ameer Maavia RA and went to Madina.

50H (669AD)- Martyred by poisoning and buried in Janatul Baqee Madina.

Khilafat Banu Umayya**Total Khulafa = 13 Nos.****41H to 132H. = 660 - 750AD. = 90 yrs.****Capital at Damishq(Damascus)****Spain****Total Khulafa = 16+ 19****92H to 898H = 710-1493AD=800 yrs.****Capital at Qurtaba****1- Ameer Maavia RA bin Abi Sufyan bin Harb bin Umayya.****41H - 60H. = 661-680AD.=20 yrs.****Age:- 77 yrs.****Birth:- 15 years before hijrat in Makka.****Death:- Rajab 60H (April 680AD) in Damascus.****Accepted Islam:- 8H. At Victory of Makka.****Qualities:- Revelation writer***Patient, Tolerant, Forbearing.***15H-17H:- Hakim Jordan at the tyme of Umar RA.****17H-22H:- Hakim Damascus & Jordan. At the time of Umar RA.****22H-41H:- 20 yrs. Hakim Shaam before Khilafat. At the time of Usman RA.****20 yrs. Khalifa(Caliph).****Ruled on:-***Arabian Peninsula, Palastine, Egypt ,Libya, Tunis, Sudan, Iraq arab & ajam, Cyprus, Konya, Qiqa, Kohistan.***There were 3 political parties:-****1-Bani Umayya****2-Sheya:- Followers of Ali RA.****3-Kharijeers:- Created at Battle of Saffayn. Between Ali RA & Muavia, Amar bin Aas RA.****Governor of Iraq & Shaam:-****41-60H:- Mugheera & Ziyad was appointed Governor of Basra and Kufa in different periods and they were busy in crushing the Kharijeers, who were killing & looting in Iraq.****Mugheera bin Shoba died in 50H. Ziyad died in 53H.****53-60H-Ubaydullah bin Ziyad- Governor Basra & Khurasan.****Upto 43H-Amar bin Aas RA-Governor of Egypt. He died in 43H.****Governor of Egypt & Africa:-****43-47H- Abdullah bin Amar bin Aas****47-50H- Moavia bin Khadeej.****50-55H- Uqba bin Nafe****55-60H- Muslima bin Mokhallad.****Governor of Hijaz:-****41-60H- Marwan bin Hakam/Saeed bin Aas.****Victories****Eastern Coast****44H (664AD)- Mohallab bin Abi Safra captured upto Lahore.****Northern & Western Coast****Ameer Muavia RA prepared a fleet of 1,700 armed ships. He made a ship building industry in Sham and wood were brought from the mountains of Lebanon.***Cyprus Island, Greece & Rhodes Islands were captured. These islands were Naval army camps protecting the muslim territory from Romans attack.***Qustuntunia(Constantinople)****49H (670AD):- Sufyan bin Auf took a huge army to attack on Qustuntunya(Constantinople) the Roman Capital. Great sahaba like Abu Ayub Ansari, Ibne Abbas, Ibne Umar, Ibne Zubair Ra & Yazeed were present, reached by land to Bosphorous shore. Another Naval army under the**

command of **Basar bin Abi Artat** reached at the wall of Constantinople. During the siege of Constantinople Muslims had to bear much loss of men and ships. Abu Ayub Ansari RA was buried at the wall of Constantinople. His tomb still exists which was built at the time of Khilafat Usmania.

Africa

47H-55H:- Uqba bin Nafe with 10,000 army captured the Northern coast of Africa from Sudan to Morocco. He constructed a big city **Qirwan** after cleaning the jungle. A beautiful mosque was also constructed. This city was built in 5 years. The Muslims started living in peace in this city. Muslims were able to fight with the Barbar's(Barbarians) and captured a large area. Many barbarians accepted Islam.

2- Yazeed bin Maavia

60H - 64H. (680-683AD) = 3.5 yrs.

Age:- 42 yrs.

Birth:-22H in Damascus.

Death:-R.Awal 64H in Damascus.

60H- After several letters of invitation from the leaders of Kufa Hussain RA sent Muslim bin Aqeel to Kufa to find out the reality.

Zilhaj 60H (680AD) - Hussain RA left Makka with his family towards Kufa on the invitation of the leaders of Kufa. Although the Great & noble sahaba stopped him but he did not stop. When he was near Kufa he heard that Muslim bin Aqeel was martyred. Then he realized the treachery of the Kufi's, and tried to return back but now it was too late. Army sent by Ibne Ziyad surrounded him. He had no choice but to fight.

10 Mhrm. 61H - Hussain RA was martyred by Shimar commander of Ubaydullah Ibne Ziyad at Karbala Kufa.

When the head of Hussain RA and female family members were sent to Yazeed, tear came out of his eyes and he said that Ibne Ziyad has made his place in hell. He sent the family of Hussain RA with respect and honour to Madina.

Zilhaj 63H- Muslim bin Uqba attacked on Madina and made killing.

Mhrm. 64H -Heseen bin Numair Attacked on Makka but had to retreat because the news of death of Yazeed reached Makka.

Victories of Khurasan

61H- Muslim bin Ziyad was made **Governor of Khurasan & Sajistan**. He sent **Mohallab bin Abi Safra** to deal with the rioters. Mohallab defeated them. He then attacked on **Samarqand**.

Victories of Sajistan

62H- Yazeed bin Ziyad was made **Governor of Sajistan**. Yazeed bin Ziyad was defeated by the rioters of Kabul. So **Talha bin Abdullah Khazaee** was sent, he defeated the rioters and became the **Governor of Sajistan**.

Victories of Africa

62H- Uqba bin Nafe again became the **Governor of Africa**. He took a huge army and defeated the **Roman** army and captured Bagha, Zaab, Qahrat, Tunja & Sose, till he reached extreme west and put his horse in Atlantic Ocean and said Oh Allah if this ocean was not in my way I would have advanced further. Later Uqba was martyred in a battle with Kaseela the Barbarian leader. He captured North Africa.

Marwan bin Hakam

64H - 65H. 684-685AD. = 1 yr.

Age:- 62 yrs.

Birth:-3H in Taif.

Death:-Rmzan 65H in Damascus.

His father Hakam was real uncle of Usman Ghani RA.

Ruled on:-Sham & Egypt.

Abdullah Bin Zubair

64H - 73H = 9 yrs.

Birth:-2H in Madina.

Death:-J.Akhir 73H in Makka.

Ruled on:-Hijaz & Iraq.

67H-Rebellion Tawabeen

Those who did treachery to Hussain RA for the sake of repentance formed a group and started massacre in Iraq and advanced towards Sham. At Qarqeesyia Ubaydullah bin Ziyad crushed the rebellions.

67H-Rebellion Mukhtar Saqafi

Mukhtar captured Kufa and started killing all those who were involved in the murder of Hussain RA. But his intention was only to form his kingdom in Iraq. Ubaydullah bin Ziyad fought bravely but was defeated and killed by Mukhtar. Actually Mukhtar was non-arab and enemy of arabs so he started killing arabs.

68H-Abdullah bin Zubair RA posted his brother Musab bin Zubair RA as Governor of Basra and asked to crush the riot of Mukhtar. Musab crushed the rioters and killed Mukhtar.

Rebellion Khwarij

68H-Abdullah bin Hars Governor of Basra appointed Muhallab bin Abi Safra to crush the rioters. Muhallab crushed the rioters killed their leader Ubaydullah bin Mahooz. The rest fled away to Kirman & Isfahan.

68-71H- Musab bin Zubair became the Governor of Basra. He appointed Umar bin Ubaydullah to crush the Khawarij. Umar defeated them and turned them out from Arjan. Now they collected at Isfahan.

Musab again appointed Muhallab to crush Khwarij. Muhallab turned them out towards Ramhurmuz.

Now Musab bin Zubair was martyred and Iraq was captured by Abdul Malik.

3- Abdul Malik bin Marwan

65H - 86H. 685-705AD. = 21 yrs.

Age:- 60 yrs.

Birth:- 26H in Madina and learnt deen from great scholar sahaba.

Death:-Shawal 86H in Damascus. At the time of death he collected his sons and gave a God fearing advise.

Ruled on:-

Egypt & Shaam. On remaining area Abdullah bin Zubair RA upto 73H.

After 73H on Iraq. Rome- (Harqala, Qaysaria, Qalqeela, Maseesa). Vast. Africa. Eastern Territories-(Marv, Kush).

Qualities

Abdul Malik was a great Islamic scholar, a brave fighter and he is the one who recaptured all the Islamic territories and strengthened the Islamic Kingdom with his selected **Governors, Hajjaj bin Yousuf, Muhallab & sons, Zohair bin Qays, Hassaan bin Noman & Ubaydullah bin Abdullah. Although most of the time he was busy in crushing the internal riots in Iraq.**

He constructed **Gumbad-e-Sakhra**(Dome of the Rock) in 688-691AD on the Rock from where **Prophet Mohammed SA ascended for Meraj. It is also believed to be the place of Haikal-e-Sulaimani.**

71-77H-Rebellion Khwarij

71H-Khalid bin Abdullah was made the **Governor of Basra**. He again sent **Muhallab** to crush the Khwarij. He turned them out from Ahwaz.

Meanwhile another Khariji leader Abu Fadeek captured Bahrain. Khalid could not succeed against him.

73H-Bishr Bin Marwan was made **Governor of Iraq** and ordered to again send **Muhallab** on this mission. When the army reached Ramhurmuz news came of the death of Bishr. As usual people of Kufa & Basra betrayed and returned back to their houses.

75H-Hajjaj became the Governor of Iraq and dealt with the people of Kufa & Basra strongly and sent them back to **Muhallab**. He went on defeating the Khwarij and captured **entire Persia**.

Muhallab made his son **Yazeed- Hakim of Kirman** and returned back to Kufa.

He was given a great welcome by Hajjaj.

76H-One Kharijee leader **Shabeeb** started killing, looting and ruined the peace of Iraq. Hajjaj sent several army but they were all defeated. Surprising thing was that only **1,000 Kharijeess defeated 50,000 Iraqees**.

Hajjaj asked help from Abdul Malik. He sent Shami army to Hajjaj. They fought and defeated Shabeeb. He escaped towards Persia and then to Kirman. Sufyan bin Abro followed him and had a last fight at the bridge of Ahwaz. **Shabeeb while crossing the bridge fell from his horse and was drowned in the river**.

77H-One leader of Khwarij named **Qatri** escaped to **Tibristan**. Hajjaj sent Sufyan bin Abro towards Tibristan. **Sufyan defeated Qatri and killed him. Like this 24 years of the problem of Khwarij ended who had destroyed the peace of the country and stopped the rising of Umma**.

81-83H-Rebellion Abdur Rehman bin Ashas

Abdur Rehman bin Ashas commander of Hajjaj became against Hajjaj. He had to fight for 2 years till he got victory.

Victory of Iraq

71H (690AD) -**Abdul Malik** attacked on **Iraq**. **Musab bin Zubair** fought bravely and gave up his life. **Abdul Malik captured Iraq**.

Victory of Hijaz

72H (691AD) -**Hajjaj bin Yousuf** was sent to attack on Makka. **Abdullah bin Zubair RA was martyred on J. Akhir 73H**. Abdul Malik returned his body to Asma RA and was buried in Hujun- Makka.

Now Abdul Malik was the only Khalifa/Caliph of the entire muslim world.

73-75H-Hajjaj remained Governor of **Hijaz**.

75-86H - Hajjaj was Governor of **Iraq**.

Victories:-

77H (696AD) - Harqala-Rome.

Victories of Eastern Territories

79H (698AD) -**Marv**

80H (699AD) -**Kush**

Muhallab crossed river Balkh and captured **Kush**. They agreed on peace treaty.

82H (701AD) -**Muhallab** returned to **Marv**. He made his son **Yazeed** the Ruler of **Marv**.

83H (702AD) -**Muhallab** at the time of death called his 10 sons and made God fearing advices and asked them to remain united. **He died in Zilhaj 83H**.

Victories of Africa

69H (688AD) -**Qirvan & Mumsh**

When Abdul Malik got time he made **Zohair bin Qays Governor of Africa** and ordered to attack on **Qirvan** with a great army. When **Zohair** reached Qirvan Kaseela the barbarian ruler left to Mumsh. Zohair attacked on **Mumsh** and after fierce fighting Kaseela alongwith several Barbarian & Roman chiefs were killed in the battle field.

72H (691AD) -When **Zohair** reached Barqa the Romans attacked with a huge army.

Zohair was not prepared for that but he fought bravely and was **martyred** with all his companions. **Abdul Malik** was shocked too much but he could not do anything because he was busy fighting with Abdullah bin Zubair.

74H (693AD)-**Qartajna**

Hassaan bin Noman was made the **Governor of Africa**. He attacked with a huge army on **Qartajna** the biggest kingdom of Africa killed the Barbarians & Romans. They escaped to **Silsil & Spain**. Wherever he knew about the power of Barbarians & Romans he crushed them. He

knew about **Queen Kahina**. He attacked on her but muslims were defeated. Hassaan returned to **Barqa**.

Abdul Malik was busy fighting with the Khwarij therefore could not sent help.

The queen ruled for 5 more years.

78H (697AD) -Africa(completely)

Abdul Malik sent a huge army to **Hassaan**. He attacked on **Queen Kahina** arrested her and killed her.

After this defeat muslims again got control on **entire Africa**. Several barbarians accepted Islam.

Hassaan came back to Qirvan and started spreading Islam in the barbarians and a huge quantity accepted Islam.

Victories of Northern Area

70H (689AD) -When Abdul Malik was busy fighting with Musab bin Zubair, the Romans attacked on Northern Shaam. So he made peace treaty with Romans.

80H (699AD) -Qisarya-Rome

Again started attack on Rome and first captured **Qisaria**.

81H (700AD) -Qalqeela-Rome

Ubaydullah bin Abdullah bin Abdul Malik captured Qalqeela.

84H (703AD) -Maseesa-Rome

Ubaydullah captured Maseesa. Muslims first time settled there. A fort was Built and 300 army was deputed for protection.

86H (705AD) - Fort Boolaq & Akhram.

4- Waleed bin Abdul Malik

86H - 96H. 705-715AD. = 10 yrs.

Age:- 51 yrs.

Birth:-50H in Damascus.

Death:-J.Sani 96H

Hajaj remained Governor General of Iraq arab & ajam. Right hand of Waleed. Brave but cruel.

Hajaj died in Shwal 95H at the age of 54. He was good Qari & Hafiz. He put the punctuations in Quran for non-arabs. He was the best arab speaker. He crushed the rioters during Abdul Malik. Hajaj made maximum victories in 20 yrs.

Qualities of Waleed

He was not a scholar but a good ruler.

In **88H** he expanded and reconstructed **Masjid Nabvi** under the supervision of **Umar bin Abdul Aziz Ra Governor of Madina**. Experts from Sham & Room were called for construction.

In **87H** he started construction of a great beautiful **Jama Masjid in Damascus** and completed in

8 years. Most precious stones & marbles were used in construction. Roof & wall was made of gold tiles on which decoration was done by jewels. Chandeliers were made of jewels and hanged by golden chains. A Mehrab-e-Sahaba was made in which a big gem/jewel was hanged which use to shine and glitter the masjid even after extinguishing the lamps.

He ruled successfully. His entire period was in Jihad and victories. He had 4 great commanders

1-Mohammed bin Qasim 2-Qotayba bin Muslim 3-Moosa bin Naseer 4-Muslima bin Abdul Malik, who made great victories in **Europe Northern Area & Asia**.

Ruled on:- Arabian Peninsula, Sham, Palestine, Egypt, North Africa upto Maghrib, Spain, Iraq arab & ajam, Khurasan, Marv, Balkh, Bukhara, Samarqand, Tashqand, Farghana, Kashghar, Turkistan, Afghanistan, Sindh, Multan.

Victories

87H (705AD)- Bukhara

88H (706AD) - Jarsuma & Ratwana.

89H (707AD) - Manorqa Islands.

91H (709AD)- Madain & Azarbaijan.

92H (710AD) - Spain by Tariq bin Ziyad.

93H (711AD) - Debal (Sindh), Multan by Mohammed bin Qasim. Karkh, Khwarzam, Baida, Samargand.

94H (712AD) - Kabul, Shas (Tashkent), Farghana (Uzbekistan).

95H (713AD) - Muqan

96H (714AD) - Toos.

Victories by Mohammed bin Qasim

Victory of Sindh

Some arab traders died in **Sirandeeep** island. The kind king of Sirandeeep returned their family to Iraq by ship with valuable gifts for **Waleed bin Abdul Malik**. On the way at **Deebal** the police of Raja Dahir looted the goods and arrested the women & children. One woman cried out " **Oh Hajjaj help us.**" This news reached Hajjaj.

Hajjaj sent **Abdullah Aslami** with 6,000 army but he was defeated and martyred. Then he sent **Budayl bin Bijilly**. He fell down from the horse and martyred. Third time Hajjaj sent his very young brother or nephew **Mohammed bin Qasim of only 17 years age** with 6,000 army and made him the **Governor of Sindh**.

Mohammed bin Qasim came to Makran prepared his army and advanced towards **Sindh**.

Letter of Hajjaj to Mohammed bin Qasim:-

Wherever you camp dig trenches all around. Most of the night spend in worshipping.

Always remain busy in reciting Quran. Make zikr of Allah and ask help from Allah.

Install the catapult named Urus, aiming towards the temple.

93H (711AD) -He captured **Qanzpur (Panjgur)**. Then Armabeel (Arman Bela).

94H (712AD) -Sieged **Deebal city**, stoned with the great catapult captured the city. Constructed a **Jama masjid** and settled 4,000 muslims. Captured the cities on way.

95H (713AD) -Crossed river Sindh fought fiercely with **Raja Dahir**. **Raja Dahir** was killed in the battlefield. He advanced victorious defeated the queen in **Darawarh**. Then he defeated Jai Singh s/o Raja Dahir.

95H (713AD) -Captured **Sadandri**, the people became muslim. Captured **Ror** and constructed a **Jama masjid**.

96H (714AD) -Captured **Sika** crossed river Biyas and captured **Multan**.

The gold obtained from Multan was dumped in a room of size 30'x24'. Therefore Multan was called the "Mine of gold" by Arabs.

The total booty obtained from Sindh valued 12,000,000 Dirham.

In Multan he heard the news of **death of Hajjaj**.

96H (714AD) -He advanced towards **Keeraj**, captured the cities on way and defeated **Raja Dohar of Keeraj** and killed him.

Waleed died and kindled the light of Islam in Sindh by Mohammed bin Qasim.

Victories by Qutayba bin Muslim

Victory of Northern Area upto China

86H (704AD) -**Hajjaj made Qutaiba bin Muslim Governor of Khurasan.**

He crossed river Jeejoon and started following victories:-

86H (704AD)

Saghanyan:-Shah Saghanyan handed over his territory.

Akhroon & Shooman (Takharistan):-Shah Akhroon & Shooman made peace treaty.

Farghana:-Commander Saleh captured cities of Farghana.

87H (705AD)

Bukhara:-Captured the city **Baykand** of Bukhara. The booty obtained was more than Khurasan.

88H (706AD)

Noshkat:-People of Noshkat requested for peace.

Amsana:-People of Amsana requested for peace.

The Turks, Saghad & People of Farghana attacked jointly **Qutayba** defeated them badly.

89H (707AD) -**Victory of Bukhara**

Kharqana Sifly:-Defeated a large army of the enemy and advanced to Bukhara but could not succeed.

90H (708AD) -Bukhara:-Reattacked on Bukhara and after fierce fighting it was captured. Shah Turk Khaqan & his son was also wounded.

Shah Saghad was so afraid that he requested for peace.

91H (709AD)-Riot of Nezak Chief of Badghees

Nezak collected the **Chief's of Bulkh, Marvrose, Taliqan, Faryab, Jozjan & Kabul** and rioted against Qutayba.

Qutayba advanced to **Taliqan** after fierce fighting defeated Chief of Taliqan. Then defeated the chief's of **Faryab, Jozjan & Kabul**. Then he followed Nezak but he hid himself in **Fort Kurz**.

Qutayba with great effort arrested him and by order of Hajjaj killed him and his 700 rioters.

93H (711AD) -Khwarzam Shah requested for peace which was accepted.

94H (712AD) -Saghad (Samarqand).

Qutayba advanced to Samarqand. They collected the neighboring rulers **King Shash, Khaqan China & Ruler of Farghana** and prepared a great army including their prince & son of Chief's. The enemy fought bravely but was defeated and most of the prince & Chief's son were killed in the battlefield. The fort was destroyed with catapult. **Ghauzak** handed over Samarqand. Muslims entered victorious. Qutayba according to peace treaty ordered to burn the idols. Ghauzak said I advise you not to burn the idols otherwise you will be destroyed. **Qutayba said then I will burn it myself. 50,000 misqal gold was collected. When they saw the helplessness of their god. Majority of them accepted Islam.**

Qutayba constructed a mosque and **Abdullah bin Muslim** was made the **Hakim of Samarqand**.

95H (713AD) -Victory of Shash, Farghana & Kashan. Qutayba after victory returned to Marv.

96H (714AD) -Qutayba took a great army alongwith their families settled in **Samarqand** and the men advanced to **Kashghar** border city of **China**. Captured **Kashghar** and entered inside **China**. **Khqan China** became afraid and requested for peace, which was accepted. **Qutayba** returned to Marv. In the beginning of battle **Qutayba heard the news of death of Waleed.**

Victories by Moosa bin Naseer

Victory in Europe

Moosa bin Naseer:-Governor of Africa

Tariq bin Ziyad:-Commander(freed slave) of Moosa bin Naseer.

Yulyan(Count Julian):-Leader of Greece was Ruler of Fort Sabta at the North shore of Morocco.

Rozreeq(Roderick):-King of Spain.

Count Julian became enemy of King Roderick because he raped his daughter.

Count Julian wanted to take revenge with **King Roderick** so he came to **Moosa bin Naseer** told the whole story and offered his help in attacking on King Roderick.

Moosa bin Naseer was already planning to attack on **Spain** he took permission from **Waleed**

91H (709AD) -Moosa sent **Tareef** with 500 army with **Count Julian**. They anchored at **Port Jazeera** and came back victorious with handsome of booty.

92H (710AD) -Moosa sent **Tariq bin Ziyad** alongwith **Count Julian** with 7,000 army to attack on **Spain**.

Tariq anchored at eastern coast burnt his ships, stood up on a hillock and said now there is only two way either victory or martyrdom. Then he gave a spiritual speech which motivated the army. This hillock was named Jabalut Tariq and still called with little change Gibraltar. By chance a famous commander **Theodomir** was nearby. He attacked with great army but was defeated badly and came running to **Roderick**.

Roderick came to Capital **Tulaytla** collected a huge army and advanced from Qurtaba with **100,000** army. When **Tariq** knew about this huge army he informed **Moosa**. **Moosa** sent 5,000 army.

Rmzan 92H (710AD) -Both the armies faced at Shazoon city. **Tariq** gave a spiritual speech. By the name of **Allah** muslims attacked bravely and after 8 days of fierce fighting **muslims got victory**. **Thousands** of enemy were killed and drowned in the river behind them **King Roderick** was also drowned.

8 days fight changed the history of Undlus/Spain.

For 800 years the fate of Undlus/Spain was decided in favour of muslims.

Moosa spread his army in different directions and captured following cities:-

Qurtaba-By commander **Mughees**

Mersia-Captured from Moroccan commander **Tadmir/Theodomir** and handed over to him.

Capital Tulaytla:-By **Tariq**.

North western province Jaleeqia:- By **Tariq**.

Rmzan 93H (711AD) -**Moosa bin Naseer** anchored at the coast of **Undlus/Spain**. **Count Julian** welcomed him and in his guidance

Julian welcomed him and in his guidance

Captured following cities:-

Qarmoona-

Ashbelya-Recaptured by **Abdul Aziz s/o Moosa**.

Marda/Merida-**Queen Agelona** was arrested and married to **Abdul Aziz s/o Moosa**.

Moosa came to capital **Tulaytla** where he was given an honourable welcome by **Tariq**.

Moosa & Tariq captured entire **Spain**.

Victory in France

Moosa wanted to capture **Europe** so he advanced in **France**.

Captured few border cities of **France**.

But was called back by **Waleed** to **Sham**.

Handed over to his son **Abdul Aziz** as **Ruler of Undlus/Spain**.

Return of Moosa from Spain to Sham

Moosa reached **Sham** when **Khalifa Waleed** was giving **Juma khutba**(Friday speech) on the member of great **Jame Umayy Masjid**. **Khalifa** embraced **Moosa** and granted him **Royal dress**. He then praised & thanked **Almighty Allah** for the victories and prayed for further success. After prayer **Moosa** presented **30 slave princes, 30,000 slave girls, 100,000 slaves and 3 big carts of gold, silver & precious jewels**.

Victories of Muslima bin Abdul Malik

Muslima alongwith his nephew **Abbas bin Waleed** kept on attacking on **Roman** territories.

He captured the following:-

Fort Towana, Fort Buleq, Fort Akhram, Fort Bulis, Fort Amureen, Ququm & Qamoonia.

5- Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik

96H - 99H. 715-717AD. = 2 yrs. 8 months.

Age:- 45 yrs.

Birth:- 54H in **Madina**.

Death:- **Safar 99H**.

Qualities:- Religious, pious, had the ambition of spreading Islam, that's why died, away from the capital in **Marj Wabiq-Qansreen**.

He stopped music & song.

He appointed **Umar bin Abdul Aziz** as **Khalifa/Caliph**.

Umar bin Aziz was his **Wazeer/Minister**.

1-Mohammed bin Qasim:- Killed in **96H** by **Saleh- Governor of Iraq** in revenge of his brother **Adam-Kharjee** killed by **Hajjaj**.

2-Outayba bin Muslim:- Killed in **96H** by **Wakee Tamimi** one of his own commander in a battle for rioting against **Khalifa Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik**.

3-Moosa bin Naseer:- Died in **97H** in house arrest in **Madina**.

Victories

97H (716AD) -**Qahistan & Jarjan-Tibristan**:- This was captured by **Saeed bin Aas** at the time of **Kh.Usman GhaniRA**

People of this area rioted and left Islam.

Yazeed bin Muhallab-Governor of Khurasan attacked with 120,000 army on **Turks** and captured **Qahistan**.

One brave muslim **Ibne Abi Sabra** cut off the head of **Shah Vailum**. So **Shah Jarjan** requested for peace, so it was captured on peace treaty. Great amount of booty was obtained.

98H (717AD) -Attack on Qustuntunia/Constantinople.

Sulaiman sent his brother **Muslima bin Abdul Malik** with 120,000 army by land and 120,000 army by sea to attack on **Qustuntunia**. During the siege due to disloyalty of one of the muslim commander **Lyon** and death of **Kh.Sulaiman, Kh.Umar bin Abdul Aziz** called back the army. The army returned with great loss.

6-Umar bin Abdul Azeez Ra.

99 - 101H. 717-720AD.= 2.5 yrs.

Father:- Abdul Aziz bin Marwan bin Hakam

Mother:- Umme Asim binte Asim bin Umar bin Khattab(Grand daughter of Umar RA).

99H - 101H. = 2 yrs. 5 months

Age:- 40 yrs.

Birth:- 61H

Death:-Rajab 101H. In Damascus.

Qualities

From childhood studied in Madina by Mohaddis Saleh bin Kaysan Ra, Anas bin Malik RA and other Sahaba & Tabeen RA.

Pious, humble, god fearing & simple living.

His mother was grand daughter of Umar RA and his wife Fatima was daughter of Kh.Abdul Malik.

86H - 93H:- Governor of Madina.

96H - 99H:- Governor General of Madina.

He established true Islamic state, peace, justice & honesty. Returned taxes taken by previous Caliphs by cruelty.

He stopped cursing Ali RA in Khutba(Friday speech).

His wife deposited happily all her jewelries in Baitul mal/Public treasury and the precious diamond gifted by her father Kh.Abdul Malik.

Martyred by poisoning.

101H (720AD) -Muslim forces crossed Pyrenees and captured Narbonne.

7-Yazeed bin Abdul Malik

101H - 105H. 720-724AD.= 4 yrs. 1 month.

Age:- 38 yrs. Good in the beginning but changed later.

Birth:-65H

Death:-Shaban 105H near Damascus.

101H-Muslima bin Abdul Malik crushed the riots of **Yazeed bin Mohallab** and family.

102H-Musayab bin Bishr fought and got free the muslims siezed in Castle Bahily of Samarqand.

103H-Saeed Harshi-Governor of Khurasan attacked on Samarqand and killed a large number of Turks arrested them and brought the booty.

104H-Jarrah bin Abdullah Hakami-Governor Armenia & Azarbajjan advanced towards Turkistan. At **Nahrn** after fierce fighting muslims got victory and Turks ran back.

Jarrah advanced towards **Balanjar** attacked on a strong fort of Turks. After fierce fighting muslims got victory and followed the Turks killed a large number and captured the nearby vicinity.

105H-Jarrah advanced further captured **Bilade Lan** arrested large number of Turks and returned with large quantity of booty. The continuous victory of **Jarrah, the Turks** became afraid and again peace was established in Turkistan.

8-Hisham bin Abdul Malik**105H - 125H. 724-743AD. = 20 yrs. Appx.****Age:- 55 yrs. .****Birth:- 72H Damascus****Death:-R.Sani 125H Damascus****Qualities:-** He is counted as the best Khalifa/Caliph of Banu Umayya. He was religious, pious, ingenious, gentle, courageous & modest. He was brilliant & intelligent. He use to eat simple food and wear simple dress.

Jaad bin Darham raised the faith of Khalq Quran. He was assassinated.

Ghilan bin Yunus raised the idea of Qadria. He was also assassinated.

Ruled on:- Muslim world captured till previous Caliphs.**Victories****Khurasan till China border****107H-Muslim bin Saeed** faced 200,000 Turks in command of the **Son of Khaqan**. Muslim fought bravely and fiercely. Few thousand muslims defeated the huge army killed Turks & Samarqand's famous commanders also the **Son of Khaqan**.**108H-Asad bin Abdullah** attacked on **Khatal & Ghaur** and returned victorious with booty.**109H-Ashrus bin Abdullah** became the **Governor of Khurasan**. He appointed an elderly person **Abul Saida** for preaching Islam. The **Turks** started entering Islam in huge number.

When they were asked to obey the obligatory commandments and memorise the Quran they apostatized.

and rioted with the help of people of Samrqand. **Ashrus** fought and defeated them.**112H-Junaid bin Abdur Rehman** was made the **Governor of Khurasan**. He was in **Samarqand** when he heard about the attack on **Bukhara** by **Khaqan**. **Junaid** reached **Bukhara** fought bravely and defeated the **Turks**.**116H-Riot of Haris bin Sareej:-Asim bin Abdullah** was appointed **Governor of Khurasan**. He crushed the rioters, but **Haris** flew away.**119H-Asad bin Abdullah** was made **Hakim of Khurasan**. He attacked on the tribe **Khatal** and captured their big Fort. They left for China.**119H-Asad** had fight with **Khaqan** at **Joozjan**. He defeated **Khaqan** followed him and killed thousands of Turks and obtained large quantity of booty.**119H-Korsool** a Turk **Commander in Chief** killed **Khaqan** on personal enmity amongst each other, and like this **Allah** saved the muslims from a big enemy.**120H-Nasar bin Sayar** was made **Hakim Khurasan**. He advanced towards **Shash** and he faced the **Turk Commander in Chief Korasool**. **Korasool** was arrested assassinated and hanged beside the river bank for lesson of **Turks**. **Haris** escaped to **Faryab**.**Nasar** advanced to **Farghana**. Ruler of **Farghan** signed **peace treaty**.**Azarbajjan & Arminia****107H-Muslima bin Abdul Malik** was posted as **Governor of Azarbajjan & Arminia**. He sent his assistant **Haris bin Umar Tai**. He captured several cities from **Turks**.**110H-Muslima** advanced himself towards the **Turkish territory**. **Khaqan** with the **Turks** fought bravely but was defeated and escaped.**111H-Jarrah** was again made the **Governor**. He attacked and captured **Madina Bayda**.**People of Khizr & Turks** attacked on muslims with great army defeated the muslims and **Jarrah** was martyred.**111H-Hisham** sent **Saeed Harshi**. He attacked bravely and after fierce fighting at river **Beeltan** defeated the **Turks**. **Thousands** were killed and drowned in river.**113H-Hisham** again sent **Muslima bin Abdul Malik** to **Arminia & Azarbajjan**. He captured **Balanjar & its entire vicinity**.**114H-Hisham** called back **Muslima** and sent **Marwan bin Mohammed** with **120,000** army. He captured entire **Azarbajjan & Arminia & all the cities of Khizr upto Caspian Sea/Bahre Khizr**. Ruler of **Khizr** flew away to bordering area.**Victories of Asia Kochak/Anatolia**

Marwan bin Mohammed, Muslima bin Abdul Malik, Moavia bin Hisham & Sulaiman bin Hisham fought bravely and captured important forts & cities of **Roman Kingdom**.

112H-Qaysaria- Rome.

113H-Battal a famous brave Commander captured Hanjra.

117H-Qunya & Kharshna.

Naval fleets also use to attack on Roman Territories.

Abdur Rehman bin Moavia bin Khadeej was Ameerul Bahar/ Admiral & Abdullah bin Uqba was a distinguished Naval Officer.

During the period of Hisham following actions were taken:-

-In Turkistan & Azarbaijan the strength of Turks& Tatars were crushed.

-Revolt in Sindh was crushed and muslims were populated.

-Riots in North Africa was also crushed.

-Administration & Management of Undlus/Spain was organized.

-Attacks on France were made. Lyon & Vienne was sacked.

Imamat Movement

Two families also had the desire of Khilafat. 1-Families of Ali RA. 2-Family of Abbas RA.

1st. Imam-Mohammed bin Hanfia:- From Ali RA family supported by Shiyane Ali of Iraq.

Already mentioned in Khilafat Abdul Malik.

2nd. Imam-Abu Hashim Abdullah bin Mohammed bin Hanfia.

3rd. Imam-Mohammed bin Ali bin Abdullah bin Abbas:- Imamat transferred from Alvieen to Abasieen. He made the markaz/center of the movement at Kufa & Khurasan because the majority of Shiyani Ali was at these two places. Mohammed bin Ali organized the movement and spread his agents throughout muslim world to overthrow the Khilafat of Banu Umayya.

4th. Imam-Ibraheem bin Mohammed:-In his time a great Dayee/Instigator changed this movement into Revolution.

9- Waleed bin Yazeed bin Abdul Malik

125H - 126H. 743-744AD. = 1 yr.

Age:- 36 yrs. Great sinner, cruel like Pharaoh. People got fed up and killed him.

10- Yazeed Naqis bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik

126H - 127H. 744AD.

Age:- 35 yrs. His father was king and mother was daughter of King Feroze of Rome.

Pious and totally against wine & music.

He strengthened Islamic world but ruled only 6 months and died.

11- Ibraheem bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik-

127H. 70 days only.

Age:-

Killed in 133H in battle with Saffah Abbasi.

12- Marwan bin Mohammed bin Marwan-

127H - 132H. 745-750AD=5 yrs.

Age:- 60 yrs. Brave, clever & good rider.

Remained Governor General of different places before Khilafat.

105H- Conquered Qunya- Turkey.

His whole life was spent in fighting with Khwarij, Abu Muslim Khurasani the Dayee/Instigator of Imamat movement and rioters.

132H- In this last fight **Abbasi's killed Amvi's in large number and more than that were drowned in the river. Marwan was killed in Egypt by Uncle of Saffah Abbasi.**
End of Khilafate Banu Umayya.

Banu Umayya Governing System

Kingdom was divided into 5 provinces

1-Hijaz, Yeman, Central Arab.

2-Egypt and its vicinity.

3-Iraq Arab(Kufa,Basra,Babul etc.).Kufa was Capital.

Iraq Ajam(Persia,Uman,Bahrain,Kirman,Sajistan,Kabul,Khurasan,Mavaraun Nahar,Sindh,Punjab)

4-City of Aljazeera,Armenia,Azarbaijan,Asia Kochak/Anotolia, Cyprus.

5-North Africa. Capital Qeervan. Undlus/Spain,Sardania,Billiar. Capital Qurtaba.

Governor Africa posted the Hakim of Spain.

Organization

Land force

Naval force- Ship Industry

Police

Treasury

Arabic Language:-All places translators were posted to run the offices in Arabic.

Royal Court:- Abdul Malik was the first to form a Royal Court and posted a guard at the door.

Court of Justice:- Same as it was in the time of Khulfa Rashideen. Chief Justice appointed by the Khalifa/Caliph.

Agricultural development:- Ameer Moavia RA introduced New Canal System was developed in each city. Other Khulafa also made improvement.

Road System:- Simple roads were made.

Guest Houses:- Guest houses were constructed at road sides.

Wells:- Wells were dug for caravans.

Hospitals:- Waleed was the first to open hospitals.

Poor Fund:- Waleed was the first to help Orphans,Poor,Old & disabled persons.

Buildings:- Ameer Moavia was the first to built grand buildings.

Mosques:- Abdul Malik extended and rebuilt beautiful Masjid Nabvi, Sakhra dome in Jerusalem &

Masjide Aqsa. Waleed s/o Abdul Malik built Jame Masjid Damascus & Masjide Nabvi.

New Cities:- Hajjaj developed Wast. Abdul Malik-Ramla. Uqba bin Nafe-Qeervan. Etc.

Postal System:- Ameer Moavia is the first to introduce postal system. Fast horses were ready at ever 12 miles.

Mint:- Abdul Malik established Mint in Damascus. Coined Gold Dinar & Silver Dirham. Others in Iraq & Jazeera.

Textile Industry:- Abdul Malik opened Textile factory. Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik built advanced Textile Industry.

Paper Industry:- 88H-Yousuf bin Umar built Paper Factory in Makka.

Moosa bin Naseer in Maghrib. In that time such paper were made in

which face can be seen.

Prosperity:- In the time of Umar Bin Abdul Aziz general public were so prosperous that nobody

was there to take Zakat.

Darul Uloom:- Every place Madaris/Schools were opened.

Quran:-Hifze Quran was made common.

Tafseer:-First Tafseer written by **Saeed Ibne Jubair** student of **Abdullah bin Abbas** was ordered by **Abdul Malik**.

Hadees:- Hadees also compiled by **Saeed Ibne Jubair & Imam Shahab Zehri**.

Umar bin Abdul Aziz opened schools for memorising & compiling Hadees.

History:- Skill of History started at the time of **Banu Umaya** and advanced during **Kh.Hisham**.

Arab civilization

At the time of **Banu Umaya** Civilization was advanced. Arabs gave truth, honesty & Justice to the public whether arab or non-arab, muslim or non-muslim. Freedom to follow their own religion.

KHULAFAT BANU UMAYYAH**41H - 132H. 661-750 AD = 90 years****Capital:- Damishq/Damascus****Total Khulafa = 13****1-Ameer Moavia RA bin Abu Sufyan bin Harab bin Umayya****Age:- 75 yrs.****41H-60H (661-680AD)= 19 yrs. 4 months.****2-Yazeed bin Moavia - 48 yrs.****60H-64H (680-683AD)= 3 yrs. 9 months.****3-Marwan bin Hakam-62 yrs.****64H-65H.(684-685AD)= 1 yr.****4-Abdul Malik bin Marwan bin Hakam bin Abul Aas bin Umayya****Age:-60 yrs.****65H-73H(685-692AD)= 8 yrs.on Egypt & Sham.****73H-86H(692-704AD)= 13 yrs. Khalifa Islamia.****5-Waleed bin Abdul Malik - 51 yrs.****86H-96H(704-714AD)= 10 yrs.****6-Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik - 39 yrs.****96H-99H(714-717AD)= 3 yrs.****7-Umar bin Abdul Aziz bin Marwan****Age:-40 yrs.****99H-101H(717-719AD)= 2 yrs.****8-Yazeed bin Abdul malik-34 yrs.****101H-105H(719-723AD)= 4 yrs.****9-Hisham bin Abdul Malik-55 yrs.****105H-125H(723-742AD)= 20 yrs.****10-Waleed bin Yazeed bin Abdul Malik-36 yrs.****125H-126H(742-743AD)= 1 yr.****11-Yazeed Naqis bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik-35 yrs.****126H-127H(743-744AD)= 1 yr.****12-Ibraheem bin Waleed bin Abdul Malik-****127H-127H(744-744AD)= 70 days.****13-Marwan bin Mohammed bin Marwan-60 yrs.****127H-132H(745-750AD)= 5 yrs.**

Khilafat Banu Umayya in Undlus/Spain**92H to 898H(710-1493AD)=800 yrs.****Capital at Qurtaba****Total Khulafa Banu Umayya = 16****138H - 422H(755-1031AD) =284 yrs.****92H-Kh. Waleed bin Abdul Malik****Governor Africa:- Moosa bin Naseer.****Commander:- Tariq bin Ziyad.****Captured Undlus/Spain.****129-138H-Yousuf bin Abdur Rehman Fahri:- Last Hakim of Undlus/Spain.****132H-Khilafat Banu Umayya ended except in Spain.****Khilafat Banu Abbas started except in Spain.****Banu Umayya was being killed by Banu Abbas.****138H-Prince Abdur Rehman bin Moavia bin Kh.Hisham. Grand son of Kh.Hisham. escaped and reached Spain.****Fought bravely with Hakim Spain Ameer Yousuf bin Abdur Rehman defeated him and took over Spain.****Khilafat Banu Umayya continued in Spain****1-Prince/Khalifa Abdur Rehman****Grand son of Kh.Hisham bin Abdul Malik****138H - 172H. 755-788AD. = 34 yrs.****Age:- 64 yrs.****Birth:- 108H****Death:- 172H****Qualities****Kh.Hisham trained him to make Khalifa but could not succeed. He was handsome, brave, pious, kind hearted & just minded. He use to visit the sick, lead the funeral prayer even of poor persons.****He never pass time in play and amusement. He was very generous.****Enmity of Family:- Abu Aswad a family member fought upto 149H till he died.****146H-Kh.Abu Jafar Mansoor Abbasi sent his Ameer-Ibne Moghees to attack on Spain.****Sultan with his army fought at Ashbela and defeated Ibne Moghees. Cut off the heads of****prisoners and sent to Damascus.****151H-Riot by Yemeni's:- Sultan sent Abdul Malik bin Umar. He crushed the riot. 30,000 persons were killed from both sides.****163H-Sultan wanted to attack on Abbasi Khalifa and take revenge, but he remained busy in crushing the internal revolts/riots.****At the end he succeeded in crushing the riots and brought peace in his kingdom.****Every leader came under his flag and everyone was happy with him because of his Kind behavior. He was amongst those few kings who were popular and liked by everybody.****Great Masjid Qurtaba****Sultan himself participated in building this great mosque.****Size:-600'x250' . North to South 19 arches. 193 pillars of marble. 19 doors of brass on south. 9 doors on east and 9 doors on west gold plated. Minaret 240 ft.high. Daily 4,600 lamps were kindled. Amber,Ood & Loban was burnt for fragrance. Imam's place golden lamp was****lightened. Juma/Friday prayer was lead by Sultan himself. Qazi lead the five times prayer.****A geat madrasa was beside the masjid.****Madaris Deenya:- Beside every masjid madrasa was built.**

2-Khalifa Hisham bin Abdur Rehman**172H-180H /788-796AD = 7 yrs. 8 months.****Age:- 40 yrs.****Birth:- 140H-Qurtaba.****Death:- 180H-Qurtaba.** A large number of people offered his funeral prayer.**Qualities****Hisham** was very religious, tried to follow Umar bin Abdul Aziz RA. Always busy in good deeds.

He use look after the poor and sick walking in the lanes of Qurtaba with simple dress.

He was very punctual of Salat/Prayer and use to call people towards Salat.

He had good faith on Abdul Malik bin Anas Ra. Therefore Maliki mazhab spread in Spain at his time. Because of his courage, honesty, justice & generosity people gave him the title of Al- Adil/The righteous.

He completed the construction of **Great Mosque Qurtaba**.**He** influenced the people by his character & behavior.**172H-Prince Sulaiman & Abdullah** attacked on **Qurtaba** claiming for kingdom but both were defeated.**173H-Arbunia-France** was recaptured.**175H-Alba & Ard hulqula's** Christians revolted. Royal forces crushed them.**175H-Wazeer-Yousuf Ibne Bakht** crushed the riots in **Province Jaliqia**. **Chief Bermudo** left his territory.**176H-Christians of Alba & Ard hulqula** again revolted. Wazeer **Abdul Malik** went and crushed them.**Religious Schools/Madaris:- Opened Madaris** and looked after the **Scholars**.**Hospitals:-**Looked after the Physicians himself. Physicians were mostly jews.**3-Khalifa Al-Hakam bin Hisham****180H-206H 796-822AD = 26 yrs.****Age:-48 yrs.****Birth:- 158H****Death:-206H****Qualities****Hakam** was a scholar having the characters of his father. He was strict but not persistent.

He use to accept his fault. He dealt with his enemy/rioters very wisely.

He was religious & god fearing. He was not indulged in play & amusement.

Wazeer Aala/Chief Minister:- Ameer Abdul Karim bin Moghees his master.**Wazeer/Ministers:- Allama Ishaq bin Al Munzir. Allama Abbas bin Abdullah. Saeed bin Hussain.** All were expert in their field.**Qazi ul Quzzat/Chief Justice:- Ibne Umar. Mohammed Ibne Basheer.** His father Saeed Ibne Basheer was Chief Justice at Sultan Abdur Rehman and his justice was well known throughout muslim world.**Story of justice**Once **Hakam** built a palace and a portion of the land was of a widow and she didn't want to sell her land. She claimed to the Qazi. On the opening ceremony Qazi brought a sack filled it with soil and asked **Hakam** to help him in lifting the sack.**Hakam** thought it a joke so tried to lift it but it was too heavy so he became tired. Qazi said Oh **Hakam** you cannot lift this much of soil, so on the **Day of Judgment** how will you lift the load of the land of this widow siezed for your palace. **Hakam wept and ordered to return her land. That portion of the palace was handed over to her.****Revolts/Riots & Victories****186H-French** captured Barcelona. **Wazeer Abdul Karim** turned them out.**192H-Lazreeq** siezed **Tartosha** byConspiracy of **French king. Prince 2nd.** went and turned out the christians.

200H-Wazeer Abdul Karim crushed the French christians revolt and captured **Jaliqia**.
201H-Christian Priests near Taleetla use to tempt the christians to revolt . **Prince Abdur Rehman 2nd.** with wisdom collected the rioters on feast. Arrested them and cut off their heads.
202H-Imam Yahya bin Yahya alongwith new muslims collected in thousands and sieged Qurtaba. **Hakam** sent his cousin with selected riders to burn their houses. When the rioters saw this they returned to protect their houses. **Hakam** with his army from back and his cousin **Abdullah** from front slaughtered them all and arrested the **scholars**.
 The rest of the rioters ran away with their family to Africa. When the mutiny ended **Hakam** freed the **scholars**.
The rest of his life passed with peace.

4-Khalifa Abdur Rehman Sani(2nd.) bin Al Hakam

206H-238H 822-852AD = 31 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:- 238H

Qualities

He himself was scholar and respected the scholars. He was so religious that once in Ramzan he went to his wife in daytime. He asked **Imam Yahya** its Kaffara(Expiation for sin). Imam said 2 months fasting. **Abdur Rehman fasted for 2 months.**

He respected & honoured the skillful people. His popularity reached far places due to which Man of wisdom, writers, courageous, religious, pious, orators, poets, learned, swordsmen & skillful peoples started coming from **Khilafat Abbasia to Undlus/Spain.**

Due to the companionship of great scholars his awe & dignity terrified the world. Each kingdom & government felt it an honour to have friendship with him.

Revolts/Riots & Victories

208H-Ameer Abdul Karim sent to **Qustula** came victorious.

224H-Abdullah & Ibne Moosa sent to **Jaliqia liqia** turned out the rioters.

226H-Ibne Moosa crushed the **French** rioters and captured the places in **France** where **Moosa bin Naseer** reached.

229H-Sultan sent his son **Mohammed** to crush the christians riots. He siezed the city fought bravely killed the christians captured the city **Gharsia** and killed the **King** also. This battle ended the christians riots.

230H-Ultimately Tufilish- King of Qustuntunia spread his hand of friendship towards the **Sultan**. **Sultan** sent his **Wazeer Yahya Al Ghizal** with precious gifts to **Qustuntunia**. **The King gave warm welcom to him. Yahya returned with success.**

Forts were built along the shore to protect the seaside attack.

Country Development

Sultan payed attention towards country development.

-Constructed water reservoirs and supplied water through pipelines.

-Constructed roads, bridges, mosques & madaris. Extended **Great Qurtaba masjid.**

-**Warship fleet** was made to patrol along the sea shore.

Royal Advisor:-Imam Yahya bin Abdul Malik.

Qazi ul Quzzat:-Eisa bin Yahya bin Abdul Malik.

Each and ever person muslim & non-muslim enjoyed peace, tranquility & comfort in his kingdom.

5-Khalifa Mohammed Awal bin Abdur Rahman Sani

238H - 274H 852-886AD = 35 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-Safar 274H.

He crushed the christians because rhey started insulting the muslims.

He destroyed the Churches because it became the center of christian priest creating mutiny in the country.

*Civil war started in **Spain** and ultimately it became out of control of **Sultan** till he died.*

6-Khalifa Al Munzir bin Mohammed Awal

274H - 276H 886-888AD

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-276H

*The condition of **Spain** became worst and Civil war continued. **Sultan** could not control and he was killed.*

7-Khalifa Abdullah bin Mohammed Awal

276H - 300H 888-912AD= 24 yrs.

Age:-68 yrs.

Birth:-

Death:-300H

He was very cruel but could not control the situation.

***Arabs** formed their own government.*

***Barbarians** formed their own government.*

***Ibne Ghaswan Nasrani** captured Gharnata.*

***Ibnul Hajjaj** formed his government in **Ashbelia** and ruled successfully.*

8-Khalifa Abdur Rahman Salis(3rd.) Al Nasir bin Mohammed

300H - 350H 912-961AD = 50 yrs.

Age:-72 yrs.

Birth:-278H

Death:-350H

Qualities

*He deserved the title of **Khalifa**.*

He was great scholar,kind,wise,handsome,gentle & soft spoken.

*The day he became **Sultan** people showed **happiness**.*

***Sultan** from the first day organized and trained the army.*

*He sent the order throughout the country that whoever will disobey the **Royal Command** will be killed.*

He also appointed bodyguards from muslims & christians.

***Sultan** started his mission of crushing the revolts. After a little resistance all the revolters surrendered.*

***Islamic army** reached **Bostro**. **Sultan** stood up on the fort wall looked at the conquered area and*

*Prayed 2 rikat **Salat** and **thanked Almighty Allah**. Till he remained in the fort **fasted in thanks to Almighty Allah**.*

***307H-Banu Fatima(Shiya)** strength was increasing in **N.Africa** and they captured the **Fort Sibta** on North Western shore of **Africa**. **Sultan** motivated the people by Scholars against the **Shiya** and attacked on **Sibta** captured the **Great Fort** and the the **Coastal Area**.*

*Prepared Naval army fleet which started patrolling in **Mediterranean sea**.*

***308H-Sultan** attacked on **San Steven** and destroyed it. Advanced to **Alnavar** and killed the christians rioters. Killed the rioters of **Fort Muze** and returned **victorious to Qortaba**.*

***317H-Title of Al Nasiruddin** was given to **Sultan**.*

***318H-Sultan** captured the entire lost area in **18 years**.*

***328H-Ambro of Thoda** revolted and killed 50,000 muslims and **Sultan** had to retreat.*

***Sultan** reattacked and took the revenge and ended all the mutiny. The result was that the*

***Messengers of King of Qustuntunia,France,Germany & Italy** attended the court of*

Sultan.

Development

Sultan developed the country specially Qurtaba with mosques, palaces, gardens, fountains, bridges & roads.

Great Masjid Qurtaba:- Length=500 ft. Arches were resting on 1,417 columns of marble with golden carving. The member was made of very costly wood with ivory, gold & jewels carving. Only the member was made in 7 years with a cost of 350,705 dinar. 10,000 schandliers were lighted. 3 big schandliers were of pure silver the rest of brass. One big schandlier contained 1,480 lamps. 3 servants duty was only to burn the ud & Amber for fragrance. A minaret 108 ft. High with two staircases for ascending & descending is made. People from all over the world still come to visit this mosque.

Qasre Zahra/Zahra Palace:- This was actually a small city called **Madinatuz Zahra**. Length=4 miles, East-West Width=3 miles, North-South. This consisted of Royal villas, several gardens with number of fountains. Thousands of houses for army commanders & officers. The boundary wall consisted

15,000 large & heavy gates. The black mountain behind it was planted with dry fruit trees in such a large number that it became green.

The **Palace** itself was made of arches on 4,316 columns of coloured marble and costly stones. The doors were made of ebony & ivory, carved and decorated with gold & jewels. At the center there was a pond filled with mercury, when the sun rays reflected from the mercury the entire jewelled walls and doors shined so much that it gave a very beautiful and astonishing effect. When the mercury was shaken a little it gave a lightening effect, which frightened the expectators. Two fountains were made and gold plated. 12 birds and animals of gold & jewels were made. From the mouth of each animal water was showering. Besides this palace there were other palaces like:-

- Qasr Al Khulafa.**
- " Al Mashuq.**
- " As Surur**
- " At Taj.**
- " Ad Damishq**

These were the palaces having no match on the earth.

People came to visit from throughout the world.

There was a big park of animal reserves providing a natural environment.

336H-King of Qustuntunia sent his Ambassador to Spain. When he entered the palace and saw the decorations of the court and grace of Sultan on the throne he was surprised.

The Kings of European countries and other world were very much impressed by the awe & dignity of the Sultan.

Qazi ul Quzzat:- Qazi Munzir

Sultan's humbleness & fear of Allah

Madinatuz Zahra:-Once the courtiers were flattering & praising the **Madinatuz Zahra** in front of **Sultan**, when **Qazi Munzir** entered the court and recited **Sura Zukhruf** verses 33-35, and advised in such a way that the **Khalifa** wept too much with tears.

Juma/Friday Prayer:- **Sultan** prayed few Juma/Friday prayer in the nearby mosque due to business in construction of **Madinatuz Zahra**. One Friday when he came to **Great Masjid Qurtaba**. **Qazi Munzir** saw him and warned him in his speech so much that the face of **Ameerul Momineen** became red with regret & shame. Though he prayed Juma in other mosque but still he was regretful because of fear of **Allah**.

Istisqa/Famine Prayer:- Once there was famine in Qurtaba. Qazi **Munzir** alongwith hundred thousands of people collected in the field of **Madinatuz Zahra**. Announcement of coming of **Sultan** was made. **Qazi Munzir** said he should rest in the palace. The words reached to **Sultan**.

He started weeping. With naked head and naked foot weeping in front of Almighty Allah said

Oh Allah do not harm my people because of my sins. Punish me, but remove the trouble & suffering of my people. He wept so much that it started raining and people went back wet to their homes.

9-Khalifa Al Hakam Sani(2nd.) Al Mustansar Billah bin Abdur Rahman Al Nasir
350H - 366H 961-976AD = 15 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-366H

Qualities

He was a great scholar religious minded. Respected the scholars. Followed religion perfectly and instructed the scholars to preach them. He prayed Juma prayer punctually in Great Masjid Qurtaba.

He was of high moral character, very kind hearted.

Punished the wine sellers and drunker.

*He honoured the religion and religious scholars so much that one day **Ibraheem Faqeh** was giving speech, thousands of students, scholars & Faqeh were attending the speech. The Royal messenger came and said that Khalifa is waiting for you. Ibraheem said I would have obeyed Ameerul Momineen but you see that I am busy in the work of **Allah**, after finishing I can come, and then he continued the speech. The messenger fearfully conveyed the message to Khalifa. The messenger came to Faqeh and said **Khalifa** conveys salam and says that I am pleased to know that you are busy in the work of **Allah**. After finishing you may come to Khalifa. **Faqeh** said tell the Khalifa that I am old and weak, get the Sana gate opened which is close to mosque so I may come. When the gate was opened **Faqeh** went to the Khalifa. **Khalifa welcomed him with honour.***

Library of Al Hakam

He was very fond of reading books as well as collecting books. He remained in the company of Scholars from the very beginning. His assembly was full of scholars. His library was so big that only the catalog of Index of books were in 44 volumes having 50 pages in each volume. He had 400,000 books and read all of them. The Famous Scholars came from Qahira/Cairo & other cities to remain in the Court of knowledge are following:- 1-Abu Ali Al Qali Baghdadi.2-Abu Bakr Al Uzraq

3-Ismaeel bin Abdur Rahman.4-Qazi bin Asfi.5-Ahmed bin Waheem.6-Mohammed bin Abdus Salam.7-Zakaria bin Khatab.8-Sabit bin Qasim.

There was no scholar equal to Al Hakam in Spain.

Madaris Deenya

He opened 27 madaris for poor students to get free teaching.

Battles

He was brave and expert in army tactics but he did not like fighting. Some christians tried to create problem but he crushed them immediately.

He had so Dignified and Awe Inspiring personality that no one dare to raise his head against him. *The delegates & ambassadors coming to his court were so much impressed that they stood folded handed eyes down in front of his throne.*

15 years of his kingdom was peaceful and comfortable.

10-Khalifa Hisham Sani(2nd.) bin Al Hakam

366H - 399H 976-1008AD = 33 yrs.

Age:-44 yrs.

Birth:-355H

Death:-399H

Qualities

*Hisham was only 11 so his mother **Queen Sabih** was in power.*

1-Wazeer/Minister Al Mansoor

366H-393H 976-1002AD =26 yrs.

Al Mansoor bin Abi Amir became Wazeer and broke the power of the Queen, sent Hisham in Harem(female appartment), and took over the power.

Father of Al Mansoor was a learned Fageeh of Darul Uloom Qurtaba.

Al Mansoor completed his studies and remained teacher of Hisham. Step by step he attained the position of Qazi. When the christians on the Northern boundaries started creating disturbance,

Al Mansoor with wisdom took a huge army crushed the christians of Lyon and returned successful.

Al Mansoor now became popular and handled the army with wisdom. He liked the soldiers like his son.

Al Mansoor with his good moral character became beloved of all whether muslims or non-muslims.

Al Mansoor was also religious, pious and God fearing.

In 26 years of his wizarat(Ministry) he made 50 Jihad and in all he came victorious.

Death of Al Mansoor

He died in 393H 1002AD and was burried in Madina Salim. He use to collect the dust of his dress after coming back from Jihad, and said to put on his face at burial, might be Allah forgive him. He prepared his shroud by his daughter from the cotton of his private land in which he was buried.

His death was the day of mourning for entire Undlus/Spain.

2-Wazeer/Minister Al Muzaffar

393H-399H 1002-1008AD =6 yrs.

Al Muzaffar bin Al Mansoor was also good person followed his father and ruled successfully for 6 years. The courtiers in bringing Hisham to rule but he could not. So he was over thrown by Mohammed Sani Mehdi.

11-Khalifa Mohammed Sani(2nd.) Mehdi

399H - 400H

12-Khalifa Sulaiman

400H

13-Khalifa Mohammed Sani(2nd.time)

400H-401H

14-Khalifa Hisham Sani(2nd.time)

401H-402H

15-Khalifa Sulaiman (2nd.time)

402H-406H

16-Khalifa Ali bin Hamood(shiya)

406H-407H

17-Khalifa Qasim bin Hamood(shiya)

407H-409H

18-Khalifa Yahya bin Hamood(shiya)

409H-412H

19-Khalifa Hisham Salis

412H-422H

End of Banu Umayya Kingdom.

Kingdom in Spain**423H to 898H.(1032-1493AD)*****Qurtaba was in chaos for several years and 20 families were ruling in different parts of Spain.******When the christians became strong and started attacking on Arab leaders then in Al-Moravid enter Spain*****479H-580H(1086-1184AD)*****479H(1086AD)-King of Ashbelia-Motamid asked help from King of N.Africa-Yousuf bin Tashfeen. He captured Jazeera Al Khadhra and then attacked on christian King Alfanso (vi), defeated him killed thousands of christians in battle.******483H(1090AD)-Yousuf again came for help and defeated Alfanso. Now Yousuf had control on entire Southern Spain. Yousuf died in Morocco in 501H.******502H-Ali bin Yousuf defeated Alfanso, but City Sarqasta was taken away from Muslim.******520H-Muslim philosopher Ibne Rushd born in Qurtaba.******540H-Ali bin Yousuf died in 538H. His son Tashfeen was defeated by Alfanso and he captured Jazeeratul Khadhra.******540H-Tashfeen died. His son Abu Ishaq came in power.*****Al-Mohads Kingdom****542H-634H(1147-1237AD)*****550H-Abdul Momin wanted to attack on Spain but he died.******559H-Yousuf bin Abdul Momin defeated Alfanso(viii). Destroyed all the forts and went back to Africa and died in 580H.******580H-Mansoor ruled for 14 years and died in 621H.******621H-Abu Mohammed ruled upto 625H and was killed.******625H-Al Mamoon ruled upto 630H and died.******630H-Kingdom of Spain divided into several parts.******Ibne Hawad on one portion.******Arakan on one portion.******Mohammed bin Al Ahmar King on Gharnata & Hunain.******Jamayt bin Zayd on Balancea.******634H-Christian King took over Qurtaba the Capital of Spain, because the above Muslim Kings started fighting each other and became weak.******642H-Christians took over Balancea from muslim.******644H-Forts between Jeen & Ashbelia joined the Christians.******Muslim kingdom remained in Ashbelia & Gharnata only.*****Development & Reforms*****568H-Great Mosque at Seville-Spain-largest in the world.*****Rulers after Banu Umayya****Ashbelia*****414H-1023AD-Qazi Abul Qasim.******434H-1042AD-Al Motazid.******461H-1068AD-Leghaya.******479H-1091AD-AlMotamid.******483H-1095AD-Yousuf bin Tashfeen (African Kingdom).******It was a beautiful city during muslim rule. It was a cotton market.******5,000 factories were running by water power.*****Tulaitla*****427H-1035AD-Ismaeel.******429H-1037AD-Yahya Mamoon.******439H-1047AD-Yahya Qadir.***

Gharnata

Upto 634H-Governor from kings of Qurtaba use to rule.

1-Shah Mohammed Al Ahmar

636H-672H 1238-1273AD =36 yrs.

Age:-79 yrs.

Birth:-593H

Death:-672H

Qualities

He was from the generation of SAAD BIN UBADA ANSARI RA. He was a brave Arab rider.

He attacked Southern Spain and captured Qurtaba, Ashbelia & Gharnata.

He established kingdom in Gharnata established a strong true Islamic State.

He developed Gharnata constructed big palaces and became a beautiful city like Qurtaba

He made Madinatul Hamra like Madinatuz Zahra of Qurtaba.

He constructed masjid & madaris in Gharnata.

He established Darul Mashwara Babusharya. This was beside the masjid where the king assembled with Ulama/Scholars and listened the fiqa & hadees and made mashwara/consultation.

2-Shah Mohammed Sani(2nd.)

672H-702H 1273-1302AD =30 yrs.

He was also a religious king and ruled successfully like his father.

3-Shah Mohammed Salis(3rd.)

702H-709H 1302-1309AD =7 yrs.

4-Shah Abul Juyoosh Nasr

709H-713H 1309-1313AD =4 yrs.

His brother Ismaeel overthrew him.

5-Shah Abul Waleed Ismaeel

713H-726H 1313-1325AD =13 yrs.

6-Shah Mohammed Rabe(4th.)

726H-734H 1325-1333AD =8 yrs.

7-Shah Abul Hajjaj yousuf Awal(1st.)

734H-755H 1333-1354AD =21 yrs.

8-Ismaeel/Abu Saeed

755H-765H 1354-1363AD =10 yrs.

Kept on fighting for kingdom.

9-Mohammed Khamis(5th.)

765H-793H 1363-1390AD =28 yrs.

10-Yousuf Sani (2nd.)**11-Mohammed Shashum(6th.)****12-Yousuf Salis(3rd.)****13-Mohammed Haftum(7th.)**

837H-842H 1433-1438AD =5 yrs.

14-Yousuf Rabe(4th.)

842H-849H 1438-1445AD =7 yrs.

15-Mohammed Hashtum(8th.)**16-Usman Ismaeel****17-Mohammed Nahum(9th.)****18-Mohammed Dahum(10th)**

858H-871H 1453-1466AD

19--Shah Abul Hassan

871H-888H 1466-1483AD

*He was also religious & very brave king. In his time **Queen Isabelle** of **Qustalia** was married to*

***Ferdinand** and they became the **King/Queen of Qushtalia, Nawaz & Arghun**. The two sent messengers to **Abul Hassaan** asking to pay tax. **Abul Hassaan** said to messengers go and tell your **Queen** that in the mint of **Gharnata** coins are not made, now sharp swords are made.*

He also ruled bravely & successfully.

***887H-King Ferdinand captured Fort Al Hamra** and killed thousands of muslim men, women & children.*

***887H-Abul Hassaan** defeated **King Ferdinand** and recaptured the fort.*

***888H-His son Abu Abdullah** revolted against him so he became disheartened and handed over the kingdom to his brother.*

***898H-Abu Abdullah** kept on fighting with **King Ferdinand** but ultimately surrendered.*

*Jan. 1493-Handed over the key to **King Ferdinand**.*

Muslim rule of 800 years Ended in Spain. Due to the Civil war amongst the muslims.

After the fall of Gharnata Lord Bishop & King of Qashtalia ordered the muslims to leave their religion and become christian. The mosques were changed into churches.

Thousands of muslims were burnt alive.

Mosyo Leban writes in his book'

'Arab Culture':- The hardship & tortures given to poor muslims in Spain was so much that the world history cannot give such an example. If the muslims would have done the same the existence of christians would have finished in Spain.

One million valuable books of muslims were burnt to ashes.

King Qashtalia ordered the muslims to vacate Spain within two months. So after millions being killed the remaining 3 million muslims when left for Africa, on the way 75% of them were killed by christians.

For more than 100 years, killing of muslims continued by christians and by the start of 17th. century muslims were totally turned out from Spain.

KHULAFAT UNDLUS/SPAIN**138H-890H(755-1485AD)=800 yrs.****Banu Umayya Khulafa = 16****Other Sultan = 19****Khulafa banu Umayya****1-Abdur Rahman bin Moavia bin Hisham bin Abdul malik****138H-172H(755-788AD)=34 yrs.****2-Hisham 1st. bin Abdur Rahman****172H-180H(788-796AD)=10 yrs.****3-Hakam 1st. bin Hisham****180H-206H(796-821AD)=26 yrs.****4-Abdur Rahman 2nd. bin Hakam****206H-238H(821-852AD)=32 yrs.****5-Mohammed 1st. bin Abdur Rahman****238H-274H(852-887AD)=36 yrs.****6-Munzir bin Mohammed****274H-276H(887-889AD)=2 yrs.****7-Abdullah bin Mohammed****276H-300H(889-912AD)=24 yrs.****8-Abdur Rahman 3rd. bin Mohammed****300H-350H(912-960AD)=50 yrs.****9-Hakam 2nd. bin Abdur Rahman 3rd.****350H-366H(960-976AD)=16 yrs.****10-Hisham 2nd. bin Hakam 2nd.****366H-399H(976-1008AD)=33 yrs.****11-Mohammed 2nd. bin Abdul Jabbar bin Abdur Rahman****399H-400H(1008-1009AD)=1 yr.****12-Sulaiman bin Hakam 2nd.****400H-400H(1009-1009AD)=6 months.****Mohammed 2nd. (Again)****400H****Hisham 2nd. (Again)****400H-403H(1009-1012AD)=3 yrs.****Sulaiman (Again)****403H-405H(1012-1014AD)=2 yrs.****13-Abdur Rahman Murtaza bin Abdul Malik****405H-407H(1014-1016AD)=2 yrs.****Ali bin Hamood (shiya)****407H-408H(1016-1017AD)=1 yr.****Qasim bin Hamood (shiya)****408H-410H(1017-1019AD)=2 yr.****Yahya bin Hamood (shiya)****410H-413H(1019-1022AD)=3 yrs.****14-Abdur Rahman bin Hisham****413H = 50 days****15-Mohammed bin Abdur Rahman****413H-414H(1022-1023AD)=1 yr.****16-Hisham 3rd. bin Mohammed****414H-422H(1023-1030AD)=8 yrs.**

RELIGIOUS KNOWLEDGE SCIENCE & TECHNOLOGY IN SPAIN DURING ARAB RULE 143H-854H (760-1450AD)

The progress made in learning Religious knowledge, Philosophy, Mathematics, Science & Technology by Arabs is far advanced than any other nations of that time. Many universities in different fields were opened in Qurtaba, Ashbelia, Gharnata, Tulaitla & Marsia where students from Europe also use to study. Great famous scholars came out from these universities.

Achievements are following:-

Religious Knowledge

Quran, Hadees, Fiqah, Tafseer & Philosophy were taught.

Ibne Khateeb Qurtabi was qualified from here. He wrote 1,100 books on history, medicine etc.

Ibne Hassaan wrote 450 books on Fiqah & Philosophy.

Al Muzaffar King of Batluse wrote an Encyclopedia.

General Studies

History, Geography, Astronomy, Philosophy, Mathematics etc.

Science & Technology

Medical science, Surgery, Botanical science, Zoological science, Engineering etc.

Invention Origination & Designing

Magnetic Compass.

Surgery.

Invented paper by leather.

Gunpowder & Cannon.

Fort breaking weapons.

Mining of metals & mercury.

Mining of Ruby

Corals & Pearls from shore of Spain.

Advanced silk & woolen textile Industry.

Spanish industrial products, weapons, minerals, rice, dry fruits, perfumes, silk & woolen cloths, papers etc., were exported to Asia.

One of the biggest Olive oil Industry.

One of the biggest Ship building Industry.

Khilafat Banu Abbas**132H to 924H = 749AD to 1518ADAD.****132H-656H=749-1258H.****Capital:- Baghdad-Iraq.****656H-924H=1258-1518ADAD****Capital:- Cairo-Egypt.****History of Dawat Banu Abbas*****First Shiyane Ali started the movement of Khilafat in Banu Fatima. In the name of Imam. Shiyane Ali selected following:-******1-Imam Hussain RA-Martyred by the order of Shimar commander of Ziyad during Yazeed period.******2-Imam Zainul Abdeen Ali bin Hussain-He was not interested.******3-Imam Zaid bin Zainul Abdeen-Martyred by Yousuf bin Umar Governor Iraq of Hisham bin Malik******4-Imam Mohammed bin Hanfia bin Ali RA-He made bayt with A.Malik but still Shiya called him Imam.******5-Imam Abu Hashim bin Mohammed bin Hanfia-Martyred by poison during Sulaiman bin A.Malik.******6-Imam Abu Ibraheem Mohammed bin Ali bin Abdullah bin Abbas-Abu Hashim transferred the Imam. to Abbaseen.******Age:- 63 yrs. Birth:-62H. Death:-125H*****1-Saffah Abul Abbas bin Mohammed bin Ali bin Abdullah bin Abbas RA.****132H - 136H =4 yrs.9 months.****Age:-36 yrs.****Birth:-104H****Death:-136H*****Muslim world was divided:-******-Turkish Kingdom in Vailum.******-Banu Umayya Kingdom in Spain.******-Sudan became independent.******Ruled on:-Sham, Iraq,Hijaz,Khurasan,Samarqand,Toos,Rai,Jarjan,Hamdan,Nahawand & Sindh.*****Wazeer/Ministers****1-Hifz bin Sulaiman****2-Khalid Barmaki****Governors*****Hijaz & Yamama:- Daud(Uncle of Sffah)******Kufa & Swad:- Eisa bin Moosa(Cousin)******Yemen:- Mohammed bin Yazeed.******Basra & Bahrain:- Sulaijan bin Ali(Uncle)******Ahwaz:- Ismaeel bin Ali(Uncle)******Sham:- Abdullah bin Ali(Uncle)******Egypt:- Abu Aun Abdul Malik.******Khurasan:- Abu Muslim Khurasani.******Iraq:- Abu Jafar.******Faras/Persia:-Eisa bin Ali Abbas.******Moosal:- Yahya bin Ali. He killed 20,000 people. Saffah replaced him by******" :- Ismaeel bin Ali*****Killing of Banu Umayya*****Saffah killed thousands of Banu Umayya without any reason even the old & children were killed. Some of them escaped to Spain. Even the graves of Khulafa Banu Umayya were dug and bodies were burnt. His whole life was spent in killing Banu Umayya, till he died in the disease of***

Small pox.

2-Mansur Abu Jafar Abdullah bin Mohammed bin Ali bin Abdullah bin Abbas RA.
136H-158H(753-775AD) =22 yrs.

Age:-63 yrs.

Birth:-94H

Death:-158H :-He wore Ahram for Haj in Kufa. Sent onward the animals for sacrifice. When he reached Beer Maoona felt pain and died.

Wazeer Aala/Chief Minister:-First Abu Ayub then Rabi Bin Younus.

Daily Routine

Mansur first offered Fajar prayer with jamaat. Then assembled the Royal Court and looked after the important matters. Then took a little rest. Offered Zohar prayer with jamaat. Then offered Asar prayer with jamaat. After Asar again assembled the Royal Court and settled the matters. Offered Maghrib prayer with jamaat. Take food and offer Isha prayer. Look at the posts/letters and reply the letters. After passage of 1/3rd.night go to sleep. Then wake up for **Tahajjud prayer** and remained busy in worship till Fajar prayer.

Qualities

Mansur was great scholar & mohaddis and also a great ruler.

He had awful & dignified personality.

He was brilliant & intelligent.

He was religious & pious. Punctual in Salat/Prayer & Fasting. Performed several Haj and died on 6 zilhaj while going to Haj.

He extended Masjide Haram in **138H.**

He never took benefit from **baitul mal.**

He had simple house for his personal living and simple clothes to wear, even sometimes with patches. He avoided to make clothings for his family even from **baitul mal.**

His kingdom and **baitul mal** was for the benefit of general public.

He was wrathful & terrible for his enemy but kind forgiving mercifull to others.

He wanted to establish peace & justice in his kingdom, for that he appointed just & honest Qazi/Judges & Qaziul Quzzat/Chief Justice.

Once the **Chief justice Qazi Mohammed bin Imran of Madina** called **Mansur** in his court and gave decision against him. He was pleased and awarded 10,000 dinar.

He had patience & tolerance and use to bear the harsh languages, but not of his enemy.

He was very hard & cruel on revolters/rioters. He killed thousands to bring peace in the kingdom.

He himself observed piety therefore he was not extravagant and didn't like his governors/hakim to be extravagant.

He was very generous to **scholars & poors.**

He was very gentle and use to accept his faults.

Rebellion Abdullah bin Ali Abbasi

Abdullah announced his Khilafat/Caliphhood in **Khurasan** on the death of **Saffah**. **Mansur** sent **Abu Muslim** from one side and **Hassaan bin Qahtaba** from another side. Army of **Abdullah** ran away to **Sham** and he himself to his brother **Sulaiman** in **Basra.**

Rebellion Abu Muslim Khurasani

137H-Abu Muslim was establishing his kingdom in **Khurasan**. **Mansur** came to know and called him in his court. He refused to come. **Mansur** handled with wisdom & politics made him to attend his court. **Abu Muslim** was arrested and killed in **Shaban 137H**. This was necessary because his program was to kill the Arabs and establish **Ajami Kingdom.**

Rebellion Feroz Sanbad

138H-Feroz Sanbad (majoosi/Magi) heard the death of Abu Muslim. He captured **Rai & Neshapur** and treasury. Started looting arresting women and making slave. Claimed to destroy **Kaaba**. **Mansur** sent **Jamhur bin Murar**. He fought him in **Hamdan** and killed thousands of them. **Sanbad** flew away to **Tibritan** wher he was killed. Now **Jamhur** revolted. **Mansur** sent

Mohammed bin Ashas. He attacked on **Jamhur in Isfahan** and defeated him. Jamhur ran away to **Azarbaijan** where he was killed and his head was sent to **Mansur**.

Death of Abdullah bin Ali Abbasi

139H-As mentioned before **Abdullah** took shelter at **Sulaiman**. **Mansur** dismissed Sulaiman and called him back and asked to bring **Abdullah** with him. **Abdullah** was imprisoned where he died in **149H**.

Haj of Mansur Abbasi

140H-**Mansur** performed Haj, distributed gifts in **Harmayn**. Each and every person in Madina got something. None of the **Khalifa** ever gifted so much.

Revolt in Khurasan

140H-**Khurasani** were generally of weak belief. They believed in **Hulool** (Transmigrating of soul). **Maan bin Zaida** arrested their leaders and killed them.

149H-Some of the army revolted. **Mansur** made **Abdul Jabbar-Governor of Khurasan**. He started killing. **Mansur sent Prince Mehdi**. He camped at **Rai** and sent **Hazim bin Khuzaima**. He arrested **Abdul Jabbar** and sent him to **Mansur**. His hands and legs were cut off.

Incidents of Sindh

142H-**Aynia bin Moosa** revolted in **Sindh**. **Mansoor** sent **Umar bin Hafs**. He defeated **Aynia** and captured **Sindh**. **Abdullah bin Ashtar** met **Ibne Hafs** and started inviting towards **Aale Hashim** for Bayt. During this period **Nafs Zakiya** was killed. **Ibne Hafs** sent **Abdullah to a king of India**. **Mansur** heard this. He sent **Governor Hisham to Sindh**. He killed **Abdullah**. **Mansur** ordered to attack on the **Indian king**. He attacked and captured his kingdom. **Hisham** captured **Multan** and then **Qandhar** and constructed mosques. **Period of Hisham in Sindh was peaceful & comfortable**.

142H-**Isbahand** started giving hardship and tortures to the muslims in Tibristan. **Mansur** sent **Abul Khaseeb**. He sieged **Tibristan**. **Isbahand** suicided and the disturbance ended.

Movement of Aale Hashim

Mohammed Al Mehdi known as Nafs Zakiya started movement of Khilafat in **Aale Hashim** in **Madina**. People started collecting against **Khilafat Banu Abbas**. People of **Khurasan** was also

prepared for this movement. This was a great danger for **Mansur**.

144H-**Mansur** sent **Ribah** to Madina. He coul not arrest **Nafs Zakiya**, but he arrested all the other leaders of this movement and sent them to **Mansur**. He killed most of them.

145H-Now **Nafs Zakiya** openly started taking **Bayt/Oath**. Thousands of people of Madina took oath. People of Makka also supported him.

145H-**Mansur** sent his nephew **Eisa bin Moosa** to arrest **Nafs Zakiya** and not to kill him. **Mansur** sent a reinforcing army with **Mohammed bin Qahtaba**. Many of the people of Madina left Madina towards the jungle. After fierce fighting **Nafs Zakiya** was killed.

Mansur sent his cousin **Jafar bin Sulaiman Abbasi** for taking **Bayt/Oath** from the people of **Madina**. **Jafar** took the revenge from the people of **Madina** and also tortured **Imam Malik Ra**. Hearing this news **Mansur** asked apology from **Imam Malik Ra**. He personally met **Imam Mal9k Ra** on Haj and asked to fogive him. Imam Malik Ra forgave him.

Mansur paid respect and gave him a handsome amount of money.

145H-At the same time **Ibraheem bin Abdullah** started the movement in **Basra** started taking **Bayt/Oath** for **Nafs Zakiya**. Also captured **Basra Ahwaz & Khurasan**. Suddenly news of death of **Nafs Zakiya** came, which made people more angry against **Mansur**. **100,000 people collected under the flag of Ibraheem against Mansur**.

Mansur was very much disturbed he sent his son **Prince Mehdi, Eisa, Muslim bin Qutayba & Salim** towards **Ibraheem** and himself sat on the mosalla/Praying mat for **50 days** praying in front of Allah. Army of **Mansur** surrounded **Ibraheem**. As usual people of **Kufa** left **Ibraheem** and returned home. **Ibraheem was martyred** and his head was sent to **Mansur**. **Mansur wept and said; I didn't liked it but unfortunately it happened**. The

brothers of Nafs Zakiya & Ibraheem were busy in the movement in **Egypt, Khurasan, Sindh, Yemen, Jazeera, Rai, Tibristan & Maghrib**. All of them either killed or arrested.

Imam Abu Haneefa Ra.

Arrested Imam Abu Hanifa Ra on refusal for becoming Qazi ul Quza, and was martyred in 150H in prison by poisoning.

He was wise scholar and brave.

143H- Imam Abu Hanifa, Malik, Ibn Mubarak, Abu Yousuf compiled Hadees, Fiqah, Tafseer, Tareekh & Seerat. Teaching of deen/religion became common.

City of Baghdad

145H- Mansur founded Baghdad on the West of Dajla river and protected the city by boundary wall with four strong iron gates at one mile apart. In the center **Royal Parliament** was made which was surrounded by another wall in the center also having 4 strong iron gates. Jame **Masjid** was made near the Palace. The city was distributed in 24,000 mohalla/localities. In every mohalla one masjid & hammam was built. Canals were taken out from Dajla river to the masjid. On the canals there were 125 bridges. Roads were 150 ft.wide.

Rasafa City

151H-This city was on the East bank of Dajla river constructed for his prince.

Beside Royal palace other palaces were also constructed.

161H-The construction was completed in 15 years.

Riots of Khwarij

137H-Mulabid Shaibani kharijee rioted. **Hameed bin Qahtaba** crushed it.

148H-Hassam Hamdani rioted **Abbasi** army crushed it totally.

Attack by Roman Qaiser

137H-Romans attacked. **Mansur** sent **Governor Jazeera Abbas bin Mohammed, Saleh & Eisa**. They fought bravely and **Romans** flew away.

149H-Zafar bin Asim attacked on **Romans** and defeated them.

155H-Qaiser Of Rome ultimately agreed to pay yearly tax to **Khalifa Banu Abbas**.

Sees claimed prophethood

150H-Hazim bin Khuzaima crushed the army of **Sees** killed thousands of false believers.

Achievements in Religious Teachings

Mansur himself was a great scholar.

He sent his son Prince Mehdi to Madina to learn religious studies from Imam Malik Ra.

Compilation of Hadees Fiqah & Tafseer.

Following are the scholars:-

1-Imam Malik-Moatta Imam Malik- Madina.

2-Imam Abu Haneefa-Fiqah-Kufa & Basra.

3-Ibne Juraij-150H- Makka

4-Imam Auzaee-157H-Sham

5-Ibne Abi Urooba-153H-Yemen

6-Hammad bin Salma - Basra

7-Sufyan Sauri-161H-Kufa-Hadees & Tafseer.

8-Ibne Ishaq bin Yasar-150H-Qualities of Prophet & Sahaba. Islamic History.

Development

136H(753AD)-Walls and defensive towers constructed in Samarqand.

3-Mehdi Abu Abdullah Mohammed bin Mansur

158H-169H(774-784AD)= 10 yrs. 1 month.

Age:-43 yrs.

Birth:-126H

Death:-169H

Wazeer:-Abu Abdullah-Yaqub bin Daud-Fayz bin Saleh Neshapuri.

Qualities

Mehdi studied from **Imam Malik Ra in Madina.**

He was modest, shy, gentle, generous, eloquent, pious.

He broke the high raised members in mosques and made it as in the time of Prophet SA.

He performed Haj with glory and spent 6 million dinar in charity.

He paid more attention towards the reforms & development of the country.

He made modification & expansion in Harmain.

He kept strict eyes on the kingdom affairs. His period was of justice, peace & comfort

He served the people of Makka & Madina so much that none ever did before.

He was scholar with strong belief. Respected hadees of Prophet SA. Killed atheist and infidel

Mischief of Atheism

161H-Hakeem bin Ata Khurasani was atheist and asked people to worship him. **Moaz bin Muslim** killed the followers. Hakeem himself and his family suicided by poison.

Revolt by Yousuf Albaram & Abdus Salam bin Hashim

164H-Yousuf bin Ibraheem revolted in Khurasan. **Yaaeed bin Mazeed** arrested them and killed them.

Abdus Salam revolted in Jazeera. **Shaib bin Qansreen** crushed it.

Revolt in Egypt was crushed by **Fazal bin Saleh.**

Victories & Reforms:-

160H- Captured Arbadar-India.

161H- Constructed roads & buildings in Macca. Made expansion in Haram.

163H- Captured cities of Rome. Fort Smala.

165H-Mehdi sent Prince **Haroon** to attack on Qustuntunia. **Queen Arinee** made peace on paying 90,000 dinar tax yearly.

168H-Defensive wall constructed near **Bukhara.**

One year Romans did not pay tax. **Sulaiman bin Ali-Hakim Jazeera** attacked defeated them captured booty and recovered the tax.

Mischief of Introducing False Hadees

In the time of Mansur religious teaching became so common that in non-arab countries learning, teaching & compilation of Hadees became popular, due to which mischievous jews, christians, atheists, shiya, rafzi, kharijee, qadria, jabria etc., introduced thousands of false hadees.

In 155H-Ibne Abil Auja of Kufa was arrested by **Governor of Kufa-Ibne Sulaiman** and ordered to be slaughtered. When he was beijing slaughtered he said never mind I have fabricated 4,000 hadees and made halal/lawful, haram/unlawful for you and haram, halal for you. **Mulla Ali Qari Ra** says that only Shiya has introduced 100,000 false hadees only in the virtues of Ali RA and his family.

Though the inviters towards Banu Abbas were Shiya but still when he knew about any shiya inventing false hadees he atonce cut off his head.

Mansur honoured the Scholar

Qazi Shareek was the tutor appointed by **Mansur** for his Princes **Hadi & Haroon.** Once a prince came to **Qazi Shareek** and asked about a hadees in standing position he did not reply, he asked again then even he didn't reply. Prince asked do you disgrace the princes. **Qazi Shareek** said; in the eyes of scholars value of knowledge is more than the value of prince. Hearing this the **Prince** sat on his hams respectfully in front and asked. **Qazi Shareek** said yes this is the correct way.

Scholars in Mehdi Period

Shoba Ibne Abi Zahab

Sufyan Sauri

Ibraheem bin Adham

Daud Tae Zahid

Hammad bin Salma

Ibraheem bin Tahman etc.

4-Hadi Abu Mohammed Musa bin Mehdi**169H - 170H(785-786) = 1 yr. 3 months.****Age:-23 yrs.****Birth:-147H****Death:-170H****Wazeer:-Rabey****Qualities****Qazi Shareek was tutor of Hadi.****He loved Prophet SA too much.****He was very strong, brave, clever, intelligent, generous, modest & jolly.****He was fond of play & songs, but fully devoted in kingdom affairs.****He ordered his Wazeer not to stop any needful coming to me.****He followed his father in looking after his public.****He was frank with his family members, but in the court he was determined, courageous & powerful ruler.****He was dignified & awe inspiring but drunkard. Followed advice of father and killed atheist & Infidels.****Assassination of Atheists & Apostate****The first thing he did was assassinated the apostate & Atheist.****He assassinated the believer of Peervan Mani-worshiper of 2 gods Light & Darkness.****Revolt by Hussain bin Ali****169H-Hussain bin Ali Hassan Al Musalas claimed his Imamatus and captured Madina.****Hadi sent Mohammed bin Sulaiman Abbasi. After fierce fighting in Makka, Hussain was****killed alongwith many other.****Abdullah bin Hassan fled to Fas and claimed Imamatus in Tunja.****Idrees bin Abdullah formed Idreesia Kingdom in Africa.****Yahya bin Abdullah revolted in Vailum.****Revolt of Hamza bin Malik Kharjee****Hamza revolted in Jazeera. Mansur bin Ziyad fought bravely but was defeated. Two persons of Mansur entered in his group and no sooner they got the chance killed him and revolt ended.****Battle with Romans****169H-Romans captured Hadeesa. Mayoof bin Yahya crushed them and captured in Roman territory upto Aashna.****5-Haroon Rasheed Abu Jafar bin Mehdi****170H-193H (786-808AD) = 23 yrs.****Age:-47 yrs.****Birth:-Zilhaj 145H in Rai****Death:-J.Sani 193H****Qaziul Quzzat:- Imam Abu Yousuf Ra.****Wazeer:-Yahya Barmaki.****Ruled on:- From India & Turkistan till Atlantic Ocean except Spain.****European rule was only Rome & Greece and they were also paying tax to muslims.****Qualities****Wife Zubaida was Hashmi.****He loved Prophet SA and saw in dream.****He was pious dignified, God fearing, scholar and loved scholar.****He use to offer 5 times prayer in masjid with jamaat and offered 100 rikat Nafil prayer daily.****He was foresighted, wise, insightful, intelligent, determined, generous, brave, courageous, awe inspiring & dignified.****He use to go for Jihad & Haj alternately. In 179H he went from Makka to Arafat on foot.**

He use to pay in charity 1,000 dirham daily from his pocket.

Story of Haroon's Soft heartedness

*-He use to go to **Fuzail bin Ayaz**, listen to his advices and wept too much.*

*-**Sufyan Sauri Ra** was class fellow of **Haroon**. **He** once wrote to **Haroon**. **On the day of judgment your hands will be tied and your cruel Hakims will be behind you and you will lead them hell fire. Haroon** cried and wept long.*

*-**Once Ibne Sammak Ra** asked **Haroon Rasheed** how much will you pay for a glass of water in acute thirst. **He** said hslf of my kingdom. Then **Ibne Sammak** asked if this water stops in your belly how much will you pay to take out. **He** said the rest of the kingdom. **Ibne Sammak** said this is the value of your kingdom, so what be proud of. **Haroon wept too much.***

*-**Once Fuzail Ra** said to **Haroon**. Oh you handsome some you are responsible for the **Umat** and you will be asked for them. **Haroon wept badly.***

*-**Once Haroon** requested **Ibne Sammak Ra** to advise him. **He** said fear **Allah Who has no partner** and believe that tomorrow you have to go in front of **Allah** and there you have to go Paradise or Hell and there is no third place. **Listening this Haroon wept so much that his beard became wet with tears.***

*-**He** respected **Ibne Sammak**, **Fuzail bin Ayaz**, **Ibne Mubarak**, **Imam Mohammed**, **Imam Abu Yousuf***

*-**He** made student of **Imam Abu Haneefa Ra**, **Imam Abu Yousuf Qaziul Quza**.*

Revolts, Riots & Mischieves

176H-yahya Bin Abdullah** revolted in **Vailum**. **Fazal Barmaki** crushed the riot. **Yahya** came to **Haroon** asked for peace treaty. **Haroon** gave peace, then the **Aal Sadat didn't revolted.

176H-Abul Hazzam Kharjee** rioted in **Sham**. This continued several years thousands of people were killed and ened on the death of **Abul Hazzam in 182H.

Victories:-

***173H-Dabsa city** was captured by **Abdur Rahman bin Saleh**.*

176H- Dabistan.

***181H- Fort Saf Saf** was captured by **Ameerul Momineen** himself.*

***183H-Mutiny in Armeenia** 100,000 muslims were killed.*

187H- King Naqfur** wrote letter that whatever previous Queen agreed was her weakness. Now you return all the tax otherwise sword will make the decision. Reading this letter **Haroon** became so furious that his face became red. **Haroon** wrote at the back of the letter by his own pen; Oh you **Roman dog son of infidel you will not listen the reply but you will see by your own eyes. Haroon attacked so fast & fiercely that the King was surprised. The capital was destroyed and thousands of Roman army was killed. King apologized and made peace on previous terms.

188H-King Naqfur** broke the treaty. This time **Haroon** sent **Ibraheem bin Jibreel** with 135,000 army. **Ibraheem defeated the King** killed 40,000 army and arrested 70,000. Captured the famous Roman forts at the border. **Qunia & Anotolia** was also captured. Muslims settled in **Tartoos, Marunia, Maseesa** etc. **King had to make peace treaty. Haroon made army camps at the sea shore of Sham.

***190H- Rome City of Harqal, Fort Saqalia, Malqunia & Qunia** was captured by **Yazeed bin Mohammed**.*

***190H-Cyprus** was captured by **Hameed bin Mayuf** and 16,000 people were arrested.*

192H- Khurasan.

Baghdad Bride of Kingdom

12 miles long 3 miles wide. One million population. 30,000 mosques & 10,000 hammam.

Royal Palaces, Palaces of princes, ministers & army generals. Hundreds of madaris & schools.

To describe the beauty & dignity of Baghdad several books have been written.

Library of Haroon

***Baghdad** becomes center of arts and learning.*

The library of **Mansur & Mehdi** was further expanded & beautified. Further books on different subjects were added.

Scholars of Haroon Period

Imam Malik

Imam Lays bin Saadl

Imam Moosa Kazim

Imam Abu Yousuf-Student of Imam Abu Hanifal

Imam Mohammed- " "

Abdullah bin Mubarak " "

Yahya bin Saeed

Yahya bin Zakaria

Hifs bin Ghyas

Hakam bin Abdullah

Sufyan bin Aynia

Development

178H-New congregational mosque built in Bukhara.

6-Ameenur Rasheed bin Haroon

193H-198H(808-813)=5 yrs.

Age:-27 yrs.

Birth:-170H

Death:-Mhrm. 198H

His mother was Zubayda from Hashmi family.

Ameen was pure Hashmi.

Handsome scholar and brave. Killed lion but unable for Khilafat. He was killed by Iranies, Mamoon was very sad on his murder.

Ameen wanted to deprive **Mamoon** from Khilafat. Moreover he wanted to arrest **Mamoon**.

Mamoon tried his best to settle the matter with peace but could not succeed.

Bayt Khilafat by Mamoon

Fazal bin Sahal a trustworthy honourable new muslim General gave suggestion to Mamoon that there is no way for you except to bayt for khilafat. Mamoon said I will follow your advice. Now its accomplishment is in your hand. Mamoon prepared a huge army and sent it to Rai under the command of his slave Tahir.

Tahir fought bravely and defeated Ameen's army at every place. Entire muslim world accepted the Khilafat of Mamoon except Baghdad. Tahir sieged Baghdad. After one year of siege people were fed up and surrendered. Ameen was arrested and killed. Mamoon was very sad on the death of Ameen.

Scholars Mohadiseen & Fuqaha

Shaqeeq Balkhi

Hammad bin Abi Haneefa-Qazi Kufa-D:176H.

Hafs bin Abdur Rahman Neshapuri-Qazi Baghdad-D:199H

Hammad bin Dalil-Qazi Madain

Khalid bin Sulaiman-Imam Balkh-D:199H.

Daud bin Naseer-Abu Haneefa's student-D:165H.

Israel bin Younus- " D:160H.

Asad bin Amar- " D:188H.

Shareek bin Abdullah " Qazi Wast-D:178H.

Shoayb bin Ishaq " D:189H.

Amar bin Maimoon Qazi Baghdad-D:171H.

Abdul Karim bin Mohammed Jarjani-D:181H.

Zohair bin Moavia D:173H.

7-Mamoonur Rasheed Abdullah bin Haroon

198H-218H(813-833AD)=20 yrs.5 months

Age:-48 yrs

Birth:-R.Awal 170H.

Death:-J.Sani 218H.

Qaziul Quzzat:-Qazi Yahya bin Aqsam- his students were Imam Bukhari & Tirmizi.

Qazi Ahmed bin Abi Daud- he was Motazili/Shiya.

Wazeer Aala:-Fazal bin Sahal- murdered in 201H.

Hassaan bin Abi Khalid- died in 216H.

Ahmed bin Yousuf,

Sabit bin Yahya

Abu Abdullah bin Yazdad

Tutor:-Jafar Barmaki was Shiya therefore Mamoon was influenced by him.

Qualities:

He loved Prophet SA too much.

He had all the qualities of his father Haroon.

He attended the teachings of Imam Malik Ra with his father.

His memory was very sharp and was Hafiz of hadees and great scholar.

He believed in Khalq Quran and forced scholar to belief. Exiled Imam Hanbal Ra to Rome.

Revolts Riots & Mischieves

Claim of Imamath by Ibne Taba Taba

199H-Abu Abdullah Mohammed Taba Taba claimed for Imamath. **Abu Saraya** a dacoit supported him and as usual people of **Kufa** supported him. **Hassan bin Sahal** sent **Zohair Bin Mosayab** with 10,000 army fought bravely but was defeated. **Abu Saraya** captured **Kufa,Basra,**

Makka & Yemem. Harsma & Hassan bin Mohani defeated him and was killed. The leaders of Banu Fatima was arrested and sent to **Mamoon** but he freed them.

Murder of Harsma

200H-Harsma wanted to inform **Mamoon** about the victory but **Fazal** was Irani and **Harsma** was Arabi so he killed **Harsma**.

201H-Mohammed bin Abi Khalid was selected in place of **Harsma** by the people of **Baghdad**

Abi khalid defeated the army of **Hassan**, but **Hassan** collected the army and reattacked and killed

Abi Khalid. Fazal was the leader of all this problem. So **Mamoon** arrested him and killed him.

204H-Mamoon came back to **Baghdad**. All of a sudden **Tahir** came back to Mamoon.

206H-Mamoon made **Tahir Governor General of Khurasan to Sindh.**

208H-Tahir became rebellion after two years, but before hi arrest he died.

Revolt of Zat

205H-zat/jat at Persian Gulf revolted. **Eisa bin Yazeed** crushed them.

Revolt of Nasar bin Sayar

209H-Abdullah bin Tahir was made the **Governor of Riqa to Egypt** and sent to crush the revolt of **Nasar** in Kusum. **Abdullah** arrested him and sent him to **Mamoon**.

Revolt of Alveen

210H-Mamoon was lenient on **Alveen** but every time they revolted, ultimately **Mamoon** arrested them all and assassinated them.

Revolt of Egypt & Iskandria/Alexandra

210H-Abdullah bin Tahir crushed the revolt and returned back.

Revolt of Musal

211H-Mohammed bin Toosi was made **Governor of Musal**. He crushed the revolt and peace came.

Revolt of Babuk Khormi

209H-Irani's are of weak belief so all the time different type of movements of false belief arises. They believe in that the soul of one person after his death transfers into

another person. Mamoon made several attacks but could not succeed in crushing this movement.

At the time of **Motasim** this movement was crushed.

Library of Mamoon

He was a great Philosopher but was rigid on Islam. The only bad thing was that he believed in **Khalq Quran**.

He was a great scholar having knowledge on different subjects and collected thousands of books on these subjects and translated them in Arabic.

Following are the subjects:-

Mathematics, Algebra & Trigonometry

Hikmat & medicine

Science & Technology. Density of substances. Distance measuring instruments of Planets.

Astronomy-Distances of Sun, Moon, Planets & Stars from Earth. Laboratory of astronomical instruments.

History

Geography, Map of world showing Continents, Oceans & populated areas. Longitude & Latitude.

Scholars Mohadis & Faqih

Eisa bin Yousuf-Hadees from Imam Malik & Fiqah from Imam Abu Haneefa. D:187H.

Hassan bin Ziyad-Student of Imam Abu Haneefa. D:202H

Moosa bin Sulaiman-Fiqah from Imam Mohammed & Hadees from Abu Yousuf & Ibne Mubarak.

Assam bin Yousuf -Fiqah from Abu Yousuf. D:201H.

Hussain bin Hafs-Student Abu Yousuf. Qazi-Isfahan. D:210H

Moalla bin Mansur Razi-Student Imam Mohammed & Abu Yousuf. D:211H.

Dhahak bin Mokhallad-Student Imam Abu Haneefa. D:213H.

Bishr bin Abi Azhar-Fiqah Ine Mubarak & Hadees Abu Yousuf. D:213H.

Khalf bin Ayub-Follower Ibraheem Bin Adham. D:215H.

Mohammed bin Abdullah-Qazi Baghdad & Basra. D:215H.

Ibraheem bin Aljarrah-Student Abu Yousuf. D:217H.

Victories

201H- Kabul, Sindh, Qasri, Kashmeer, Tibet, Bukhan Darawar, Farghana & Turkistan.

212H- Crete & Saqlia/Sicily Islands by **Agglabids**.

215H- Fort Qurra, Majda & Saad of Rome, and Egypt.

217H- Attacked Rome again and populated most of the cities by muslims

Development & Reforms

215H-Foundation of Great Mosque @ Qairvan.

8-Motasim billah bin Haroon

218H-227H (833-842AD)= **8 yrs. 8 months**

Age:-48 yrs

Birth:-180H.

Death:-R.Awal 227H.

Qaziul Quzzat:-Qazi Ahmed bin Abi Daud(motazili)

Wazeer Aala:-Fazal bin Marwan-Ahmed bin Ammar-Mohammed bin Abdul Malik.

Qualities

He was of strong body & heart, brave, courageous, terrifying & awful personality.

He use to lift 200 kg weight and walk easily.

He was powerful & self determined still of high morality & good manners.

Question of Khalq Quran

Motasim insisted on **Imam Hanbal** to accept the belief of **Khalq Quran**.

Imam Hanbal said give me the proof by Quran & Hadees.

Imam Hanbal asked Knowledge of **Allah** is **Makhlooq/Creature or Ghayr makhlooq/ non - creature**. There was no reply.

Imam Ahmed was brought daily in chains and whipped. One day Imam Hanbal Ra was being brought for whipping a thief **Abul Hasheem** said Hanbal I am a thief and had been whipped 18,000 times but still I did not give up, though I know that I am wrong and you being on **Haq/Truth** should be more firm. So never give up. Imam Hanbal says that whenever I felt pain by whipping I remembered the words of thief **Abul Hasheem**.

Imam Hanbal was whipped 80 times. This ended on the death of Wasiq bin Motasim.

REVOLTS RIOTS & VICTORIES

Revolts by Alvieen

219H-Mohammed bin Qasim bin Ali claimed his Imamate in Khurasan. Hakim Khurasan fought and arrested him. He sent him to **Motasim**. He imprisoned him in Samra. On Eid day he flew away and disappeared. **Zaydia group of Shiya believes that Abdullah bin Qasim is Imam Mehdi and will appear again.**

Revolt by Babuk Khurmi

222H-This movement started at the time of Mamoon. **Afsheen** with a great army attacked and after fierce fighting he was defeated. He flew away to the mountainous area of **Armenia**. **Afsheen** followed him and arrested him. **Afsheen** took him to **Motasim**. He welcomed Afsheen and rewarded him with **crown on his head 2,000,000 dirham** to him and 1,000,000 dirham to his army. **Motasim** called **Babuk** in his court and said you have killed 125,000 of my people in 20 years. His hands & legs were cut. His head was sent to **Khurasan and body was hanged in Samra for lesson. 60,600 muslim women & children were freed from arrest of Babuk.**

223H-Babuki movement raised in Armenia & Azarbaijan. Afsheen crushed the movement.

Hamduvia bin Ali was made the Ruler of Armeenia. He brought peace.

224H-Maziar-Ruler of Tibristan stopped paying tax. **Motasim** arrested him and whipped him he died. Entire **Tibristan** was captured.

Revolt of Mankujor

Mankujor-Governor of Azarbaijan revolted. **Motasim** sent the army. The army arrested him and brought to Motasim. He imprisoned him.

Revolt of Jafar Bin Fahar Kurdi

A kurd Jafar bin Fahar revolted. **Motasim** sent Abdullah bin Syed, he was defeated. Then he sent a Turkish commander, he crushed the revolt. Killed Jafar.

Revolt of Mubarqa

227H-Abu Harb Mubarqa of Palastine claimed prophethood. **Motasim** sent **Rija bin Ayub** with 1,000 army he arrested him and sent to **Motasim**. He assassinated him.

Victory of Amuria

223H- King Tufil of Rome attacked and killed muslim men and arrested the women. **Motasim** with huge army attacked and broke the boundary wall of **Amoria** entered the city fought fiercely thousands of army was killed and thousands were wounded and city was captured. The people were given peace. 20,000 army was arrested and killed. A huge quantity of booty was obtained.

Revolt by Abbas bin Mamoon

224H-Some of the army Generals supported **Abbas** to takeover the kingdom. **Motasim** came back from **Amuria** and arrested **Abbas** and his family supporter and imprisoned them where they died. Arrested the Generals who supported Abbas and assassinated them.

Rise of Turks

In the period of Mamoon & Motasim, Ajami's/Non-arabs were given the high ranks in the kingdom. **Turks** were purchased from **Samarqand & Farghana** for this purpose. They also gave a great performance.

Motasim gave preference to **Turks** on **Arabs & Iranis**, the result was that these **Generals** started hating the **Turks**.

Samra City for Turks

A very beautiful city near Baghdad was constructed for Turks. In few years it became like Baghdad. It was given the name Sarman Rai which later became **Samra. It was the Capital of Motasim.**

The Turks instead of being thankful became proud and started giving hard times to Arabs.

Ultimately Motasim also felt the danger.

The decline of khilafat Banu Abbas was because of these slave Turks, and all the responsibility is on Motasim, who took the future of the Khilafat from Arab Leaders and handed over to the Slave Turks.

Assassination of Commander Afsheen

226H-Relation between Motasim & Afsheen became tense. Afsheen invited Motasim & other generals on feast, the programme was to poison them. Motasim got information he arrested Afsheen and assassinated him. His body was hanged on main gate for lesson to others.

King's of following countries were under his Khilafat:-

Azarbaijan. Tibristan. Seestan. Farghana(Uzbekistan). Takharistan & Kabul.

Development & Reforms

221H-Built a new capital city **Samara near Baghdad.**

233H-Foundation of **Great Mosque at Samara.**

9-Wasiq billah Haroon bin Motasim

227H - 232H(841-846AD)=5 yrs. 9 months.

Age:-46H.

Birth:-186H near Nakka.

Death:-Zilhaj 232H

Qaziul Quzzat:-Qazi Ibne Abi Daud(motazili).

Deputy Ruler:-Ashnas Turk

Wazeer Aala:-Mohammed bin Abdul Malik

Governors:-Yemen-Etakh Turk.

Madina-Mohammed bin Saleh Abbasi.

Makka-Mohammed bin Daud.

Khurasan,Kirman,Tibristan & Rai-Tahir bin Abdullah.

Safura & Awasim-Saeed bin Muslim.

Qualities

He also followed his father and gave too much rights to Slave Turks.

He created the post **Deputy Ruler.**

He was very generous and kind to **Alvieen.**

He was humble and well behaved.

Question of Khalqe Quran

Ahmed bin Daood motazili misguided the **Wasiq to believe in Khalqe Quran. Punished Imam Hanbal Ra and killed Ahmed bin Nasar Ra.**

Abdullah bin Mohammed Azdi was arrested amongst the scholars. He was brought in the court of **Wasiq.**

Ibne Azdi asked the Qazi.The thing towards which you are calling did **Prophet SA knew about it? **Qazi** said yes.**

Ibne Azdi asked. Then why did **Prophet SA didn't call the people.**

Qazi could not reply.

Ibne Azdi said. The thing which **Prophet SA** didn't do why you are doing?

This struck the heart of **Wasiq. He rewarded **Ibne Azdi** and freed **Ahmed bin Hanbal Ra.****

Khalifa in last days was guided by **Ibne Azdi Ra and corrected his belief.**

REVOLTS RIOTS & VICTORIES

Riots by Arabs of Hijaz

230H-When the arabs saw that their rights have been given to Turks,they rioted in Hijaz and started looting & killing. **Commander Abi Moosa Bafaul Kabeer Turk** crushed the riot and arrested thousands of rioters.

Khuruj by Ahmed bin Nasar

231H-**Mohaddis Ahmed bin Nasar** revolted because of wrong belief of **Wasiq regarding Khalqe Quran**, thousands of people followed him. **Mohammed bin Ibraheem** arrested the leaders and **Ahmed bin Nasar** and sent them to Wasiq. Wasiq killed him on the saying of Qazi Abi Daud motazili.

Riots in Armeenia

Arabs revolted in Armeenia. **Ahmed bin Khalid** crushed the riot and brought peace.

Riots by Khawarij

231H-**Mohammed bin Abdullah Kharijee** rioted in **Diyare Rabia**. **Aalim bin Muslim** crushed the riot arrested the Kharijee. Wasiq assassinated him.

Riots by Kurd of Isfahan

Commander Rausiat Turk arrested 500 young Kurd.

Riots by Banu Numayr

232H-**People of Yamama** rioted. **Bafaul Kabeer** crushed the riots killed the rioters arrested some and whipped them.

victories

228H-**Fazal bin Jafar Hamdani** captured some of the islands of **Sicily**

229H-**Abul Abbas** attacked on **Surra** fought bravely killed 10,000 **Romans**. **Only 3 muslims** were martyred.

232H-**Fazal bin Jafar** attacked **Seni** and captured it.

232H-**City Tarnat** was inhabited by muslims.

10- Motawakal Alallah Jafar bin Motasim

232H-247H(846-861AD) = 15 yrs.

Age:- 41 yrs.

Birth:-Shawal 206H.

Death:- 247H.

Qaziul Quzza:-**Ahmed bin Abi Daud motazili-Yahya bin Aqsam-Jafar bin Abdul Wahid. Wazeer Aala-Ibne Ziyat-Ahmed bin Khalid-Mohammed bin Fazal-Ubaidullah Bin Yahya bin Khaqan**

Governor:- **Musal-Ghanim bin Mohammed Tusi. Harmayn,Yemen & Taif- Muntasir bin Motawakal.**

Qualities

Motawakal made effort to revive Sunna.

His great work was revival of Sunna and to stop the mischieves of Motazili,Qadri & other false movements.

He was totally against **Khalqe Quran**.

He collected all the Mohadiseen in 234H at Capital Samra on feast rewarded them.

He deputed **Abu Bakr bin Abi Shayba in Jame Resafa & Usman bin Abi Shayba in Jame Mansur to give lecture of hadees**. 30,000 people daily attended their lecture.

He took care of his public and made justice with them. His justice was well known.

His period was of goodness,welfare,prosperity,comfort,tranquility,freedom,happiness & greeness. In the beginning bribery was common, but he punished the high officials and closed the door of bribery. The roads were peaceful. Things were cheap. Merchants were well off. Due to construction of palaces,buildings & roads labour and poor people were benefitted.

He was humble gentle & generous but not extravagant.

He had faith on Imam Shafae Ra.

He liked **Zunnun Misri Ra**. He called him from **Egypt** to have company with him and respected him too much.

He enjoyed the luxurious companies, but not so much as the Shiya historians have written about him. Because he was against Shiyas.

Spreading of Religious Knowledge

Motawakal period famous books of hadees was written and published for example:-

Abu Daud-Tirmizi-Ibne Maja-Musnad Haris-Musnad Darimi.

Tabqat Ibne Saad- Futuhul Buldan.

Only in Baghdad 800 Shaikhs were giving dars/lectures.

REVOLTS RIOTS & VICTORIES

232H-Motawakal imprisoned Wazeer Ibne ziyat.

Revolt of Ibne Baees

234H-Mohammed bin Baees Chief of Azarbaijan revolted. He was arrested by Bagha and imprisoned where he died.

Prophethood claim by Mahmood bin Faraj

235H-Mahmood was arrested and assassinated. His followers were sentenced to jail.

Revolt in Armeenia by Batareeq

Boqrat bin Ashwat revolted in Armeenia. Hakim Yousuf fought bravely but was martyred. Bagha was sent. He crushed the revolt arrested Moosa bin Zurara sent him to Capital. Then advanced towards revolters killed 20,000 Armeenians and thousands were arrested. Then advanced towards

Deebal & Teflees killed the Hakim-Ishaq bin Ismaeel the revolter. Then he advanced to Safarya where the Romans came for help with huge army, so Bagha was defeated.

Khalid bin Yazeed was sent. He defeated the Romans and they agreed to pay tax.

Yafarya State in Sana-Yemen

236H-Abdur Raheem bin Ibraheem was Asst. Ruler of Sana deputed by Governor of Yemen. His administration was vey good. He died. His son Yafer also ruled properly. People liked him very much so he became the ruler of Sana and formed Yafarya State. Yafarya family ruled upto 387H.

Safaaria State in Sajistan

237H-Yaqub bin Lays Safaari founded Safaaria State in Sajistan.

Romans attack on Egypt

238H-Romans attacked on Damyat-Egypt by 300 armed ships, burnt the Jame Masjid, killed the men arrested the women and was about to leave the shore when an imprisoned Ameer-Basar bin Akshaf broke his chains took thousands of people and attacked on Romans, killed hundreds of them. After this incidence Motawakal constructed several forts along the shore deputed army for protection.

Revolt in Hims

240H-People of Hims revolted. Turned out the Hakim-Abul Moghees Moosa. Motawakalm made Mohammed bin Abdviya Governor of Hims. He crushed the revolt arrested the revolters whipped and assassinated them and hanged their body for lesson.

Exchange of Prisoners

241H-A very cruel Roman Queen Tadora arrested 12,000 muslims and started killing them.

Motawakal sent Qazi Jafar bin Abdul Wahid to Rome. Only 285 men & 125 women were left.

More than hundred of zimmi christians were also got freed.

Invasion of Bijat on Egypt

241H-The area between Egypt & Ethopia was populated by Barbarians. The area was rich in mines of gold,silver & jewels. The tribes of Rabea & Jahanya use to pay 100 misqal gold in tax.The ruler Ali Baba stopped paying tax and attacked on Egypt. Motawakal sent Mohammed bin Abdullah Qumi. He attacked with horses having bell in their neck. Ali Babas camels got out of control with ringing bell sound.and was defeated. Ali Baba requested for peace. He paid four years tax at the rate of 400 misqal gold yearly.

Victories & Reforms:-

Saqlia was captured and populated by muslims.

234H-Raghus was taken over by muslims.

235H- Motawakal ordered Christians to wear tie to differentiate from muslim.

235H-Romans attacked on Qasriyana and killed muslims without any reason. **Abbas bin Fazal - Governor of Saqlia** took the revenge from Romans. His uncle **Ribah** went towards **Fort Abi Saur** and killed thousands of Romans.

238H-Abbas captured Qasriyana, Qutana, Sartula, Nutas Raghus & Tabseera.

242H-Abbas destroyed the Roman forts.

242H-Abbas attacked with Naval fleet on **Qasriyana**. Out of 40 Roman armed ships 10 were captured. **Capital Qasriyana** was captured. Constructed a mosque and next friday offered **Juma Prayer**. A large quantity of booty was obtained.

243H-Abbas destroyed **Fort Hadeed**.

243H-Roman Emperor sent a fleet of 300 armed ships to **Saqlia**. **Great Mujahid Abbas** defeated the Romans. Killed thousands of them and captured 100 ships. Then he constructed forts and established army camps.

245H-Abbas captured **Sarqusa** and advanced towards **Qarqana** on the way he passed away. The Romans in revenge took out his body from grave and burnt it.

245H-Motawakal deputed **Bafa Kabir** on the Roman Border. He captured **Dhamla**. Romans attacked on **Sumyat** and killed hundreds of muslims. **Ali bin Yahya** attacked on **Karkara** and arrested **Roman General**. **Roman Emperor** exchanged him against muslims.

246H-Yahya attacked on Romans and arrested 400 of them.

246H-Fazal bin Qaran attacked with 20 ships and captured the Fort of **Antakia**.

Sindh

235H-Governor-Haroon bin Abi Khalid crushed the riots for five years and was killed. **Umar bin Abdul Aziz Habari** captured the capital **Mansura** and requested **Motawakal** for its rulership. He agreed. **Ibnul Aziz** fomed his state.

Alvieen

237H-Shiya started prostrating the tomb of Imam Hussain RA. **Motawakal** demolished the dome.

New city Jafarya

245H-A new city Jafarya was built few miles from **Samra**. A grandeur palace was built named **Qasre Lulu/Pearl Palace**.

Murder of Motawakal

247H-Motawakal was fed up with the Turks, first of all he killed **Ameer Eitakh** and was planning for others. Turks became alert and one night when **Motawakal** was in the company of drinking Nabeez they killed him.

11-Muntasir billah bin Motawakal

247H-248H(861-861) = 6 months.

Age:-26 yrs.

Birth:-222H.

Death:-R.Sani 248H. Qadsia.

Qaziul Quzza:-Jafar bin Abdul Wahid Hashmi.

Wazeer Aala:-Ahmed bin Khaseeb.

Qualities

Muntasir was modest,gentle,obliging,well mannered,dignified, strong tolerant & bravel He facilitated Shiya and was miser.

Revolt of Abul Umood Sharibi

Abul Umood Sharbi in Musal & Bawaranj in Yemen revolted. **Seema Turkey** crushed the revolt, arrested **Abul Umood** and sent him to **Muntasir**. He took oath of obedience and freed him.

Victories

247H-Ameer Saqlia Abdullah bin Abbas captured fort Jabal bin Malik, Armeen, Mushrea & other forts.

Murder of Muntasir

248H-Muntasir wanted to turn out Turks from kingdom. Turks conspired and poisoned him to death.

12-Mustaeen billah bin Mohammed bin Motasim

248H-252H(861-865AD)= 3 yrs. 9 months.

Age:- 31 yrs.

Birth:-221H.

Death:-252H.

Qaziul Quzza:- Hassan bin Abi Shwarib

Wazeer Aala:-Atamish Turkey.

Revolt by Alvieen

250H-Yahya bin Umar got freedom frm Baghdad came to Kufa and claimed for Khilafat.

Ameer Baghdad sent Hassan bin Ibraheem. He fought and killed Yahya.

Alvi State in Tibristan

250H-Hassan bin Yazeed Alvi captured Tibristan and founded **Alvi State. His** family ruled upto **316H.**

Roman borders

Two brave Commanders Umar bin Abdullah & Ali bin Yahya use to fight bravely crush the Roman attacks. They were also martyred. Now the Romans started attacking and killing muslims.

Mustaeen had no power to stop them.

Kingdom Administration

Turks were illiterate nation they destroyed the kingdom administration.

252H-The Turk ministers overthrew Mustaeen and took Bait of Motaz.

Murder of Mustaeen

Shawal 252H-Mustaeen was killed by bodyguard Saeed.

Development & Reforms

249H-Qubba al-Suaybiya mausoleum, Samara, first monumental Islamic tomb.

13-Motaz billah bin Motawakal

252H-255H(865-868AD)=3 yrs.

Age:-24Yrs.

Birth:-231H.

Death:-Shaban 255H. Murdered by Turks.

Qaziul Quzza:-

Wazeer Aala:-Abul Fazal Jafar bin Mahmood-Eisa bin Farkhan Shah-Ahmed bin Israel.

Qualities

Motaz was always busy in enjoyment & luxuries.

He was a learned eloquent speaker.

Revolt by Masawir Kharijee

252H-Masawir Abdullah bin Kharijee defeated Governor Musal-Uqba bin Mohammed.

253H-Masawir defeated Governor Musal-Ayub bin Umar.

255H-Masawir defeated Governor Musal-Abdullah bin Sulaiman.

257H-Masawir captured most of **Iraq.**

Idreesia State in Maghrib by Alvieen

253H-Idrees bin Abdullah formed Idreesia State in **Maghribi Africa.**

Zaydia State in Tibristan by Alvieen

250-270H Hassan bin Zayd

270-279H Mohammed bin Zayd

300-304H Hassan Atrush bin Ali

304-355H Hassan bin Qasim.

Tuluniya State in Egypt by Turks

254H-Tulun was a Turkish slave his son Ahmed was made the Governor of Egypt.

258H-Ahmed bin Tulun formed the Tuluniya State and became the Ruler of Egypt.

254-292H-This State remained under Khilafat Abbasi. They ruled justly, peacefully & developed the state in such a way that the people remained peaceful, comfortable and happy.

Following were the Rulers:-

254-270H:-Ahmed bin Tulun

270-282H:-Khumarviya bin Ahmed

282-283H:-Jaish bin Khumarvia

283-292H:-Haroon bin Khumarvia

292-292H:-Shaiban bin Ahmed

Throwing off from khilafat

Shaban 255H-Motaz was thrown off from khilafat by the Turks and after five days killed him.

14-Mohtadi billah bin Wasiq

255H-256H(868-869AD) = 1 yr.

Age:-46 Yrs.

Birth:-210H.

Death:-Rajab 256H.

Qaziul Quzza:-Hassan bin Mohammed bin Abi Shurab.

Wazeer Aala:-Mahmood bin Jafar-Sulaiman bin Wahab.

Qualities

Mohtadi was very religious, pious, god fearing,

He established justice in his kingdom. Once someone claimed against his son. He called the prince in his court. Prince agreed his fault. Mohtadi at once gave the right to the claimant.

He totally stopped play & songs.

He was brave and tried his best to establish the commandments of Allah but no one helped him.

He use to worship most of the night.

He mostly fasted.

His living was simple. He ate simple. He dressed simple.

He use to say that in Banu Umaya man like Umar bin Abdul Aziz was born and there is none like him in Banu Abbas, therefore I have adopted this way.

He loved Sunna & family of Prophet SA.

Revolt by Masawir Kharijee

255H-Masawir Kharijee captured Musal.

Revolt by Saheb-uz-Zang

255H-Ali bin Abdur Rahim Az-zang came to Bahrain. This was the center of Shiyan Ali. He posed himself to be Shiya and took bayt by the Habshi slaves. He announced that any slave coming to me will get freedom. Thousands of Habshi slaves gathered under his flag. Sahebuz Zang was actually Kharijee but he posed himself to be Shiya. Abu Hilal Turk attacked but was defeated.

Abul Mansur attacked but he was also defeated. The Zangi (Habshi) started looting and killing. Zangis(Habshi) attacked on Ayla and burnt the entire city.

256H-Moosa bin Bagha killed Saleh bin Waseef.

Murder of Mohtadi

Rajab 256H-Moosa bin Bagha attacked on Mohtadi. He fought bravely and killed 4,000 Turks, but his people became coward so he was arrested and martyred.

15-Motamid Alallah bin Motawakal

256H-279H(869-892AD) =23 yrs.

Age:-50 yrs.

Birth:-229H.

Death:-279H.

Qaziul Quzza:-Hassan bin Mohammed bin Shawarib.-Ali bin Mohammed.

Asst. Ruler:- Mowafiq bin Motawakal.

Mowafiq was actually ruling the kingdom. **He** crushed the bloody riots of

Zangi.

He tried his level best to retain the **Khilafat banu Abbas** and gave up his life

but

could not succeed because the members of the kingdom was hopeless.

He was brave,courageous and commanded the army in the battlefield

successfully.

His awful & dignified personality terrified the leader of Turks.

His death was a great loss for the Khilafat of Banu Abbas.

Wazeer Aala:-Ubaydullah bin Yahya bin Khaqan.

Hassan bin Mokhallad.

Sulaiman bin Wahab.

Governor:-Eastern Area-Mowafiq bin Motawakal.

Egypt & Maghrib-Jafar bin Motamid.

Qualities

Motamid was total failure as a ruler. His life was spent in play,song & dances.

Anarchy

Safaria State:- Sajistan- Kirman- Persia. **Ruled by Yaqub Safaari.**

Zaydia State:-Tibristan-Jarjan etc.

Samania State:-Ma wara un Nahar-Capital Samarqand.

Aghalib State:-North Africa.

Sahebus Zang:-Basra-Ayla

Revolt of Governor Sham-Eisa bin Shaikh

257H-Eisa revolted. Motamid made Ameer Amajore Turk-Governor. He attacked and killed Mansur s/o Eisa. He flew away to Armeenia.

Riots of Sahebus Zang

252-270H:- A Sudani leader Bahbud Zangi declared himself Prophet and on the member openly use to abuse all the sahaba except Shakhain RA. He rioted for 7 years in Iraq and a large portion was under their control. They made too much killing & looting. They arrested the women of noble families and sold them as slaves. Only in Basra in one day 300,000 muslims were killed. **Mohallabi s/o Sahebus Zang** killed 1,500,000 muslims in Basra. Totally about 10,000,000 muslims were killed.

270H-Mowafiq bin Motawakal & Abul Abbas bin Motamid took a great army killed thousands of **Zangis** and **Sahebus Zang & his son Mohallabi** and ended this riot. When they entered **Baghdad** victorious warm welcome was given to them. **People of Baghdad enlightened the city with happiness. The leaders head were cut and posted on poles for lesson.**

Tuluniya State

262H-Ibne Tulun captured Egypt & Sham. **Motamid** handed over the State to **Ibne Tulun.** He became happy and sent too much gifts to **Motamid.**

263H-Romans attacked killed muslims and captured **Fort Lulu.** Moreover went on attacking and killing muslims.

264H-Ibne Tulun strengthened his state and attacked on Roman borders and captured **Tarsoos** killed the Romans, advanced inside Roman territories destroyed several of their cities & forts.

Fear & Terror of Ibne Tulun was so much entered in their hearts that **Roman King** left the area and sent gifts to **Ibne Tulun.**

265H-Muslims & Roman fleet fought bravely near **Sicily** but muslims were defeated they returned back to **Sicily**.

270H-Romans attacked on **Tartoos** with 100,000 army. **Slave of Ibne Tulun- Mazya** fought bravely and killed 70,000 **Romans**. **Ruler Albatarqa** was also killed and huge amount of booty was obtained.

270H-Ameer Saqlia Jafer bin Mohammed captured **Sarqooma** with Naval & Land forces. An armed fleet came from **Qustuntunia** and was also defeated. This ended the Roman attacks.

Alvieen

260H-Imam Abu Mohammed Hassan Askari 11th Imam of Shiya Asna Ashriya died . After his death some shiya believe in 12th Imam Mohammed Askari who has disappeared and will come as **Imam Mehdi**. Some believe that Imammat has ended. After **Imam Jafer Sadiq the 6th Imam** shiya's are divided in two main groups. **Ismaeelia & Imamia**.

Imamia:-They believe from **Imam Moosa Kazim till Imam Mehdi to come**.

Ismaeelia:-They believe in **Imam Ismaeel** and in his family Imammat will continue.

Batinya:-This is a branch of Ismaeelia and created in the time of Motamid. The main leader was **Abdullah bin Maimoon Majusi (fire worshiper)** after accepting Islam claimed prophethood in **Salmia a town of Hims(Sham)**. **From here the Shiya Batinya started**.

Qaramta:-This is also a branch of Ismaeelia created in the time of Motamid. **Hamdani Qaramt** came from **Khozistan to Kufa** and claimed his Imammat in a town **Nahrain**. **Ameer Kufa-Hasheem** arrested him. At night the slave girl helped him in escape. In the morning he gained popularity of disappearing by his miracle.

Tuluniya

270H-After the death of Tulun. His son **Khumarvia** fought with **Abul Abbas** and got victory.

Death of Motamid

279H-Motamid ate and drank wine too much and died. Some say that he was poisoned.

Samania State-261-395H(864-999AD)

Ismaeel bin Ahmed bin Asad Samani founded the kingdom on **Tibristan-Sajistan-Khurasan-Mazindan-Rai-Isfahan-Ma wara un Nahar**.

Capital was Samarqand.

Kings of Samania:-

261H- Ismaeel bin Ahmed:-Capital-Samarqand. He was brave,well mannered,kind & just.

297H- Ahmed bin Ismaeel:-Capital-Bukhara--Brave but immoral. Courtiers killed him.

Ruled for 6 yrs.

303H- Abul Hassan Nasar bin Ahmed:-He was very famous king. Because of his kindness he was known as Ameer Saeed.

331H- Nuh bin Nasar:- He always had to face the Rulers of Vailum and got victory.

343H- Abdul Malik bin Nuh:- He always had to face the Rulers of Vailum and got victory.

350H- Mansur bin Nuh:- His Commander Alaptageen flew away to Ghazni and his slave

Subuktageen formed his kingdom in **Ghazni**

365H- Nuh bin Mansur:- In his time Addudaulah captured Iraq and Shamsulmal Qabus captured Jarjan & Tibristan. Bafra Khan-Governor Khurasan captured Ma wara un Nahar but he died

soon. So **Nuh** again became King of Ma wara un Nahar. Bu Ali became the King of Khurasan

and attacked on Nuh. **Nuh** with the help of Subuktageen & Mahmood defeated Bu Ali.

387H- Mansur bin Nuh:- The courtiers wanted Mansur to fight with Mahmood but when he refused

the courtiers killed him by piercing hot iron needle in his eyes.

390H- Abdul Malik bin Nuh:- The courtiers compelled Abdul Malik to fight with Mahmood. **Abdul Malik** was defeated. He flew to his capital, but it was captured by Ailak Khan of Kashghar.

Abdul Malik was arrested and the Kingdom of Samania ended.

Samania Rule was full of bravery & courage. The society was civilized & prosperous, also made progress in science & technology. The King respected & honoured the scholars.

Scholars & Mohaddis

Ibraheem bin Adham Balkhi Ra:- Khalifa of Fuzail bin Ayaz Ra. Great Wali Allah & Mohaddis.

Imam Bukhari Ra:- Imamul Mohaddiseen.

Imam Muslim Ra:- Student of Imam Ahmed bin Hanbal Ra.

Imam Abu Daud Ra :-

Imam Tirmizi Ra

Development & Reforms

263H-Ibne Tulun Masjid-Cairo.

16-Motadhid billah bin Mowafiq

279H-289H(892-901AD) = 9 yrs. 9 months.

Age:-47 yrs.

Birth:-

Death:-R.Sani 289H.

Qaziul Quzza:-Abu Ishaq bin Ismaeel-Yousuf bin Yaqub.

Wazeer Aala:-Ubaidullah bin Sulaiman-Qasim bin Ubaidullah.

Governors:-

Qualities

Motazid had distinctive position in administration, politics, wisdom, brilliance, magnificence & dignity.

He finished the idolatry customs & culture from the muslim society.

He was very firm on Islam. He was far away from adultery, wickedness & impiety.

He was not a toy in the hands of Turks. The rising power of the Turk leadership was crushed down

He ruled on the Islamic kingdom with **Magnificence & Dignity.**

His period was of general betterment, prosperity, happiness, peace & justice.

He was the one who revived the Khilafat of Banu Abbas. **Eastern & Western territories** became under his control.

He protected the life, wealth & property of general public from the tortures of the army.

He never let the enemy to raise his head.

His political wisdom made the two enemy fight with each other finish themselves. Like this the **Safarya kingdom and Zaydia movement ended. Tuluniya came under the control of Khilafat. Samania was weakened.**

Reforms

He shifted back the capital to Baghdad from Samara.

Corrected the belief of the people.

Developed agriculture & farming.

Developed trade & business.

Modernized the Darul Uloom.

Established very large hospitals.

End of Khawarij Riots

281H-Haroon Kharijee & Governor Musal rioted. Motdhid himself went to Musal and did general masacre of bedouin.

283H-Motdhid sent Hassan bin Samdan against Haroon. He defeated Haroon arrested him brought Baghdad and assassinated him. After his death complete peace was brought in **Musal.**

Condition of Qarmata

281H-Yahya bin Mehdi claimed to be Invitee of **Imam Mehdi in Bahrain. Governor of Bahrain** arrested him and punished severely. When he was freed he again started the movement.

287H-Qarmata started looting, killing torturing people in Basra & Hijr. Ruler of Persia **Abbas bin Amar** fought bravely but was defeated. His people were burnt in fire. They advantage

towards Kufa and started rioting. **Motadhid** sent the army, who killed several leaders and thousands of Quramti. Another Inviter **Zakarvia bin Mahavia** stood up and destroyed the towns in the border of Sham.

289H-Qarmata captured Sham & Kufa. **Governor of Kufa** fought bravely and arrested the leader **Abul Fawaris** and sent him to **Motadhid**. He assassinated him.

Abul Qasi Yahya claimed himself to be from the family of **Imam Jafer** and the followers were called **Fatimeen**. His movement was very active in **Iraq, Bahrain & Sham**.

In the same time **Fatimi Invitee** started **Ismaeeli Imam** in **Yemen & Africa**.

Amar bin Lays Safari & Ismaeel Samani

Amar Safari sent **Ameer Mohammed** to capture **Ma wara un Nahar**. **Ismaeel Samani** defeated him and **Ameer Mohammed** was killed. **Amar Safari** himself attacked but was defeated and arrested. **Ismaeel** sent him to **Motadhid**. He sent him to jail, and handed over his territories to **Ismaeel Samani**.

Mohammed bin Zayd Alvi attacked on **Khurasan**. **Ismaeel** sent **Mohammed bin Haroon**. Both fought bravely after a bloody fight **Mohammed** was killed and his son **Zayd** was arrested.

Samania State now became strong and spread from **Ma wara un Nahar** to **Tibristan**.

Destruction of Naval Fleet of Tartus

Ameer Mohammed bin Abi Asaj-Governor of Azarbaijan became arrogance. **Motadhid** with political wisdom handed the governorship of **Armeenia** also. Still he conspired and sent his slave **Waseef** for the kingdom of Roman border. **Motadhid** knew about the conspiracy. He arrested **Waseef** & Leaders of **Tartus** and burnt the fleet of 500 ships. The Naval force of muslim became weak.

Motadhid & Tuluniya State

282H-Motadhid was too kind on **Khumarvia bin Tulun** because he gifted **Motadhid** 20 asses loaded with gold many othe valuables. Moreover married his daughter to **Motadhid**. **Motadhid** gave him the kingdom of **Frat to Barqa**. **Khumarvia** gave a golden throne decorated with precious pearls and so many other valuables in dowry to his daughter that the like of it is not found in the history.

Later on **Khumarvia** was killed by his slave. His brother **Haroon** took over. **Motadhid** handed over the Government of Sham & Egypt only to **Haroon** on payment of 50,000 dinar yearly tax.

Battle with Romans

285H-A slave of **Mowafiq** attacked from **Tartus** by Naval force burnt 30 ships and killed 3,000 Roman soldiers.

287H-Hassan bin Ali captured several Roman forts and arrested many Romans.

Romans in revenge attacked by Naval & Land forces on **Kaisum** and arrested 15,000 muslims.

17-Muktafi billah bin Motadhid

289H-295H(902-908AD) = 6 yrs.

Age:-31 yrs.

Birth:-R.Sani 264H.

Death:-Ziqad 295H.

Qaziul Quzza:-Yousuf bin Yaqub-Mohammed bin Yousuf-Abdullah bin Ali.

Wazeer Aala:-Qasim bin Ubaidullah-Abbas bin Hassan.

Qualities

Muktafi was well mannered & god fearing.

He established justice. Returned the buildings & properties taken in the time of previous kingdom, because of which people liked him too much.

Revolts of Qarmata

289H-Abul Qasim Qarmati advanced from **Samawa** towards **Egypt**. Attacked on **Subuk Waylmi** - Governor of **Egypt** destroyed the amy and advanced towards **Damishq** killed the army of Governor of **Jordan**. **Governor of Damishq-Taghaj** attacked on **Qurmati** and killed him.

Qurmati's took bayt on **Abul Hassan** and sieged **Damishq** again and after killing and looting advanced towards **Hims**. Destroyed the city **Balbak**.

290H-Muktafi came out with his army sent **Abul Aaz** to attack. He killed thousands of the army and arrested **Qarmati** and many of them. **Mohammed bin Sulaiman** also arrested many of them and brought to Muktafi. **Muktafi** collected them all in a field and slaughtered them all. **The Qarmati's made so much destruction & killing that the people celebrated the day with joy & happiness.**

292H-Another Qarmati in Sham destroyed the army of **Tulun**. **Mohammed bin Sulaiman** got the chance to destroy the **Kingdom of Tulun**. **Like this Tuluniya Kingdom ended in 292H after 47 years of rule.**

293H-Abu Hatim Qarmati of Banu Kalb revolted around Sham and started looting & killing and advanced towards Jordan. Khalifa sent **Hussain bin Hamdan**. He fought bravely and defeated him He ran away to **Hayt** killed the people and burnt the city. Khalifa sent **Mohammed bin Ishaq**. He killed the **Qarmati**.

294H-Zakarvia Qarmati killed the Caravan of **Hujjaj** returning from Makka. He killed more than 50,000 Hajjis in which several noble persons of different countries were killed. **Waseef bin Swartageen from Qadsia** came with a huge army of Bani Shayban and after furious fight **Qarmati** was killed. The revolters were killed arrested and sent to **Muktafi**.

295H-Ismaeel bin Ahmed Samani died. **Muktafi** gave Rulership to his son **Ahmed bin Ismaeel**.

End of Tuluniya State

292H-Shayban bin Ahmed bin Tulun died and **Tuluniya State ended**. **Sham & Egypt** came under the control of **Muktafi**.

End of Aghaliba State

Abu Abdullah Saifi Fatimi finished the **Aghaliba State in Africa**.

Rome

291H-Romans attacked on Muslims. **Royal Islmic Army** fought bravely killed 5,000 Roman army and 5,000 arrested. A large amount of booty was obtained.

18-Muqtadir billah bin Motadhid

295H-320H(907-932AD) =25 yrs.

Age:-38 yrs.

Birth:-282H.

Death:-320H.

Qualities

Muqtadir spent his life time & wealth in drinking, enjoying with women, singing & dancing. His mother & slave girls were interfering in kingdom affairs.

Fatimi State

297H-Ubaidullah Mehdi Fatimi finished the **State of Idreesia & Aghalibia in North Africa** and established **Fatimi State in Egypt**.

Revolts of Qarmata

Abu Tahir Sulaiman bin Hassan Bahram Qurmati-Ruler of Bahrain advanced towards **Iraq** on the way started looting killing & destroying the cities as follows:-

312H- Basra. The returning **Caravan of Hajjis near Makka**. **315H-Defeated** the army of **Hakim-Azrbaijan,Armeenia & Iran**. Then destroyed **Kufa, Anbar, Hayt & Rahba**.

316H-Raja, Hayt again looted and killed **Caravan of Hajjis near Makka**. **Snatched the gold & silver of Baitullah** and loaded them on **100,000 camels**.

Murder of Mansur Hallaj

309H-Hussain bin Mansur Hallaj of Baida-Persia came to **Baghdad** and claimed "**Anal Haq**". His belief was that God transmigrate in a man. He knew nothing about Quran & hadees. **Qazi Abu Umar & other Ulama of Baghdad** ordered to kill him, and he was assassinated.

Revolt of Mardaveej

315H-Mardaveej bin Ziyad a Vailami Chief revolted and formed **Mardaveej State in Qazveen, Rai, Hamdan, Kashan, Isfahan & Tibristan**.

Aale Hamdan State in Musal

310H-Aale Hamdan were brave & courageous. They formed a separate State in **Musal**.

Romans attack

302-315H-Due to weakness of **Muqtadir**, **Romans** attacked and destroyed **Jazeera, Fort Mansura & Multia**.

315H-Romans attacked on **Armenia**. **Muslims** fought bravely and killed 10,000 Roman army.

This muslims victory created fear in the hearts of Romans.

Ziyari State

319H-Mardaveej defeated **Alvieen & Asfareen** and formed **Ziyreen State in Jarjan**.

Murder of Muqtadir

320H-Amerul Umara Munis who was slave of **Muqtadir** revolted against him. After several fights he killed **Muqtadir**.

Darushajara Palace

In this palace a tree was made the trunk and branches were of gold & silver. The leaves & flowers were of jewels. The birds were of gold & silver and it was made such that when the wind blew the sound of singing of birds use to come. The branches use to swing to & fro.

Unnecessary favour to jews

In the time of **Khalifa Mutawakal (847-861AD)** the jews were mostly **barber, butcher, tanner, dyer etc. ie. of low category people** but **Muqtadir** gave them government jobs which later became problem for the kingdom.

Political Condition

The internal & external policy both were restless & disturbing. The main reason was the Turks influence in the kingdom and weakness of **Muqtadir**. **The army generals were so strong that even the nomination of khalifa was in their hands. This was all because of the weakness of Khalifa, his business in luxurious enjoyments and interference of women in the kingdom.**

Propagation of Islam

The **Qazi & Religious scholars** made effort for propagation of Islam due to which the **King of Bulgaria** accepted Islam. On the request of the king relation scholars went there for teaching Islam. The name of the king was **Almas Khan bin Mulki Khan**. He generally use to attack on **Qustuntunia, Italy & France**.

Scholars

Imam Nisae was of this period.

Diyalma Kingdom(Shiya Kingdom)

300H-448H in Persia & Kirman

Abu Shuja Bavia from **Daylum(Jeelan)**. He accepted Islam by the preaching of **Atrush** in **Daylum**. He brought his 3 sons to **Khalifa Muktafi** and received the title of **'Imadudaula' 'Ruknudaula' 'Mazudaula'**.

Imadudaula

300- H:- Persia

Ruknudaula

318- H:- Iraq

Mazudaula

332- H:- Kirman & Basra

Adhudaula bin Ruknudaula

335-372H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. He made the false tomb of **Ali RA** in **Najaf** and invited the shiya's to come for worship.

Moedudaula bin Ruknudaula

372-373H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. He was the **Hakim** of **Isfahan** at the time of his brother **Adhudaula**.

Fakhrudaula bin Ruknudaula

373-385H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom

Alaudaula

360H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Samsamudaula

370H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Sharfudaula

380H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Bahaudaula bin Adhudaula

385H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Majdudaula bin Fakhruaula

387H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi attacked arrested him and sent to Ghazni.

Sultanudaula bin Bahaudaula

401H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom & Baghdad. His kingdom was weakened by the attacks of Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi.

Sharfudaula bin Bahaudaula

411H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom & Baghdad.

Abu Kalanjar bin Sultanudaula

Turks attack weakened the kingdom.

Khusro bin Feroze bin Kalanjar

Toghral Beg Turk arrested him.

Abu Mansur bin Kalanjar

448H:-Commander Fazal bin Hassan killed him and ended the kingdom.

19-Qahir billah bin Motadhid

320H-322H(932-934AD) = 1 yr. 7 months.

Age:-35 yrs.

Birth:-303H.

Death:-338H.

Qaziul Quzza:-Umar bin Yousuf bin Yaqub.

Wazeer Aala:-Ibne Maqla-Abu Jafar Mohammed bin Qasim-Abul Abbas bin Ubaidullah.

Qualities

Qahir was brave and awful but cruel & hasty in killing.

He stopped by law drinking wine,singing,dancing of women,music. Destroyed musical instruments.

But he himself drunk wine enjoyed luxuries & women.

Murder of Qahir

He killed the notorious army generals but could not control them. The army generals conspired and arrested him while he was drinking and blinded him by passing hot needle in his eyes.

He remained 6 years in jail and died.

20-Razi billah bin Muqtadir

322H-329H(934-940AD)=6 yrs. 10 months.

Age:-32 yrs.

Birth:-297H.

Death:-R.Awal 329H.

Ameerul Umara/Khilafat Abbasi- was only on Baghdad & its vicinity.

324H:-Ibne Raeq. 326H:-Bajkam Dailmi. 328H:-Ibne Raiq.

From 324H Razi created a new post Ameerul Umara who became the controlling power of the kingdom. Even the khalifa was appointed by him. Khalifa was only a religious sign.

Ac

QualitiesDIVISION OF ABBASI KINGDOMKhalifa Abbasi/Ameerul Umara

Baghdad & its vicinity.

Dialma kingdom

Imadudaula-322H

Razi authorized the kingdom of Iraq, Persia & Khozistan. Capital-Shiraz.

Ruknudaula-318H

Qahir billah/Razi authorized the kingdom of Rai, Tibristan, Jarjan & Isfahan.

Fatimi kingdom

Ubaidullah Mehdi(majusi)

Qasim be Amrillah bin Ubaidullah-322H.

Razi authorized the kingdom of Maghrib(N.W.Africa).

Qaramti's State

Abu Tahir Qaramti-Bahrain & Oman.

Akhshidya kingdom-322H-

Mohammed bin Tafaj Akhshidi-322H.

Razi authorized the kingdom of Egypt.

Abu Ali bin Ilyas-Khozistan.

Samania kingdom

Nasar Samani-Khorasan & Ma wara un Nahar.

Nasirudaula Hamdani-323H

Razi authorized the kingdom of Musal.

Khilafat Banu Abbas-contd.**21-Muttaqi billah bin Muqtadir****329H-333H(940-944AD) = 4 yrs.****Age:-62 yrs.****Birth:-295H.****Death:-357H.****Ameerul Umara****329H-Bajkam:-He looted a caravan. A young kurdi boy killed him with dagger.****329H-Korangeen Dailmi:-Ameer Raiq defeated him. He flew away and disappeared.****329H-Ibne Raiq:-He was murdered by Saifudaula.****330H-Nasirudaula****Qualities****Muttaqi was pious, kind & gentle. He always use to recite Quran.****He had no ability of ruling the kingdom. Therefore the kingdom was shattered.****Revolt by Bareedi****330H-Abul Hassan Ali bin Mohammed Bareedi attacked on Baghdad. Khalifa & Raiq was defeated and flew away to Musal. Bareedi destroyed Baghdad.****Murder of Ibne Raiq****330H-Raiq was murdered by Abul Hassan Ali bin Abdullah bin Hamdan. Khalifa gave him the title of Saifudaula and to his brother Nasirudaula. Nasirudaula was made Ameerul Umara.****Revolt by Bareedi****330H-Bareedi attacked on Baghdad. Saifudaula defeated him. He flew away to Basra.****Romans Attack****331H-Romans attacked on Azarbajjan but they were defeated.****332H-Romans again attacked on Azarbajjan they were again defeated.****Tuzun kingdom****333H-Tuzun attacked on Baghdad. Nasirudaula came with a large army but was defeated.****Khalifa made Tuzun Ameerul Umara. Ilmi bin Maqla took out the eyes of Muttaqi and arrested him in Jazeera. Tuzun reached Baghdad and made bayt on Abdullah Mustakfi.****Muttaqi died in jail in 357H at 62 yrs.age.****22-Mustakfi billah bin Muktafi****333H-334H(944-945AD)= 1 yr.4 months.****Age:-45 yrs.****Birth:-293H.****Death:-338H****Ameerul Umara****Ameer Tuzun:-died in 334H.****Mazudaula Dailmi Shiya:-dismissed Mustakfi.****Kingdom of Saifudaula****333H-Saifudaula captured Halb, Hims and wanted to capture Damishq but Akhshidi-Ruler of Egypt defeated him. During this period Romans attacked and captured upto Halb. But brave army of****Saifudaula badly defeated the Romans.****Murder of Abul Hassan Bareedi****333H-Abul Hassan Bareedi was overthrown by his army and Abul Qasim was made Ameer. Abul Hassan took help with Ameer Quramta but could not succeed. Ibne Sherzad killed Abul Hassan due to taking help with Quramta.****Zerak bin Sherzad Ameerul Umara Appointed****334H-After death of Tuzun Ibne Sherzad attacked on Baghdad and was selected as**

Ameerul Umara.

Mazudaula Dailmi Ameerul Umara selected

334H-Mazudaula of Dailmi kingdom attacked on Baghdad and was selected as Ameerul Umara.

Mazudaula took over the power of Khalifa Muktafi. A small property and 5,000 monthly was given to him. Only the name of Khalifa was taken in Khutba/Friday prayer. Now

Mazudaula & Khalifa both sat on throne.

Dismissal of Mustakfi & death

334H-Dailmia kingdom was of Shiya so they didn't had any sympathy and respect with Banu Abbas, where as Turks at least respected Banu Abbas.

Mazudaula Dailmi dismissed Khalifa Mustakfi, blinded by passing hot needle in his eyes and imprisoned him. He died in the prison in 338H.

23-Motiullah bin Muqtadir

334H-363H(945-973AD) =29 yrs.2 months.

Age:-63 yrs.

Birth:-301H.

Death:-Mhrm.364H. Wast

Ameerul Umara

Mazudaula:-Majusi Shiya. Took over all the power of Khalifa. As mentioned before.

Azzudaula bin Mazudaula:-356H. After death of his father. He was drunkard & adulterer.

Death of Akhsid

334H-Akhshid:-Sultan of Akhshidya kingdom in Egypt & Sham died. His son & slave Kafoor controlled the kingdom.

Hajre Aswad

339H-Qurmati's returned Hajre Aswad which was fixed back in Baitullah and silver frame was fitted.

Shiyat Activities

Mazudaula started his shiyat activities. Eid Ghadeer was celebrated. In moharram shiya women use to come out with open hair and mourn on streets. Tabarra/Abusing of sahaba started.

Sunni Shiya riot started, the country was all over disturbed. Ultimately Ibne Shaheen of Batiha announced independence and attacked on Mazudaula defeated him and then he kept quiet and this riot ended.

339H-Philosopher Al-Farabi died.

Ibne Shaheen State 339-408H

Imran bin Shaheen- 339H

Hassan bin Imran- 369H

Abul faraj bin Imran- 372H

Abul Moani bin Hassan- 373H

Muzaffar Wazeer- 376H

Abdullah Ibne Sunni- 408H

Dailmi kingdom in Persia

338H-Adhudaula

Fatimi kingdom

356H-Slave Kafoor of Egypt died.

361H-Mazuddin fatimi captured Egypt and Fatimi kingdom was formed.

Now shiya kingdom was on Maghrib, Egypt & Iraq.

Roman attacks

348H-Roman Qaisar attacked on muslim territories killed thousands of muslims arrested thousands children burnt the mosquess & houses. Ruknudaula was busy enjoying women and luxuries.

349H-Saifudaula attacked on Romans but was defeated.

350H-Religious leaders of Antakia attacked on Romans but was defeated.

351H-Roman commander Nekoforous attacked and captured 54 muslim forts. Then he advanced to Halab defeated **Saifudaula** arrested **12,000 muslim children**.

354H-Roman Qaisar attacked and captured **Maseesa** hundreds of muslims were killed and 200,000 muslims were arrested. **Tartus** was captured, Jame masjid was destroyed and horses were tied. Muslims were made christian by force.

358H-Qaisar attacked on Sham Tripoli was burnt to ashes. Muslims were killed 100,000 children were arrested. The cruelty of Romans was on peak.

Imam Abu Bakar Shafae advanced with **20,000 mujahideen** but **Ruknudaula shiya Dailmi** due to hatred stopped him.

359H-Qaisar captured **Antakia** killed the people and arrested 20,000 children. **Romans** advanced to Halab. **Qaruvia slave of Saifudaula** made peace treaty with Romans.

363H-Roman commander Nekoforous advanced towards **City Amad**. **Hispatullah bin Nasirudaula Hamdani & his brother Abu Tughlab** surrounded the **Roman commander** from both sides, killed thousands of Roman army and arrested the Roman commander. After that Romans calmed down.

Death of Mazudaula & Azzudaula bin Mazudaula took over as Ameerul Umara

356H-Mazudaula died & Azzudaula his son took over as Ameerul Umara who was a drunkard and remained busy enjoying women.

Qarmata

357H-Qarmqti captured **Damishq** and stopped the way of **Haji's** from **Egypt & Sham**.

358H-Change in Azan was done.

359H-Jame Azhar was established in **Egypt**.

Dismissal from Khilafat

363H-Khalifa Motiullah was attacked by paralysis. **Azzudaula** ordered to hand over the **Khilafat** to his son **Abdul Karim Taelillah**.

24-Taelillah bin Motiullah bin Muqtadir

363H-381H(973-990AD)= 17 yrs.8 months.

Age:-64 yrs.

Birth:-330H

Death:-393H

Deputy Caliph

363H-Ameer Subuktageen Nasrudaula:-Died in 363H.

363H-Adhudaula:-Died in 372H.

372H-Samsamudaula:-Defeated by Sharfudaula.

375H-Sharfudaula:-Died in 379H.

379H-Bahaudaula:-

Ameerul Umara

Azzudaula:-Killed by Adhudaula in 365H.

380H-Ibraheem & Hussain bin Nasirudaula Hamdani captured Musal.

Qualities

Taelillah was brave,very strong,humble & well mannered.

He had no ability of ruling the kingdom.

Rafzi kingdom

364H-Spread in Egypt, Sham, East & West

365H-Ruknudaula Dailmi distributed his kingdom amongst his son:-

1-Adhudaula:-Persia & Kirman

2-Moidudaula:-Rai & Isbahan

3-Fakhrudaula:-Hamdan & Dinaur

Marwani kingdom in Diyar Bakar(380-489H)

380H-Abu Ali Hassan bin Marwan

387H-Mehdudaula bin Marwan

402H-Nasrudaula bin Marwan

453H-Nizamudaula Nasar bin Ahmed

472H-Mansur bin Nasar

489H-Ended and went to Sulajqa.

389H-Samsamudaula:-Captured Persia & Arjan.

Repair of Baghdad

369H-Baghdad was destroyed due to Civil war. Taelillah got it repaired.

Ghaznavi kingdom in Afghanistan

This kingdom was from Samania kingdom.

344H-Sultan Nuh Samani made Subuktageen-Ameer of Ghazni. Ameer Subuktageen crushed the revolt by Faiq & Abu Ali Samjur.

Sultan Nuh Samani gave the title of Nasirudaula to Subuktageen and Saifudaula to his son Mahmood.

387H-Sultan Nuh & Ameer Subuktageen died. His son

Ameer Mahmood became the Ruler of Ghazni.

395H-Ameer Mahmood defeated the Samani Sultan, and founded Ghaznavi kingdom.

Ziyaria kingdom in Jarjan(316-404H)

316H-Mardaveej bin Ziyar

323H-Dishamgeer

357H-Zaheerudaula Besatoon bin Dishamgeer

366H-Shamsul Moali Qabus bin Dishamgeer. Killed in 404H.

404H-Falakul Moali s/o Besatoon

420H-Abu Shirwan. Handed over to Ghaznavi kingdom.

Arrest of Taelillah

381H-Bahaudaula conspired and arrested Taelillah dismissed him and brought in Khilafat Qadir billah. Taelillah remained house arrest in the palace of Qadir billah. He kept him comfortably with full honour and respect till his death on Eidul Fitr 393H. Qadir billah recited his funeral prayer and buried in Risafa.

25-Qadir Billah bin Ishaq bin Muqtadir

381H-422H(991-1031AD)-41 yrs.3 months.

Age:-86 yrs.

Birth:-336H.

Death:-Zilhaj 422H.

Deputy Caliph

379H-Bahaudaula (shiya):-He was the actual Ruler. Ruled on Iraq,Persia,Ahwaz & Kirman.

He died in 403H. His son took over.

403H-Sultanudaula(shiya):-His brother snatched the kingdom in 412H. He fled and captured Persia & Kirman. He died in 416H. His son Najar took over.

412H-Sharfudaula(shiya):-He also died in 416H. His brother took over.

418H-Jalaludaula(shiya):-

Qualities

Qadir was a big scholar & Faqih.

He was pious, dignified, intelligent, wise & practically observed Islam.

He never missed Tahajud prayer. He paid Zakat & charity.

Peace treaty with Romans

Ameer Abu Ali Hassan bin Marwan-Ruler of Armeenia made peace treaty with Romans.

Ziyadia kingdom in Yemen(412-554H)

412H-Moid Najah a Habshi slave took over the kingdom and his generation ruled upto 554H.

Aqeeli kingdom in Hamdan(386-489H)

386H-Hasamudaula Moqalid bin Mosayeb. This was a branch of **Fatimi kingdom.**

411H-Firdausi's Shahnama. Book of king of Persia.

Mardasia kingdom in Halab(414-482H)

414H-Saleh bin Mardas captured Halab from **Fatimi kingdom** and founded this kingdom.

Incidence

395H-Sultan Hakim of Egypt martyred the scholars and forced the people to bow while his name comes.

398H-Sunni Shiya civil war started in Baghdad. Kh. Qadir by force crushed this riot. Thousands of shiya died.

411H-Sultan Hakim was killed in Halwan. His son **Ali** took over Egypt.

Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi(390-421H)

His father Ameer Subuktageen founded **Ghaznavi kingdom** in **366H** in **Ghazni.**

Sultan Mahmood started his kingdom from **Ghazni** in **390H.**

395H-Captured from Smarqand to Rai after fall of **Samania kingdom.**

396H-When Mahmood was busy in battle in **Hind/India**, the **Turks** captured **Neshapur & Hirat.** Mahmood returned and defeated **Ailak khan** and recaptured his territories.

400H-Captured Khowarzam. Advanced and captured **Rai**, arrested **Mojadadaula** and obtained wealth of **Dailmi kingdom.**

403H-Captured Ghaur & Garjistan.

403H-All the nearby Rulers were under his control.

Yousuf Qadar Khan of **Khatan**, the greatest **Turk ruler** came from **Kashghar** to **Samarqand** to meet **Sultan Mahmood** and formed friendly ties.

404H-Captured from Sindh to Punjab.

421H-This mujahid died in **421H** at the age of **64 yrs.**

26-Qaim be Amrillah bin Qadir billah

422H-467H(1030-1074) =45 yrs.

Age:-76 yrs.

Birth:-391H.

Death:-Shaban 467H.

Saljuq's dynasty. First Turkish Muslim Empire

430H-590H(1038-1194AD)

432H-Saljuq Turks conquer **Afghanistan & East Persia.**

Shah

Jalaludaula(shiya):-Cannot manage the kingdom and died in **435H.**

435H-Bu Kalanjar bin Sultanudaula(shiya):-Died in **440H.**

440H-Abdur Rahim bin Kalanjar(shiya):-Arrested by Tughral Buk-Turk founded **Saljuqia kingdom. End of Dailmia majusi shiya kingdom.**

447H-Sultan Tughral Buk(Sunni Turk):-Khalifa Qaim crowned him, gave the title of **Malikul Mashriq & Maghrib.** Tughral kissed the hand of **Khalifa** and respected him.

He died in **455H.**

Saljuqi Kingdom under Abbasi Khalifa.

447H-571H(1055-1175AD)=124 yrs.

455H-Sultan Alap Arsalan:-Killed in **465H.**

465H-Sultan Jalaludaula Malik Shah s/o Alap Arsalan :-died in **484H** in **Khalifa Muqtadi** time.

Wazeer:-Nizamul Mulk Tusi

455-485H:-Wazeer of Sultan Alap Arsalan & Sultan Malik Shah.

Name:-Hassan bin Ali bin Ishaq bin Abbas. Title-**Nizamul Mulk.**

Age:-

Birth:-408H in **Tus**

Death:-485H. Murdered by **Ismaeeli assassin.**

Qualities

Nizamul Mulk studied hadees & fiqah.

His classmate was **Umar Khayam & Hassan bin Sabah**.

He was a good scholar & good ruler.

He built several Madaris, rest houses & bridges.

Siasat nama (political activity) is unique composition written by him.

Jame Nizamia/Nizamia University

He founded **Jame Nizamia/Nizamia University in Baghdad in 457H and completed in 459H.**

He endowed for the Jame a land giving earning of 30 million/year.

Principal:-**Sh. Abu Ishaq Sheerazi**

Head Master:-**Sh. Abu Nasar Sabagh**

Professors:-**Imam Ghazali & Imam Abu Ishaq Sheerazi.**

The Jame and its teaching was of such a standard that till now its syllabus is famous as

Dars-e-Nizami taught throughout the world.

Revolts & Battles

451H-Sultan Tughral crushed the revolt by Turk commander **Arsalan Basaseeri**, and was killed in the battle.

455H-Tughral Buk died and **Alap Arsalan** became the Sultan.

459H-Nizamul Mulk Tusi wazeer of **Alap Arsalan** captured the christian territories.

He built **Madrasa Nizamia** in Baghdad.

462H-Saljuq's captured **Konya**.

463H-Sultan Alap Arsalan fought a great battle with Roman king. **King Romanus** was arrested. He requested for peace. **It was accepted and he was freed.**

465H-Alap Arsalan was killed. His son was titled **Jalaludaula** and made **Sultan**.

27-Muqtadi be Amrillah bin Mohammed bin Qaim be Amrillah

467H-487H(1074-1094AD) = 19 yrs.6 months.

Age:-39 yrs.

Birth:-447H.

Death:-Mhrm.487H.

Sultan

467H-Tajul Mulk Malik Shah:-In 485H he ordered Khalifa to leave Baghdad within 10 days. Khalifa started fasting and praying. **Allah** accepted and Sultan died in 485H.

Saljuq's of Rome

470H-707H(1077-1307AD)=237 yrs.

470H-Saljuq's province established in **Anatolia** with capital in **Konya**.

471H-Saljuq's captured **Damascus**

472H-Saljuq's captured **Jerusalem**.

Sultan Malik Shah

From **China** border till **Sham** and from **Noth** till **Yemen** **Malik Shah & Khalifa** name was read in the **Khutba/Friday** speech.

Peace & justice was established in the kingdom.

Mosques, Madaris Canals & bridges were constructed.

473H-Malik Shah offered his daughter as a slave to Khalifa. **Khalifa** honoured him by marrying her.

477H-Saljuq's captured **Antioch**.

483H-Malik Shah constructed a **Darul Ilm** in **Baghdad**.

484H-Malik Shah Constructed a **Jame Masjid** in **Baghdad** and went back to **Isfahan**.

Qualities & Reforms

Khalifa immediately stopped all unlawful activities, play, songs, music, dancing etc. In a short period the mercy and blessing of **Allah** started descending. Food & subsistence was plentiful.

Muqtadi was a religious politician.

Revolts Riots & Battles

Damishq was captured by brother of Malik Shah and came under the Khilafat.

479H-Yousuf bin Tashfeen-Ruler of Morocco requested the title of Sultan. Khalifa allowed him.

484H-Christians captured Saqlia Islands. Since 212H it was under muslims. The last king was

Aseedi Mazuli.

Batinia Sect

This is a branch of Ismaeeli shiya.

Batinia flourished in the starting period of Saljuqi Turks Sultan.

Ahmed bin Abdul Malik bin Attash Batini established the center in a fort in Qaim between Isfahan & Neshapur. He started looting & killing and reached upto Isfahan.

Hassan bin Sabah scholar & classmate of Nizamul Mulk was misguided and became Batini.

Ibne Sabah formed center in Fort Almut near Qazveen. He killed several Ulama.

Nizamul Mulk send an army to crush this movement. Ibne Sabah became helpless so he sent a commando who killed Nizamul Mulk. Now his looting & killing increased and entire Khurasan was disturbed.

485H-Abbasi wazeer Nizamul Mulk murdered by Ismaeeli Assassin.

28-Mustazhar billah bin Muqtadi

487H-512H(1094-1118AD) =25 yrs.

Age:-41 yrs.

Birth:-470H.

Death:-R.Awal 512H.

Qualities

Mustazhar was a learned scholar,soft spoken,kind,good character & quick in doing good deeds.

491H-Saljuq's dynasty of Syria founded with capital at Aleppo.

Sultan's fight for kingdom

487H-Tajul Mulk Tatish:-Died in 491H.

491H-Barkiaric:-Died in 498H.

498H-Mohammed bin Malik Shah:-He established peace & justice in Baghdad. Tax was removed from the public. Army was not allowed to go in the Bazaars to protect from their cruelties

He was brave and well behaved but could not control the administration of the entire kingdom.

He died in 511H.

Crusade War

488H-Pope Arban II called a conference in France at Claremont City. Excited the christians against the muslims for Crusade war. 1,300,000 people collected under the Cross and reached Qustuntunia/Constantinople. Then crossed Bosphorous and marched towards Antakia. Anyone coming on their way whether Muslim or Christian were being killed furiously. Ameer Qalaj Arsalan-Ruler Qunia took the revenge and killed the Crusade's almost all.

490H-Army of France,Germany,Italy & England collected and 1,000,000 army attacked killed the people and captured Qunia,Antakia,Egypt & Sham.

492H-After 42 days of siege captured Baitul Maqdas.

More than 200,000 muslims were killed and the same quantity arrested. They looted all the wealth of muslims and burnt the libraries& books.

Sham was divided and ruled by the above mentioned 4 countries.

This all happened because the Ameer's of Saljuq were fighting each other and the Khalifa was weak and helpless.

29-Mustarshid billah Bin Mustazhar

512H-529H(1118-1135AD) = 17 yrs.8 months.

Age:-44 yrs.

Birth:-485H.

Death:-Ziqad 529H.

Qaziul Quzza:-

Wazeer:-Abul Hassan Damghali-Abu Shuja Mohammed-Jalaluddin Umaidudaula.

513H-Abu Ali Hassan was made **Prime Minister** and was given the title of Jalaluddin.

He was learned & brave. **Once Sultan Sanjar** intended to attack on **Khalifa**. **He** said that

if you will move an inch from your place you will loose your whole kingdom.

Qualities

Mustarshid was courageous, brave, awful and passed a mujahid life.

He tried his level best to bring back the awe & dignity of Khilafat banu Abbas and strengthened it.

He finished the taxes on people and industries.

He himself use to fight in the battles.

He was very pious & simple dressed.

He generally use to fast & recite Quran. **He** was fasting on the day of death also.

He had a secluded place in his house to worship.

He implemented the religious laws in his kingdom.

He was too much liked by general public because of his kindness & mercy on his public.

520H-Khalifa Mustarshid attacked on Sultan Mahmood and defeated him.

521H-Sultan Mahmood came to Baghdad. **Khalifa** honoured him with arab horses. **Sultan** stayed for 2 months and returned to his kingdom.

521H-Sultan crushed the party of **Ibne Attash Batini**.

522H-Sultan again crushed the Batini movement.

525H-Sultan Mahmood died.

525H-Sultan Masood took over the power.

529H-Sultan Masood attacked on **Khalifa**. **He** fought bravely but his army betrayed him and he was arrested. **Khalifa** was house arrested in **Fort Hamdan**. When the people of **Baghdad** heard about the arrest. Men & women came out on the streets protesting against **Sultan**.

Same day earthquake came and remained for several days.

Sultan Sanjar of Rai heard, and wrote to his nephew **Sultan Masood** saying "Immediately ask pardon from **Khalifa** and return him to Baghdad, because whatsoever is happening is curse from Allah". **Sultan Masood** obeyed him and returned him to Baghdad. On the way **Khalifa** camped. Some **Batini** got a chance and killed **Khalifa Mustarshid**. **Sultan Masood** was very sad on this incidence.

30-Rashid billah bin Mustarshid

529H-530H(1135-1136AD) = 1 yr.

Age:-32 yrs.

Birth:-500H.

Death:-Rmzn.532H.

Prime Minister:-Jalaluddin Abu Raza bin Sadqa

529H-Sultan Masood sent **Purtaqish** to collect wealth from **Khalifa**. **He** refused.

Purtaqish attacked **Khalifa** fought bravely and defeated him. **He** returned back to **Khurasan**.

532H-Sultan Masood advanced to attack on Baghdad. All the supporters of **Khalifa** backed away. **Khalifa** also left Baghdad with **Imaduddin Zangi**.

Sultan captured Baghdad and dismissed the **Khalifa**.

Khalifa Rashid attacked on **Azarbaijan** and sieged **Isfahan**. **But unfortunately he fell ill**. **The ajmi slaves** killed the **Khalifa**.

Zangi Kingdom

521H-648H(1127-1250AD)= 127 yrs.

Sultan Imaduddin Zangi

521H-Sultan Mahmood gave Sultan Imaduddin the kingdom of Musal. He captured Hims.

533H-He captured Balbak.

534H-He captured City Zor.

537H-He sieged Fort Jabar, but during the siege he was killed.

Imaduddin made Najmuddin Ayub-Ruler of Balbak.

Sultan Salahuddin Ayubi was the son of Najmuddin Ayub

31-Muqtadhi le Amrillah bin Mustazhar

530H-555H(1136-1160AD) =24 yrs.2 months.

Age:-76 yrs.

Birth:-479H.

Death:-555H.

Prime Minister

Sharfuddin Ali bin Tarad

Ibne Habeera:-He was a great scholar & politician. He broke the power of Saljuqi sultans.

Qaziul Quzza

Abul Qasim Ali bin Hussain

Deputy Rulers

Sultan Nuruddin Zangi:-Ruler Sham

Sultan Sanjar:-Ruler Khurasan.

Qualities & Reforms

Muqtadhi took the power and established & strengthened Khilafat in Baghdad and its vicinity.

He took the benefit of the fight between Sultan Masood & Sultan Sanjar and formed his own army and established & strengthened the Abbasi kingdom.

His army was never defeated.

He was brave,broad minded,intelligent & swordsman and he himself use to fight also.

He was religious, pious, humble, kind, polite, well mannered & just.

He took care and made several reforms for his public, and established peace & justice. So people liked him too much.

Incidents & Fights

531H-Sultan Masood took away all the treasures of the Khilafat.

543H-Christians sieged Damishq/Damascus. Sultan Nuruddin fought and got victory.

544H-Hafizuddinallah-Sultan of Egypt died.

547H-Sultan Masood died. His brother Mohammed became Sultan.

547H-Some Army officers rioted. Khalifa took his army crushed the riot and captured Halla & Kufa.

548H-Sultan Sanjar was arrested by Ghazv.

549H-Khalifa captured Takreet.

549H-Sultan Nuruddin captured Damishq.

550H-Sultan Nuruddin by the order of Khalifa captured Egypt.

554H-Sultan Mohammed of Isfahan died.

Irtaqia kingdom

Kingdom founded by Moinuddin Saqman bin Irtaq Turkmani

1-Fort Kifaya:- 495H-620H. Afterwards Ayubi kingdom captured it.

2-Tardayn:- 502H-811H. Afterwards Usmania kingdom captured it.

Atabkia kingdom

1-Damishq:- 522H-549H. Afterwards Zangi kingdom captured it.

2-Arbal:- 530H-630H.

3-Azarbajian:-531H-622H. Afterwards Khwarzam Shah kingdom captured it.

4-Persia:-543H-686H. Afterwards Tatari's captured it.

Arman Shah's kingdom

City Ghalat:-493H-604H. Afterwards Ayubi kingdom captured it.

Ghauria kingdom

Between Hirat & ghazni:-543H-582H.

32-Mustanjid billah bin Muqtadhi

555H-566H(1160-1171AD) = 11 yrs.

Age:-56 yrs.

Birth:-510H.

Death:-R.Awal 566H. Actually he was killed.

Qaziul Quzza:-Abu Jafar Abdullah Saqfi.

Wazeer:-Aunuddin bin Habeera. He died in 560H.

563H-Sharfuddin Abu Jafar bin Mohammed Saeed.

Qualities & Reforms

Mustanjid was good scholar,generous and just.

He was a good ruler and was hard on revolters & rioters.

He honoured the scholars. He further developed **Madrassa Nizamul Mulk.**

Baghdad became the Center of Religious Studies and other studies.

Shaikh Abdul Qahir Soharwardi was Head Master of Madrasa Nizamul Mulk.

His period was propagation of Islam.

Shaikh Abdul Qadir Jilani was of his period.

Incidents Revolts & Fights

556H-Turks rioted in Najaf. Khalifa crushed the riot and cut off the head of Ameer.

556H-Arabs of Khaffaja,Halla & Kufa revolted. Wazeer himself went and crushed them.

557H-Khalifa captured Fort Mali from Hamdani kingdom.

558H-Banu Asad of Halla rioted. Ameer Yazdan went and turned them out of Iraq.

559H-Ameer Munkabras of Basra died.

561H-Khatloo attacked on Basra. He was arrested and killed.

562H-Shimla-Ruler of Khozistan advanced to Iraq and requested for Governorship. Khalifa refused him. He returned quietly due to fear Khalifa.

562H-Sultan Nuruddin sent Asaduddin to capture Egypt. Ruler of Egypt Banu Fatimi took help from Christians. Asaduddin killed thousands of christians and captured City Saeed.

He exempted the tax from general public.

563H-Christians sieged Iskandria. Ameer Asaduddin fought bravely. Christians flew away.

564H-Crusades of different countries jointly attacked with huge army captured Iblbase and sieged Qahira/Cairo. Fatimi Ruler requested Sultan Nuruddin. Ameer Asaduddin advanced

Crusades flew away. Aadhuddin made Ameer Asaduddin-Wazeer of Egypt. He remained wazeer till his death in 565H.

565H-Salahuddin Ayubi was made Wazeer of Egypt. His reforms good manner and behavior made him popular and beloved to Egyptians.

33-Mustadhi be Amrillah bin Mustanjid

566H-575H(1171-1180AD) = 9 yrs.6 months.

Age:-36 yrs.

Birth:-536H.

Death:-Ziqad 575H.

Wazeer:-Adhuddin

Qaziul Quzza:-Room bin Hadeesi-17 slaves were given in his honour.

Commander in Chief:-Qutbuddin

Qualities& Reforms

Mustadhi exempted all the taxes.

He set an exemplary peace & justice and was a successful Khalifa.

He showered wealth on Hashimi's & Alvi's.

He was of good character, patient and generous to everyone. Everyone was happy in his time.

He gave handsome salaries to Ulama madaris.

He made rest houses on the highways.

*His name was read in **Friday Khutba** from Central Asia to Maghrib.*

Incidents & Battles

***Previous Wazeer Abu Jafer**-was arrogant & independent so he was assassinated.*

***Previous Qazi Ibne Mazahim**-was arrogant & cruel. He was imprisoned.*

These two incidents opened the eyes of the rulers. Peace was brought in the kingdom. After a long time people got peace, comfort & safety in their lives.

566H-Salahuddin opened the Jame Masjid of Egypt** which was closed during **Fatimi kingdom**. The name of **Khalifa Mustanjid & Sultan Nuruddin Zangi** was read in the **Khutba/Friday speech** in all the masjid of every city. **Khalifa** awarded different titles to **Sultan Nuruddin & Ameer Salahuddin and invested robe of honour.

Baghdad was illuminated with lights and bazaars were decorated.

Sultan Nuruddin Mahmood Zangi

Khalifa awarded the kingdom of Egypt, Sham, Jazeera, Musal, Diyar Bakr, Ghalat, Arsalan, Yemen & Roman territories to Nuruddin.

*He died in **569H** at the age of **55 yrs.***

*His name was read with the name of **Khalifa** even in **Harmain Shareefain**.*

He was very pious, devotee & worshipper.

*He brought peace & justice and implemented **Islamic laws** in the **kingdom**.*

*He was the best **Ruler** after **Khulafa Rashideen & Umar bin Abdul Aziz Ra.***

He built several Jame Masjid, Madaris & hospitals.

*He was a good scholar and spent his whole life in **Jihad**.*

He terrified the Crusades.

Rise of Ayubi kingdom & End of Fatimi kingdom.

566H-658H(1171-1260AD)=92 yrs.

566H-Salahuddin took over the 272 years of Fatimi power and ended the Fatimi kingdom.

569H-Sultan Nuruddin Zangi died and was buried in front of Jame Amvi in Damascus. Salahuddin Ayubi established Ayubi Kingdom. Salahuddin was Commander in Chief & slave of Nuruddin Zangi.

570H-Sultan Salahuddin captured Sham, Hims, Huma & Balbak.

*Handed over **Halab** to **Malik Saleh**.*

34-Nasiruddin Allah bin Mustadhi

***575H-622H(1180-1226AD)=47 yrs.** None of the Abbasi Khalifa ruled this much.*

Age:-69 yrs.

Birth:-553H.

Death:-622H. 619H got paralysis & died in Rmzn.622H.

Wazeer

***575H-Mujaduddin Abul Fazal:-Khalifa** killed him in 583H.*

***583H-Ubaidullah bin Yunus:-Khalifa** arrested him in 592H.*

592H-Moiduddin Abu Abdullah:-

613H-

Qualities & Reforms

***Nasiruddin** ordered the officials to observe justice. Opened madaris, hospitals, rest houses and made gardens. He gave facilities to businessmen.*

He remained on throne with awe, honour & grace.

*He had support of **Almighty Allah**.*

He was brave, courageous, generous, intelligent, good scholar & eloquent.

His Department of Intelligence was very strong & well informed.

His awe & fear was on his courtiers & high officials.

He constructed mosques, khanqah, rest houses etc.

Incidents Revolts & Fights

576H-Saifuddin Zangi-Ruler of Musal died. Azuddin Masood Zangi took over.

577H-Saleh Ismaeel bin Nuruddin Zangi-Ruler of Halab died. Imaduddin took over.

583H-Tughral captured Isfahan.

584H-Kazal arrested Tughral and captured Isfahan.

585H-Kazal was found killed in his bed room. Saljuqia kingdom ended for ever.

591H-Shimla-Ruler of Khozistan died.

591H-Wazeer Moiduddin captured Khozistan, Tustar & Rai.

592H-Wazeer died.

592H-Khwarzam Shah captured Hamdan & Isfahan.

592H- Khalifa sent Saifuddin. He defeated Khwarzam and captured Isfahan. Then Zanjan & Qazween.

613H-khalifa sent his 2 sons Moeed & Mowafiq as Ruler of Khozistan.

613H-Khwarzam Shah defeated Atubuk and captured Rai, Qazween, Zanjaan, Hamdan, Qashan, Azarbaijan, Armeenia and advanced towards Baghdad. Khalifa sent Shaikh Shahabuddin Umar Soharwardi to advise him not to take wrong step. But he insisted on destroying Baghdad. Shaikh cursed him and came back. The army which Khwarzam sent was destroyed by snowfall.

Sultan Salahuddin Victories

575H-Came from Egypt to Damishq.

Izuddin Farakh, Assistant of Salahuddin captured fort Dioria & Shaqiq of christians.

Salahuddin arrested 1,600 christians coming from Baitul Moqadas.

Salahuddin advanced towards Jazeera. There were some small states of Zangi's. Aannounced that whoever will submit will be given their territories to rule otherwise it will be captured by sword. All of them submitted.

577H-Captured Jazeera & Sinjar.

579H-Made Imaduddin-Ruler of Sinjar, Naseebain, Khabur & Riqa.

580H-Captured Mian Farqain.

580H-Amad also surrendered. There was a library having one million books. Sultan gave it to Qazi Fazil.

From Makka to Baghdad the name of Sultan & Khalifa was read in Friday Khutba in all the masjid.

580H-Salahuddin collected all the forces and advanced towards christians territory Beesan. Christians flew away and it was captured.

Sultan fought with the great Christian force at Alfuka, killed thousands of them. They flew away.

580H-Sultan attacked on the big enemy of Islam Reginauld at Kirk but could not succeed.

581H-Sultan again attacked and defeated, but Christians support force came so he returned back

581H-Musal was taken over form Azuddin. Now Atabki kingdom came under Ayubi kingdom.

582H-Reginauld arrested a Caravan of Hujjaj and said to them why don't you call Mohammed SA

to free you. Sultan heard about it. Sultan swore that Insha Allah I will kill him.

583H-Sultan announced for Jehad all the Ulama joined him. Sultan destroyed Kirk & Shobak. Then captured Tabaria. Then fought bravely in the field of Nobia killed thousands of Crusades. They tried to run away but were arrested. Reginauld was also arrested.

Sultan honoured King of Jerusalem-Gaiy, and killed Reginauld by his own hands.

Then captured 'Akka'. Jame Masjid was made church. After a century Sultan again made it masjid and offered Juma/Friday prayer.

Then Beirut, Soor & Asqalan was captured.

Victory of Baitul Moqadas

583H-Sultan Salahuddin moved from Asqalan to Baitul Moqadas and asked the Crusades to hand over on a reasonable remuneration because I don't want blood shed, but the Crusades did not agree.

After one week fight **Crusades surrendered** and they were freed on ransom. Those who could not pay they were also freed. **Sakhra Dome & Masjid Aqsa was cleaned.**

After 91 years Juma/Friday prayer was offered in Masjid Aqsa.

In 492H when Crusades captured Baitul Moqadas they martyred 70,000 muslims only in Masjid Aqsa where as the Muslim freed them peacefully.

584H-England,France,Italy & Germany jointly again attacked and only took back Akka.

Then peace treaty was signed, and Crusades returned back.

588H-Sultan Salahuddin gave Ameer Azizuddin the charge of Baitul Moqadas and proceeded for Haj.

589H-Sultan Salahuddin always ruled under Khilafat Abbasi. He was a great religious true muslim Ruler. He had a great kingdom. He died at the age of 57 years and buried in Damascus beside the Umayyad Mosque.

He handed over his kingdom to his sons, which was approved by the **Abbasi Khalifa:-**

1-Malik Al Aziz:-Egypt

2-Malik Al Afzal:-Damishq

3-Malik Al Zahir:-Halab

Assault by Tatari's

History:-Barbarians of Mongolia were very hard hearted, savage, fighters & looters.

Chinese built the 'Wall of China' for their protection from these **Barbarians.**

Moghol & Tatar were the two sons of a King in Old days.

The two nations Moghal's & Tatari's are from these two sons.

Changez Khan collected the two nations and formed a Kingdom.

He was born in 549H.

He ruled for 20 years.

612H-He sent a muslim delegate to Khwarzam Shah and made trade pact.

615H-His last trade caravan of 400 persons were killed by Khwarzam Shah in the doubt of spying.

He sent a messenger to Khwarzam Shah to return the goods & Ghair Khan who killed the Caravan. Khwarzam Shah killed that messenger also.

616H-Changez Khan became furious and attacked with 20,000 army. Khwarzam Shah became coward because of enjoying luxuries & comforts of life, and in spite of having 100,000 army could not face the **Tatari's.**

617H-Khwarzam Shah escaped to his fort in Jazeera and died in 617H.

Khwarzam Shah had 4 sons

1-Outbuddin:-Killed by Tatari

2-Ghyasuddin:-

3-Ruknuddin

4-Jalaluddin:-Fought with Tatari and escaped to Ghazni. Changez followed him.Jalaluddin escaped to Sindh. **Changez** followed him to Sindh. **Jalaluddin** fought bravely and killed hundreds of Tatari, but he was surrounded by three sides so he jumped with his horse in river and swam across the river. **Changez** sent an army to follow **Jalaluddin** but they could not catch him. They went on destroying and killing the people of **Multan, Punjab,**

618H-Destroyed & killed the people of Tirmiz, Balkh, Talqan, Bamyam.

618H-Captured Ghazni & Ghaur destroyed and killed the people.

Changez Khan destroyed & killed the entire population and captured Bukhara,Samarqand,Ghazni,Neshapur,Rai,Hamdan,Qazween,Azarbaijan Khurasan, Tabrez until the reached the Russian border.

Now Changez captured from China border till Iraq border & from North Sea to Hind/India border.

Changez distributed the territory amongst his 4 sons **Joji Khan, Choghtae Khan, Tuli Khan & Kidai Khan.**

621H-Jalaluddin came back via **Kirman** gave **Iraq & Persia** to his brother **Ghyasuddin** and kept under own control. Then captured **Khozistan** and did cruelty on muslims more than **Changez**. Then captured **Azarbaijan & Tabrez.**

Scholars of his time

Shaikh Shahabuddin Soharwardi.

- " **Abul Faraj Ibne Jozi**
- " **Imam Fakhruddin Raazi**
- " **Najmuddin Kubra**
- " **Alfarabi-Biggest Philosopher**
- " **Abu Kamil Shajah-Biggest Mathematician**
- " **Al Masoodi-Biggest Geographic**
- " **Tibri-Biggest Historian**

Development & Reforms

584H-Great Mosque at Rabat-largest in the world.

35-Zahir be Amrillah bin Nasiruddin Allah

622H-623H(1224-1225AD)= 9 months.

Age:-53 yrs.

Birth:-571H.

Death:-Rajab 623H.

Qualities

Zahir was a scholar very honest, pious, god fearing.

He enforced justice & equity himself and his courtiers.

He exempted taxes and returned the wealth & property to the owners, confiscated in the previous kingdom.

He was generous and spent in the path of **Allah.**

He distributed 100,000 dinar to the Ulama/Religious scholars & righteous on **Eiduz Zoha.**

He warned his courtiers saying that you say too much but you don't implement it. You misguide your Khalifa, virtually you are obedient to him but actually you are dis obedient to him. You pose to favour him but actually you are against him.

Ameerul Momineen orders you to do justice and stop cruelty, because **Allah** becomes angry, and **Ameerul Momineen** fear **His anger.**

36-Mustansir billah bin Zahir

623H-640H (1226-1242AD) = 17 yrs.

Age:-52 yrs.

Birth:-588H.

Death:-J.Akhir 640H.

Qualities

Mustansir followed exactly his father

He implemented the **Commandments of Allah & Sunna of Prophet SA.**

He strengthened the kingdom and captured several forts at the border, but he could not control the kingdom because of internal riots and the assaults of Tatar's.

He was a good scholar and appreciated the scholars.

He built a huge **Madrasa Mustansir billah** at the East bank of River Dajla which was best in the muslim world. Teaching for all the four sects were given separately. Free furnished houses, kitchens, hospital and free food for teachers and orphans were provided.

He built a great library with the Madrasa. Thousands of precious, scarce & valuable books were procured. He endowed property & wealth for the Madrasa.

He built several masajid, madaris, hospitals & rest houses.

Assault of Tatar's

624H-Changez died. His sons started expanding their kingdom.

Ektaee Khan attacked by 80,000 army on **Jalaluddin Shah Khwarzami** who was ruling on **Iraq Ajam, Persia, Garjistan, Azarbaijan & Khalat**. **Jalaluddin** flew away and hid himself in mountainous area but one kurdi killed him. Soon after his death **Khwarzami kingdom ended**.

630H-Tatari captured entire territories of **Khwarzami kingdom** and attacked on **Khilafat Abbasi**. **Mustansir** army retreated them.

Scholars

Yaqoot Hamvi:-Born in 576H. Died in 626H. He came to **Halab in 621H** and wrote **Moajimul Buldan**.

37-Mustasim billah bin Mustansir

640H-656H(1243-1259AD)= 16 yrs.

Age:-66 yrs.

Birth:-590H.

Death:-656H.

Wazeer

Moiduddin Mohammed bin Alqami(shiya):-His guardian was **Ibne Hadeed Motazili**-Author of **Nahjul Balagha**. **Ibne Alqami** conspiracy destroyed the **Banu Abbasi Khilafat**.

Qualities & Reforms

Mustasim had so many good qualities, but he had no ability of rulership.

Wazeer Alqami shiya engaged him in music, songs and enjoying women.

Tatari Rulers

1-Avegh Buka s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-made **Qaraquram Capital**.

2-Alghu s/o Baidad Khan s/o Chughata s/o Changez:-made **Eimaleegh Capital**.

3-Qubla s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-made **Ablee/Peken Capital**.

4-Qeedu s/o Qashi s/o Ukta s/o Changez:-made **Bukhara Capital**.

5-Sain s/o Joji s/o Changez:-made **Marqeeq Capital**. He was busy in attacking on **Russia, Germany, Poland & Austria**.

6-Mangu s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-Died in 655H.

7-Hilaku Khan s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez

654H-Ruknuddin Batini rioted in Iran. **Hilaku** crushed the riot killed all the **Batini** men women children & **Ruknuddin**. **This ended the Hassan bin Saba movement**.

He captured Iran Iraq Ajam and made **Muragha** the capital.

His wazeer was **Naseeruddin Tusi(shiya)**.

656H-Hilaku attacked on **Baghdad** with the conspiracy of **Alqami**. **Khalifa** sent an army who defeated **Hilaku** and killed hundreds of army.

656H-Alqami wrote to **Tusi wazeer of Hilaku** to reattack. **Hilaku** reattacked with a huge army and sieged **Baghdad**. He broke the boundary wall with catapults & captured **Baghdad**.

Murder of Khalifa

656H-Alqami siad to **Khalifa** that we should go to **Hilaku** and make peace treaty.

Khalifa took his family alongwith **Alqami** to **Hilaku**. **Hilaku** killed the entire family of **Khalifa** and killed **Khalifa** with great torture. **Alqami** trampled the body of **Khalifa** saying I am taking the revenge of **Fall of Fatimi kingdom**.

Tatari entered **Baghdad** killed 1.6 million men women & children. Only 0.4 million **shiya** locality was left on the request of **Wazeer Tusi (shiya)**. Destroyed the beautiful city and burnt **Baghdad** city. **Jame masjid, Library & the books** were all burnt and thrown in the river, the water became black. The wealth & valuable goods looted from the palaces were so much that could not be counted.

Condition of Ibne Alqami

Wazeer Alqami was made the peon of **Ibne Imran-Hakim** of **Baghdad**.

656H-Hilaku captured **Halab, Darband, Musal, Diyar Bakr** etc., and ruined it.

657H-Hilaku sent **Kidluqa** to attack on **Damishq**. **Malik Nasiruddin** asked help from **Egypt**.

*Alama Taqiuddin Harani made speeches in the public and motivated them for **Jihad**, and he himself fought. Help from **Egypt** also came. The muslims fought bravely killed thousands of Tatars and defeated them.*

656H-End of Khilafat Banu Abbas in Baghdad.

659H-Start of Khilafat Banu Abbas in Egypt.

*Khilafat Banu Abbas/Mamluks Kingdom in Egypt.**659H-924H 1260-1518AD.**38-Mustansir billah Ahmed bin Zahir be Amrillah**659H-659H = 6 months.**1-Sultan Malik Zahir be Bars.**659H-Sultan Malik Zahir Be Bars defeated Tatari and made bayt on Khalifa Mustansir.**39-Hakim be Amrillah bin---bin Mustarshid**659H-701H = 40 yrs.**1-Sultan Malik Zahir be Bars.**2-Sultan Ameer Saifuddin Malik Mansur.**659H-Sultan Malik Zahir made Hakim Khalifa of entire Muslim world.**663H-Hilaku Khan died.**666H-Mamluk captured Antioch from Crusades.**677H-Sultan Malik Zahir died in Damishq.**678H-Ameer Saifuddin Malik Mansur became Sultan of Egypt.**680H-Sultan defeated Tatari.**688H-Sultan captured Tripoli which was captured by Christians in 503H. It was captured during Ameer Moavia RA.**694H-Qazan bin Arghaun bin Hilaku accepted Islam & spread Islam in his army.**40-Mustakfi billah Abu Rabi bin Hakim be Amrillah**701H-740H = 39 yrs.**2-Sultan Ameer Saifuddin Malik Mansur.**702H-Tatari were defeated and killed.**716H-Abu Saeed became Tatari king. He followed Sunna.**736H-Tatari King Abu Saeed died.**736H-Sultan arrested the Khalifa.**740H-Khalifa died in prison. He was the last Khalifa whose name was read in Friday Khutba.**41-Wasiq billah Ibraheem bin Mustamsik billah**740H-741H**2-Sultan Ameer Saifuddin Malik Mansur.**Wasiq was rakish & unfit.**42-Hakim be Amrillah bin Mustakfi billah**741H-753H = 12 yrs.**3-Sultan Mansur bin Malik Nasir**He ruled like Khalifa Haroon Rasheed.**Sultan Mansur bin Malik Nasir was drunkard, mischievous & seditious. He was dismissed and later on killed.**43-Motadhid billah Abul Fateh bin Mustakfi billah**753H-763H = 10 yrs.**4-Sultan Malik Hassan Nasir**He was kind, humble & loved scholars.**762H-Sultan Malik Hassan Nasir was killed and his nephew Mohammed bin Muzaffar Mansur became sultan.**44-Motawakal Alallah Abu Abdullah bin Motadhid billah**763H-808H = 45 yrs.*

4-Sultan Malik Hassan Nasir

His 5 sons became Khalifa.

773H-Taimur Lang was more barbarous than Tatars. He kept on attacking killing & destroying. (See file Personalities).

*791H-Mohtasib Najmuddin Tanbizi ordered to add **As Salato Was Salamo Alan Nabi Salallahu Alaihe Wasalam** in Azan (prayer call).*

785H-Motawakal was dismissed.

45-Wasiq billah

785H-788H

4-Sultan Malik Hassan Nasir

788H-Wasiq was dismissed and Mustasim was made khalifa.

46-Mustasim billah

788H-791H

4-Sultan Malik Hassan Nasir

791H-Mustasim was dismissed and again Motawakal was made Khalifa.

47-Mustaeen billah Abul Fazal bin Motawakal

808H-817H = 9 yrs.

815H-Sultan Malik Nasir was killed.

48-Motadhid billah Abul Fateh bin Motawakal

817H-845H = 28 yrs.

5-Sultan Al Moid

6- Sultan Malik Zahir

He was very intelligent, wise & generous.

824H-Sultan Al Moid died and Malik Zahir was made Sultan.

49-Mustakfi billah Abu Rabi bin Motawakal

845H-854H = 9 yrs.

6- Sultan Malik Zahir

He was very religious, pious, well mannered & righteous.

He had the qualities of Umar bin Abdul Aziz Ra as well as his family.

Jalaluddin Suyuti Ra was brought up in Khalifa's house

Sultan supported the coffin of Khalifa at his death.

He was buried in Iskandria.

50-Qaim be Amrillah Abul Baqa bin Motawakal

854H-859H = 5 yrs.

6- Sultan Malik Zahir

7-Sultan Einal Ashraf

He was awful & dignified khalifa.

857H-Sultan Malik Zahir died. Einal Ashraf became sultan.

859H-Khalifa was dismissed, imprisoned & died in prison in 863H. Buried in Iskandria.

51-Mustanjid billah Abul Mohasin bin Motawakal

859H-884H = 25 yrs.

7-Sultan Einal Ashraf

8-Sultan Zahir Khushqadam

865H-Sultan Einal Ashraf died. Zahir Khushqadam became sultan.

872H-Sultan Zahir Khushqadam died. Finabai Ashraf became sultan.

873H-Khalifa was house arrested where he died in 884H.

52-Motawakal Alallah Abdul Aziz bin Yaqub

884H-903H = 19 yrs.

8-Sultan Zahir Khushqadam

He was well mannered, kind, humble & smiling face, liked by everyone.

884H-Sultan Malik Ashraf performed Haj. After a century a sultan offered haj.

885H-Egyptian army attacked on Iraq. Yaqub bin Hassan defeated and killed the army.

Jalaluddin Suyuti Ra died in his period.

53-Yaqub Al Mustamsik billah bin Motawakal bin Yaqub

903H-920H= 17 yrs.

8-Sultan Zahir Khushqadam

54-Motawkal Alallah 3rd(Last Khalifa of Banu Abbas.

920H-924H(1514-1518AD)=4 yrs.

9-Sultan Ghauri. (Last Mamluk Sultan)

924H-Sultan Ghauri of Mamluk was defeated by Sultan Saleem of Usmania kingdom.

924H (1518AD)-Khalifa handed over the flag, sword, hair etc.of Prophet SA and the key of Harmayn Shareefain to Sultan Saleem, and Egypt went under Khilafat/Saltanat Usmania. Khilafat Banu Abbas/Mamluk Kingdom ended.

KHULAFA BANU ABBAS**Abbas RA.****Abdullah bin Abbas RA****Imam Ali bin Abdullah bin Abbas****Imam Mohammed bin Imam Ali****Ibraheem bin Imam Mohammed****1-Safah bin Imam Mohammed:- 132H - 750AD****2-Mansur bin Imam Mohammed:- 136H - 754AD****3-Mehdi bin Mansur:- 158H - 775AD****Ibraheem bin Mehdi****Mansur bin Mehdi****4-Hadi bin Mehdi:- 169H - 785AD****5-Haroon bin Mehdi:- 170H - 786AD****6-Ameen bin Haroon:- 193H - 809AD****7-Mamoon bin Haroon:- 198H - 813AD****8-Motasim bin Haroon:- 218H - 833AD****Qasim bin Haroon****Mohammed bin Motasim****9-Wasiq bin Motasim:- 227H - 842AD****10-Motawakal bin Motasim:- 232H - 846AD****11-Muntasir bin Motawakal:- 247H - 861AD****12-Mustaeen bin Motawakal:- 248H - 862AD****13-Motaz bin Motawakal:- 252H - 866AD****14-Mohtadi bin Wasiq:- 255H - 869AD****15-Motamid bin Motawakal:- 256H - 870AD****Mowafiq bin Motawakal****Ibnul Motaz bin Mowafiq****Mufawidh bin Mowafiq****16-Motadhid bin Mowafiq:- 279H - 892AD****17-Muktafi bin Motadhid:- 289H - 902AD****18-Muqtadir bin Motadhid:- 295H - 908AD****19-Qahir bin Motadhid:- 320H - 932AD****20-Raazi bin Muqtadir:- 322H - 934AD****21-Muttaqi bin Muqtadir:- 329H - 940AD****22-Mustakfi bin Muktafi:- 333H - 944AD****23-Motee bin Muqtadir:- 334H - 946AD****Ishaq bin Muqtadir****24-Tay bin Motee:- 363H - 974AD****25-Qadir bin Ishaq:- 381H - 991AD****26-Qaim bin Qadir:- 422H - 1031AD****Mohammed bin Qaim****27-Muqtadi bin Mohammed:- 467H - 1075AD****28-Mustazhar bin Muqtadi:- 487H - 1094AD****29-Mustarshid bin Mustazhar:- 512H - 1118AD****Abi Bakr bin Mustarshid****30-Rashid bin Mustarshid:- 529H - 1135AD****Ali bin Abi Bakar****Abi Ali Hassan bin Ali****31-Muqtadhi bin Mustazhar:- 530H - 1136AD****32-Mustanjid bin Muqtadhi:- 555H - 1160AD****33-Mustadhi bin Mustanjid:- 566H - 1170AD****34-Nasir bin Mustadhi:- 575H - 1180AD**

- 35-Zahir bin Nasir:- 622H -1226AD**
36-Mustansir Abu Jafar bin Zahir:- 623H -1226AD
37-Mustasim bin Mustansir:- 640H -1243AD
Khilafat banu Abbas in Egypt only
38-Mustansir Ahmed bin Zahir:- 659H -1262AD
39-Hakim bin Ali bin--bin Mustarshid 659H -1262AD
Mustamsik bin Hakim
40-Mustakfi bin Hakim:- 701H -1303AD
41-Wasiq bin Mustamsik bin Hakim:- 740H -1341AD
Ibraheem bin Mustamsik
42-Hakim bin Mustakfi:- 741H -1342AD
43-Motadhid bin Mustakfi:- 753H -1354AD
44-Motawakal bin Motadhid:- 763H -1364AD
45-Wasiq bin Ibraheem:- 785H -1385AD
46-Mustasim bin Ibraheem:- 788H -1388AD
Again-Motawakal bin Motadhid:- 791H -1391AD
47-Mustaeen bin Motawakal:- 808H -1394AD
48-Motadhid bin Motawakal:- 817H -1403AD
49-Mustakfi bin Motawakal:- 845H -1430AD
50-Qaim bin Motawakal:- 854H -1439AD
51-mustanjid bin Motawakal:- 859H -1444AD
Yaqub bin Motawakal
52-Motawakal bin Yaqub:- 884H -1468AD
53-Mustamsik bin Motawakal:- 903H -1486AD
54-Motawakal Alallah 3rd:-
920H -1514AD to 924H -1518AD

Discoveries Development & Inventions***Textile Industry******Jewelries******Printing******Writing******Perfumery******Agriculture & Farming******Zafrqn/Saffron & Hina******Irrigation******Paintings******Paper Industry******Book Binding******Glass Industry******Mining******Iron & Steel Industry******Magnetic Compass***

Literary & Scientific Progress1-Religious Knowledge

Tafseer of Quran, Hadees, Fiqah etc.were compiled & printed in book shape.

Books translated in Arabic1-Philosophy

-Philosopher Boqrat

- " Arastu

- " Aflatun

- " Jalinus

2-Herbal Medicine

-Hakeem Jalinus

Scientific & Mathematical ResearchPhysicsChemistryZoologyBotanyMineralsMathematicsAstronomyLawSurgery

Geography:-Muslim traders in 7th to 9th century traveled in East upto **China** by sea and by land.

In South **African coast of Injibar**. In West upto **Atlantic Ocean**. In North upto

Russia.

Books

Al Buldan- Ibne Waze Yaqubi

Al Buldan- Ibnul Aqa Yamdani

Al Alaq Al Nafsia- Ibne Rasa - 903AD

Al Masalik wal Mumalik- Al Astakhri - 950AD

Ahsanul Taqaseem- Al Muqadas

Al Akleel- Al Hassan bin Ahmed - 974AD

Al Masoodi

Moajimul Buldan- Yaqoot bin Abdullah Hamvi - 875AD

Abu Mashar Baghdadi - 886AD

History

Seerat Ibne Ishaq- Mohammed bin Ishaq- 149H

Seerat Ibne Hisham- Ibne Hisham- 209H

Kitabul Maghazi- Al Waqdi- 208H

Tabqat Ibne Saad- Ibne Saad- 230H

Futuhe Masr/Egypt- Abdul Hakam- 257H

Futuhul Buldan- Ibne Yahya Al Blazri- 257H

Kitabul Moarif- Ibne Qutaiba- 276H

Akhbarut Tawaal- Ibne Daud Ad Denori- 282H

Akhbarul Rosul wal Muluk- Ibne Jareer At Tibri- 310H

Alkamil fi Tareekh(12 Vol.)- Ibnul Aseer Musali- 603H

Dowal-e-Islam- Ibne Ahmed Masri Az Zahabi- 674H

Al Bidaya wal Nehaya- Ibne Kaseer-731H

Baghdad after Khilafat Abbasi 656H

656H-1258AD:-Jalair kingdom

768H-1412AD:-Turkman Shah Sauda

796H-1394AD:-Ameer Taimur

823H-1469AD:-Turkman Shah Baida

861H-1508AD:-Shah Iran-Ismaeel Safvi

886H-1534AD:-Turks-Usmani kingdom

924H-1336H(1518AD-1918AD):-Khilafat-e-Usmania.

Aghlabia Kingdom in North Africa**184H-296H 800-911AD**

*These were Barbarians of North Africa and accepted Islam at the end of **Umayya** period.*

*They mixed with Arabs and Ameer Aghlab brought his people under the obedience of **Khalifa Mansur**.*

***Kh. Haroon Rasheed** accepted their kingdom in North Africa, and **Aghlabia kingdom** was formed in **North Africa**.*

Rulers of Aghlabia Kingdom**184H - Ibraheem bin Aghlab****196H - Abul Abbas bin Ibraheem****201H - Ziadatullah bin Ibraheem****223H - Abu Aqaal Aghlab bin Ibraheem****226H - Abul Abbas Mohammed bin Aghlab****242H - Abu Ibraheem Ahmed bin Abdul Abbas****249H - Ziadatullah bin Abu Ibraheem****250H - Abul Faraneeq bin Abu Ibraheem****261H - Ibraheem bin Ahmed****289H - Abul Abbas Abdullah bin Ibraheem****290H - Abu Jafar Ziadatullah bin Abul Abbas**

Al-Mohads Kingdom in Maghrib-Northwest Africa

524H-667H(1130-1269AD)= 143 yrs.

542H-Al-Mohads established in Morocco & Southern Spain.

A

I-Moravids Kingdom in Maghrib-Northwest Africa

448H-542H(1056-1147AD)= 94 yrs.

469H-Ghana falls to Al-Moravid's.

469H-King of Ghana accepts Islam.

Alvieen12 Imams of Shiya's

1-Ali RA.	35-40H	656-661AD
2-Hassan RA.	40-48H	661-669AD
3-Hussain RA.	49-60H	669-680AD
4-Zainul Abideen Ra.	60-93H	680-712AD
5-Mohammed al-Baqar	93-117H	712-735AD
6-Jafar al-Sadiq Ra.	117-148H	735-765AD
7-Musa al-Kazim Ra.	148-183H	765-799AD
8-Ali al-Ridha Ra.	183-203H	799-818AD
9-Taqi al-Jawad Ra.	203-220H	818-835AD
10-Ali al-Hadi Ra.	220-254H	835-868AD
11-Hassan al-Askari Ra.	254-260H	868-873AD

260H-Imam Abu Mohammed Hassan Askari 11th Imam of Shiya Asna Ashriya died .

After his death some shiya believe in 12th Imam Mohammed Askari who has disappeared and will come as **Imam Mehdi**. Some believe that Imamatus has ended. After **Imam Jafer Sadiq the 6th Imam** shiya's are divided in two main groups. **Ismaeelia & Imamia.**

Imamia:-They believe from **Imam Moosa Kazim till Imam Mehdi to come.**

Ismaeelia:-They believe in **Imam Ismaeel** and in his family Imamatus will continue.

Batinya:-This is a branch of Ismaeelia and created in the time of Motamid. The main leader was **Abdullah bin Maimoon Majusi (fire worshiper)** after accepting Islam claimed prophethood in **Salmia a town of Hims(Sham).** From here the **Shiya Batinya started.**

Qaramta:-This is also a branch of Ismaeelia created in the time of Motamid. **Hamdani Qaramt** came from **Khozistan to Kufa** and claimed his Imamatus in a town **Nahrain.** **Ameer Kufa Hasheem** arrested him. At night the slave girl helped him in escape. In the morning he gained popularity of disappearing by his miracle.

Batinia Sect

This is a branch of Ismaeeli shiya.

Batinia flourished in the starting period of **Saljuqi Turks Sultan.**

Ahmed bin Abdul Malik bin Attash Batini established the center in a fort in **Qaim between Isfahan & Neshapur.** He started looting & killing and reached upto Isfahan.

Hassan bin Sabah scholar & classmate of Nizamul Mulk was misguided and became Batini. **Ibne Sabah** formed center in **Fort Almaut near Qazveen.** He killed several Ulama.

Nizamul Mulk send an army to crush this movement. **Ibne Sabah** became helpless so he sent a commando who killed Nizamul Mulk. Now his looting & killing increased and entire **Khurasan** was disturbed.

494H-Sultan Barkiarig sent an army. The army killed thousands of Batini and returned back.

500H-Sultan Mohammed sieged the fort in Isfahan and killed **Ibne Attash.** He also advanced to siege **Fort Almaut** but he fell ill and died.

518H-Ibne Sabah died and his son came in power.

518H-Kiabuzurg bin Hassan:-Saljuqi sultan did a mass killing of **Batinia** but their movement could not finish.

Mohammed bin Kia:-He did great damage to Islam and killed several Ulama.

Hassan bin Mohammed bin Kia:-He was an atheist and misguided large number of people.

561H-Mohammed bin Hassan:-He was greater atheist than his father.

Jalaluddin Hassan bin Mohammed:-He accepted batinia sect.

Alauddin Mohammed bin Jalaluddin:-He was a young boy. This religion became a play.

653H-Ruknuddin bin Alauddin:-Hilaku Khan grandson of Chagiz Khan killed Ruknuddin and the movement ended.

583H-Sultan announced for Jihad all the Ulama joined him. Sultan destroyed Kirk & Shobak. Then captured Tabaria. Then fought bravely in the field of Nobia killed thousands of Crusades. They tried to run away but were arrested. Reginauld was also arrested. Sultan honoured King of Jerusalem-Gaiy, and killed Reginauld by his own hands. Then captured 'Akka'. Jame Masjid was made church. After a century Sultan again made it masjid and offered Juma/Friday prayer.

Then Beirut, Soor & Asqalan was captured.

Victory of Baitul Moqadas

583H-Sultan moved from Asqalan to Baitul Moqadas and asked the Crusades to hand over on a reasonable remuneration because I don't want blood shed, but the Crusades did not agree.

After one week fight Crusades surrendered and they were freed on ransom. Those who could not pay they were also freed. Sakhra Dome & Masjid Aqsa was cleaned.

After 91 years Juma/Friday prayer was offered in Masjid Aqsa.

In 492H when Crusades captured Baitul Moqadas they martyred 70,000 muslims only in Masjid Aqsa where as the Muslim freed them peacefully.

584H-England, France, Italy & Germany jointly again attacked and only took back Akka.

Then peace treaty was signed, and Crusades returned back.

588H-Sultan gave Ameer Azizuddin the charge of Baitul Moqadas and proceeded for Haj.

589H-Sultan always ruled under Khilafat Abbasi. He was a great religious true muslim Ruler. He had a great kingdom. He died at the age of 57 years and buried in Damascus beside the Umayyad Mosque.

He handed over his kingdom to his sons, which was approved by the Abbasi Khalifa:-

1-Malik Al Aziz:-Egypt

2-Malik Al Afzal:-Damishq

3-Malik Al Zahir:-Halab

Diyalma/Buvia Kingdom(Shiya Kingdom) in Persia & Kirman

300H-448H(912-1056AD)= 148 yrs.

Abu Shuja Buvia from Daylum(Jeelan). He accepted Islam by the preaching of Atrush in Daylum. He brought his 3 sons to Khalifa Muktafi and received the title of 'Imadudaula' 'Ruknudaula' 'Mazudaula'.

Imadudaula

300- H:- Persia

Ruknudaula

318- H:- Iraq

Mazudaula

332- H:- Kirman & Basra

Adhudaula bin Ruknudaula

335-372H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. He made the false tomb of Ali RA in Najaf and invited the shiya's to come for worship.

Moedudaula bin Ruknudaula

372-373H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. He was the Hakim of Isfahan at the time of his brother Adhudaula.

Fakhrudaula bin Ruknudaula

373-385H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom

Alaudaula

360H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Samsamudaula

370H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Sharfudaula

380H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Bahaudaula bin Adhudaula

385H:- Ameerul Umara-Baghdad.

Majdudaula bin Fakhrudaula

387H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom. Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi attacked arrested him and sent to Ghazni.

Sultanudaula bin Bahaudaula

401H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom & Baghdad. His kingdom was weakened by the attacks of Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi.

Sharfudaula bin Bahaudaula

411H:-Sultan of Diyalma kingdom & Baghdad.

Abu Kalanjar bin Sultanudaula

Turks attack weakened the kingdom.

Khusro bin Feroze bin Kalanjar

Toghral Beg Turk arrested him.

Abu Mansur bin Kalanjar

448H:-Commander Fazal bin Hassan killed him and ended the kingdom.

They had shiya belief but they were against the **Fatimi, Alvi, Quramti, Ismaeeli & Batini.**

Hamdanids Kingdom in Syria
334H-395H(945-1004AD)= 61 yrs.

Idrisids Kingdom in Maghrib-Northwest Africa

173H-314H(789-926AD)= 141 yrs.

253H-Idrees bin Abdullah(Shiya) formed Idreesia State in Maghribi Africa.

Khwarzami Kingdom**592H-624H.****Ruled on Iraq ajam, Persia & Turkmemistan****592H-Khwarzam Shah captured Hamdan & Isfahan.****592H- Khalifa sent Saifuddin. He defeated Khwarzam and captured Isfahan. Then Zanjan & Qazween.****613H-khalifa sent his 2 sons Moeed & Mowafiq as Ruler of Khozistan.****613H-Khwarzam Shah defeated Atubuk and captured Rai, Qazween, Zanjaan, Hamdan, Qashan, Azarbaijan, Armeenia and advanced towards Baghdad. Khalifa sent Shaikh Shahabuddin Umar Soharwardi to advise him not to take wrong step. But he insisted on destroying Baghdad. Shaikh cursed him and came back. The army which Khwarzam sent was destroyed by snowfall.****Assault by Tatar's****History:-Barbarians of Mongolia were very hard hearted, savage, fighters & looters.****Chinese built the 'Wall of China' for their protection from these Barbarians.****Moghol & Tatar were the two sons of a King in Old days.****The two nations Moghal's & Tatar's are from these two sons.****Changez Khan collected the two nations and formed a Kingdom.****He was born in 549H.****He ruled for 20 years.****612H-He sent a muslim delegate to Khwarzam Shah and made trade pact.****615H-His last trade caravan of 400 persons were killed by Khwarzam Shah in the doubt of spying.****He sent a messenger to Khwarzam Shah to return the goods & Ghair Khan who killed the Caravan. Khwarzam Shah killed that messenger also.****616H-Changez Khan became furious and attacked with 20,000 army. Khwarzam Shah became coward because of enjoying luxuries & comforts of life, and in spite of having 100,000 army could not face the Tatar's.****617H-Khwarzam Shah escaped to his fort in Jazeera and died in 617H.****Khwarzam Shah had 4 sons****1-Outbuddin:-Killed by Tatar****2-Ghyasuddin:-****3-Ruknuddin****4-Jalaluddin:-Fought with Tatar and escaped to Ghazni. Changez followed him. Jalaluddin escaped to Sindh. Changez followed him to Sindh. Jalaluddin fought bravely and killed hundreds of Tatar, but he was surrounded by three sides so he jumped with his horse in river and swam across the river. Changez sent an army to follow Jalaluddin but they could not catch him. They went on destroying and killing the people of Multan, Punjab,****618H-Destroyed & killed the people of Tirmiz, Balkh, Talqan, Bamyan.****618H-Captured Ghazni & Gaur destroyed and killed the people.****Changez Khan destroyed & killed the entire population and captured Bukhara, Samarqand, Ghazni, Neshapur, Rai, Hamdan, Qazween, Azarbaijan Khurasan, Tabrez until the reached the Russian border.****Now Changez captured from China border till Iraq border & from North Sea to Hind/India border.****Changez distributed the territory amongst his 4 sons Joji Khan, Choghtae Khan, Tuli Khan & Kidai Khan.****621H-Jalaluddin came back via Kirman gave Iraq & Persia to his brother Ghyasuddin and kept remaining under own control. Then captured Khozistan and did cruelty on muslims more than Changez. Then captured Azarbaijan & Tabrez.****Assault of Tatar's****624H-Changez died. His sons started expanding their kingdom.**

***Ektaee Khan** attacked by 80,000 army on **Jalaluddin Shah Khwarzami** who was ruling on **Iraq Ajam, Persia, Garjistan, Azarbaijan & Khalat**. **Jalaluddin** flew away and hid himself in mountainous area but one kurdi killed him. Soon after his death **Khwarzam kingdom ended**.*

Mamluks Kingdom/Abbasi Khalifat

On Egypt & Syria

Bahri Mamluks

658H-784H. 1260-1382AD

Sultan Baybars defeated the Mongols and formed the Mamluk Kingdom.

He then brought an **Abbasi Khalifa- Mustansir Billah** and since then **Abbasi Khalifat** started in **Egypt & Syria**. These Khulafa presence were merely symbolic, and they were without power.

These shadow Khalifa were given a pension and the task of supervising the awqaf and their income.

Burji Mamluks

784H-923H. 1382-1517AD.

History of Moghal's & Tatar's/Mongol's

Barbarians of Mongolia were very hard hearted, savage, fighters & looters.

Chinese built the 'Wall of China' for their protection from these **Barbarians**.

Moghal & Tatar were the two sons of a King in Old days.

The two nations Moghal's & Tatar's are from these two sons.

Tatar's/Mongol's

Changez Khan

604H-624H (1207-1227AD)= 20 yrs.

He collected the two nations and formed a Kingdom.

He was born in 549H.

He ruled for 20 years.

612H-He sent a muslim delegate to **Khwarzam Shah** and made trade pact.

615H-His last trade caravan of 400 persons were killed by Khwarzam Shah in the doubt of spying.

He sent a messenger to Khwarzam Shah to return the goods & Ghair Khan who killed the Caravan. Khwarzam Shah killed that messenger also.

616H-Changez Khan became furious and attacked with 20,000 army. Khwarzam Shah became coward because of enjoying luxuries & comforts of life, and in spite of having 100,000 army could not face the **Tatar's**.

617H-Khwarzam Shah escaped to his fort in Jazeera and died in 617H.

Khwarzam Shah had 4 sons

1-Outbuddin:-Killed by Tatar

2-Ghyasuddin:-

3-Ruknuddin

4-Jalaluddin:-Fought with Tatar and escaped to **Ghazni**. **Changez** followed him. **Jalaluddin** escaped to Sindh. **Changez** followed him to Sindh. **Jalaluddin** fought bravely and killed hundreds of Tatar, but he was surrounded by three sides so he jumped with his horse in river and swam across the river. **Changez** sent an army to follow **Jalaluddin** but they could not catch him. They went on destroying and killing the people of **Multan, Punjab,**

618H-Destroyed & killed the people of Tirmiz, Balkh, Talqan, Bamyan.

618H-Captured Ghazni & Ghaur destroyed and killed the people.

Changez Khan destroyed & killed the entire population and captured **Bukhara, Samarqand, Ghazni, Neshapur, Rai, Hamdan, Qazween, Azarbaijan Khurasan, Tabrez** until he reached the Russian border.

Now Changez captured from China border till Iraq border & from North Sea to Hind/India.

Changez distributed the territory amongst his 4 sons **Joji Khan, Choghtae Khan, Tuli Khan & Kidai Khan.**

621H-Jalaluddin came back via **Kirman** gave **Iraq & Persia** to his brother **Ghyasuddin** and kept under own control. Then captured **Khazistan** and did cruelty on muslims more than **Changez**. Then captured **Azarbaijan & Tabrez.**

Assault of Tatar's

624H-Changez died. His sons started expanding their kingdom.

Ektae Khan attacked by 80,000 army on **Jalaluddin Shah Khwarzami** who was ruling on **Iraq Ajam, Persia, Garjistan, Azarbaijan & Khalat**. **Jalaluddin** flew away and hid himself in mountainous area but one kurdi killed him. Soon after his death **Khwarzam kingdom ended.**

630H-Tatar captured entire territories of **Khwarzami kingdom** and attacked on **Khilafat Abbasi**. **Mustansir army** retreated them.

Tatar Rulers

1-Avegh Buka s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-made Qaraquram Capital.

2-Alghu s/o Baidad Khan s/o Chughata s/o Changez:-made Eimaleegh Capital.

3-Qubla s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-made Ablee/Peken Capital.

4-Qeedu s/o Qashi s/o Ukta s/o Changez:-made Bukhara Capital.

5-Sain s/o Joji s/o Changez:-made Marqeeq Capital. He was busy in attacking on Russia, Germany, Poland & Austria.

6-Mangu s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez:-Died in 655H.

7-Hilaku Khan s/o Tuli Khan s/o Changez

654H-Ruknuddin Batini rioted in Iran. **Hilaku** crushed the riot killed all the Batini men women children & **Ruknuddin. This ended the Hassan bin Saba movement.**

He captured Iran Iraq Ajam and made Muragha the capital.

His wazeer was Naseeruddin Tusi(shiya).

656H-Hilaku attacked on Baghdad with the conspiracy of Alqami. **Khalifa** sent an army who defeated **Hilaku** and killed hundreds of army.

656H-Alqami wrote to Tusi wazeer of Hilaku to reattack. Hilaku reattacked with a huge army and sieged Baghdad. He broke the boundary wall with catapults & captured Baghdad.

Murder of Khalifa

656H (1258AD) -Alqami siad to Khalifa that we should go to Hilaku and make peace treaty. Khalifa took his family alongwith Alqami to Hilaku. Hilaku killed the entire family of Khalifa and killed Khalifa with great torture. Alqami trampled the body of Khalifa saying I am taking the revenge of Fall of Fatimi kingdom.

Tatari entered Baghdad killed 1.6 million men women & children. Only 0.4 million shiya locality was left on the request of Wazeer Tusi (shiya). Destroyed the beautiful city and burnt Baghdad city. Jame masjid, Library & the books were all burnt and thrown in the river, the water became black. The wealth & valuable goods looted from the palaces were so much that could not be counted.

Condition of Ibne Alqami

Wazeer Alqami was made the peon of Ibne Imran-Hakim of Baghdad.

656H-Hilaku captured Halab, Darband, Musal, Diyar Bakr etc., and ruined it.

657H-Hilaku sent Kidluqa to attack on Damishq. Malik Nasiruddin asked help from Egypt. Alama Taqiuddin Harani made speeches in the public and motivated them for Jihad, and he himself fought. Help from Egypt also came. The muslims fought bravely killed thousands of Tatari and defeated them.

656H-End of Khilafat Banu Abbas in Baghdad.

659H-Start of Khilafat Banu Abbas in Egypt.

Mongol State in S. Russia

623H-907H(1226-1502)= 284 yrs.

Creation of Golden Horde.

639H-1241-Mongol invade Poland & Hungary.

Mongol Invasion of Southeast Asi470H-707H(1077-1307AD)=237 yrs.

656H-1258-Mongol Expedition to Annam.

682H-1283-Mongol expedition against Annam & Champal

686H-1287-Mongol expedition to Pagan.

692H-1293-Failed Mongol invasion of Java.

694H-1295-Conversion of Sultan of Achin/Sumatra to Islam, which spread over much of the

East Indies.

849H-1445-Conversion of Malaca/Malaya to Islam.

854H-1450-Islam spreads over much of East Indies.

Moghal's

Ameer Taimur s/o Ameer Turaghai

771H-807H (1370-1405AD)=36 yrs.

Age:-70 yrs.

Birth:-736H. In City Sabz(green).

Death:-807H. In Anzar.

History:-Fore father of Hilaku Khan and Ameer Taimur was the same.

Hilaku Khan made his uncle Yajal Khan - Hakim of Tabrez.

Alangar Khan s/o Yajal Khan accepted Islam. He was titled as Ameerul Umara.

Ameer Turaghai s/o Ameer Barkal s/o Alanghar Khan was the follower of Shaikh Shamsuddin Kalal.

Kingdom:-From Wall of China to End of Asia border, and Aral sea to Persian gulf.

Qualities

Taimur was so brave & courageous that he never feared anything.

His planning & decisions were so strong & perfect that with the help of **Almighty Allah it was always completed.**

Victories

782H-Taimur attacked on Iran and within 7 years captured Khurasan, Jurjan, Mazandran, Sajistan, Azarbaijan & Kurdistan.

789H-People of Isfahan rioted. Taimur crushed the riot and killed the rioters.

795H-He came to Iran again and killed Shah Mansur who rioted in Sheeraz.

796H-He captured Baghdad.

801H-He built bridge on River Sindh crossed the bridge and captured India.

802H-He captured Sham.

In few years his kingdom reached to the border of Usmania kingdom.

803H-Taimur attacked on Armeenia and entered the Usmania kingdom. 700,000 Tatar army killed thousands of Turks. Prince Ar Tughral s/o Sultan Bayazeed was also killed.

804H-Taimur & Ba Yazeed wrote letters but no solution resulted. Ultimately two great muslim King's came in the battlefield at Angora. Ba Yazeed came with 120,000 army against 700,000 army of Taimur. Taimur with tears prayed whole night for the victory in front of Almighty Allah. After great killing Ba Yazeed was arrested. His 3 sons managed to escape. Prince Sulaiman escaped to Europe. Prince Mohammed escaped to Imasia and Prince Eisa to Kirmania. Prince Mustafa disappeared.

Taimur respected Sultan Ba Yazeed. Tears came out from the eyes of Taimur on the arrest of a great muslim king.

Taimur said to Ba Yazeed, this defeat of yours 9s because of your own mistake. If you would have listened to me I would helped you in fighting against the non muslims of Europe.

805H-Ba Yazeed died in the arrest because of sadness.

805H-In Egypt and Harmain Sharifain (Makka & Madina) his name was read in Khutba/Friday prayer.

806H-Captured Feroza Koh (Mountain Feroza).

807H-Captured Neshapur and at the age of 70 years advanced with 200,000 army to capture China, but after traveling 300 miles when he reached Anzar, he fell ill and died.

Taimur was one of those great king who intended for the victory of entire world.

In 35 years of age he got victory over all the Chief's of Tatar. Made Samarqand his capital, in 36 years of Rule he captured 27 countries and 9 kingdoms.

His victory was so great that the victory of Alexander the Great, Julius scissors, Changez Khan, Charlene & Napoleon was nothing.

Muknasia Safia Kingdom in Morocco

311H-363H

311H-Moosa bin Ali Alafia Muknasi

341H-Ibraheem bin Moosa

350H-Abdullah bin Ibraheem

360H-Mohammed bin Abdullah

Qaramti's Kingdom in Bahrain & Oman
281H-596H(894-1200AD)= 315 yrs.

Rasulids State in Yemen
629H-858H(1229-1454AD)=229 yrs.

Saadian dynasty in Morocco

917H-1069H:-Saadian Dynasty formed in Morocco.

Safaaria State in Sajistan-Persia

246H-900H-(867-1495AD)=654 yrs.

237H-Yaqub bin Lays Safaari(Shiya) founded Safaaria State in Sajistan.

Safavid in Persia (Shiya's)**905H-1134H. 1500-1722AD**

*They continuously revolted against the **Usman Sultan** and spreaded shiyaism in **Persia**, but they were crushed time to time by the **Sultan's** until they were totally crushed by the **Khilji's**.*

Safvi Kingdom(shiya)

908H- 1502AD:-Shah Ismaeel-Safvi Kingdom started. Fought with Turks & Uzbuk.

931H- 1525AD:-Shah Tahmasip bin Ismaeel. King Humayun took shelter in his kingdom.

989H- 1581AD:-Shah Ismaeel Sani bin Tahmasip.

994H- 1586AD:-Shah Hamza bin Mohammed.

994H- 1586AD:-Shah Ismaeel Salis.

994H- 1586AD:-Shah Abbas.

1040H-1631AD:-Shah Safi.

1052H-1643AD:-Shah Abbas Sani.

1077H-1667AD:-Shah Sulaiman

1106H-1695AD:-Shah Hussain

1125H-1714AD:-Shah Tahmasip Sani. Khilji& Abdali weakened their kingdom.

1134H-1722AD:-End of Safvi(shiya) kingdom.

Saljuqia Kingdom**Saljuq**

Saljuq came from Turkistan to Samarqand, accepted Islam and settled in **Jundur**. The **Turks** came to collect tax from muslims as usual. **Saljuq** said muslims may give tax to Kafir/ Infidel, I cannot tolerate, so muslims with **Saljuq** fought and got victory. **Saljuq** gained popularity.

Saljuq son Mikaeel was killed and his two sons **Tughral Buk & Chughar Buk** were brought up by his grand father in a strong Islamic environment

Tughral Buk became the Ruler of **Khurasan & Chughar Buk** became the Ruler of **Marv & Hirat**. Both the brother remained unitedly.

SALJUQI KINGDOM IN IRAQ**Tughral Buk**

447H-Abbasi Khalifa Qaim be Amrillah called Tughral Buk for help. He helped Khalifa arrested Abdur Rahim Dailmi the revolter.

449H-Khalifa honoured him, crowned him and made him Sultan

He was so happy & obliged that he kissed the hand of Khalifa and respected him.

455H-Tughral Buk & Chughar Buk expired.

Sultan Alap Arsalan bin Chugar Buk

455H-He was also crowned by Khalifa Qaim. He defeated and arrested Roman king Qaisar.

Qaisar was freed and he was so much obliged that he married his daughter with **Arsalan Shah** s/o Alap Arsalan.

Khaqan China was also impressed with him. He also married his daughter to **Arsalan Shah**.

Neshapur also became like Baghdad. Sultan of different countries use to visit Alap Arsalan. He was killed in 465H.

Nizamul Mulk Tusi was Wazeer of Alap Arsalan.

Sultan Jalaluddin Malik Shah bin Alap Arsalan

465H-Malik Shah became sultan with the effort of Nizamul Mulk Tusi.

He remained wazeer of Malik Shah, and actually he was the ruler.

484H-Malik Shah expired.

Sultan Barkyaraq bin Malik Shah

484H-Became sultan.

Moidul Mulk & Fakhrul Mulk were his wazeer.

Sultan Mohammed bin Malik Shah

496H-Became sultan.

Sultan Mohammed bin Mohammed bin Malik Shah

509H-Sultan during Khalifa Mustarshid billah.

Sultan Tughral bin Mohammed bin Malik Shah

525H-Became sultan after death of his brother.

Sultan Masood bin Malik Shah

529H-Sultan during Khalifa Mustarshid & Muqtadhi billah.

Sultan Malik Shah bin Mahmood bin Mohammed bin Malik Shah

544H-Sultan for 3 months only.

Sultan Mohammed bin Mahmood

544H-He was made sultan after removing his brother.

Sultan Arsalan bin Tughral bin Mohammed bin Malik Shah

551H-He remained fighting with 'Al Maut' fighters and was victorious.

Sultan Tughral bin Arsalan bin Tughral

571H-His death ended Saljuqi kingdom in Iraq.

SALJUQI KINGDOM IN KHURASAN**Sultanus Salateen Sanjar bin Malik Shah**

509H-He was brave, kind, intelligent & god fearing sultan. He expired in 552H.

Mahmood Khan Jawahirzada

552H-Ruler of Khurasan. He was blinded and some of his kingdom was taken by Khwarzam Shahi & some by Ghauri. Saljuqi kingdom ended in Khurasan.

SALJUQI KINGDOM IN KIRMAN**Capital:- Hamdan***In the generation of one brother of Sultan Sanjar remained 10 sultan in Kirman one after the other.***1-Sultan Shah****2-Turan Shah****3-Iran Shah****4-Arsalan Shah****5-Mohammed Shah bin Arsalan****6-Tughral Shah****7-Arsalan Shah****8-Tughral Shah****9-Bahram Shah****10-Mohammed Shah bin Bahram****SALJUQI KINGDOM IN ROMAN TERRITORY****Capital:-Qunia/Qausia****1-Sulaiman bin Qaltamash****2-Daud bin Sulaiman****3-Arsalan bin Sulaiman****4-Masood bin Falaj****5-Arsalan bin Masood****6-Ghayasuddin bin Kakhesro****7-Ruknuddin Sulaiman bi Falaj****8- Aesalan bin Sulaiman****9-Azizuddin Kekaush bin Ghyasuddin****10-Alauddin Keqbad bin Ghyasuddin****11-Ghyasuddin Kakhesro bin Alauddin****12-Ruknuddin Salman bin Ghyasuddin****13-Kakhesro bin Ruknuddin****14-Keqbad bin Framruz****Nizamul Mulk Tusi****455-485H:-Wazeer of Sultan Alap Arsalan & Sultan Malik Shah.****Name:-Hassan bin Ali bin Ishaq bin Abbas. Title-Nizamul Mulk.****Age:-****Birth:-408H in Tus****Death:-****Qualities***Nizamul Mulk studied hadees & fiqh.**His classmate was Umar Khayam & Hassan bin Sabah.**He was a good scholar & good ruler.**He built several Madaris, rest houses & bridges.**Siasat nama (political activity) is unique composition written by him.***Jame Nizamia/Nizamia University***He founded Jame Nizamia/Nizamia University in Baghdad in 457H and completed in 459H.**He endowed for the Jame a land giving earning of 30 million/year.***Principal:-Sh.Abu Ishaq Sheerazi****Head Master:-Sh.Abu Nasar Sabagh***The Jame and its teaching was of such a standard that till now its syllabus is famous as**Dars-e-Nizami taught throughout the world.***Architectural Development**

*Covered markets, hospitals and other public buildings.
The qanat system of underground aqueducts and agricultural techniques.*

Samania State 261-395H(864-1004AD)

Ismaeel bin Ahmed bin Asad Samani founded the kingdom on **Tibristan-Sajistan-Khurasan-Mazindan-Rai-Isfahan-Ma-wara-un- Nahar.**

Capital was Samarqand.

Kings of Samania:-

261H- Ismaeel bin Ahmed:-Capital-Samarqand. He was brave,well mannered,kind & just.

297H- Ahmed bin Ismaeel:-Capital-Bukhara--Brave but immoral. Courtiers killed him.

Ruled for 6 yrs.

303H- Abul Hassan Nasar bin Ahmed:-He was very famous king. Because of his kindness he was known as Ameer Saeed.

331H- Nuh bin Nasar:- He always had to face the Rulers of Vailum and got victory.

343H- Abdul Malik bin Nuh:- He always had to face the Rulers of Vailum and got victory.

350H- Mansur bin Nuh:- His Commander Alaptageen flew away to Ghazni and his slave

Subuktageen formed his kingdom in **Ghazni**

365H- Nuh bin Mansur:- In his time Addudaulah captured Iraq and Shamsulmal Qabus captured Jarjan & Tibristan. Bafra Khan-Governor Khurasan captured Ma wara un Nahar but he died

soon. So **Nuh** again became King of Ma wara un Nahar. Bu Ali became the King of Khurasan

and attacked on Nuh. **Nuh** with the help of Subuktageen & Mahmood defeated Bu Ali.

387H- Mansur bin Nuh:- The courtiers wanted Mansur to fight with Mahmood but when he refused

the courtiers killed him by piercing hot iron needle in his eyes.

390H- Abdul Malik bin Nuh:- The courtiers compelled Abdul Malik to fight with Mahmood. **Abdul Malik** was defeated. He flew to his capital, but it was captured by Ailak Khan of

Kashghar.

Abdul Malik was arrested and the Kingdom of Samania ended.

Samania Rule was full of bravery & courage. The society was civilized & prosperous, also made progress in science & technology. The King respected & honoured the scholars.

Scholars & Mohaddis

Ibraheem bin Adham Balkhi Ra:- Khalifa of Fuzail bin Ayaz Ra. Great Wali Allah & Mohaddis.

Imam Bukhari Ra:- Imamul Mohaddiseen.

Imam Muslim Ra:- Student of Imam Ahmed bin Hanbal Ra.

Imam Abu Daud Ra :-

Imam Tirmizi Ra

Development & Reforms

263H-Ibne Tulun Masjid-Cairo.

Tuluniya Kingdom in Egypt

257H - 292H

Tulun was a Turk slave presented by ***Nuh bin Asad Samani-Ruler of Bukhara to Kh. Mamoon.***

Tuluniya kingdom was under the rule of ***Khilafat Abbasia.***

Rulers of Tuluniya Kingdom

254H-Ahmed bin Tulun

270H-Khumarvia bin Ahmed

282H-Jaish bin Khumarvia

283H-Haroon bin Khumarvia

292H-Shaiban bin Ahmed

Ubaidi/Fatimi Kingdom in Egypt**Most mischievous kingdom****296H-567H(908-1171AD) = 271 yrs.****1-Mehdi Ubaidullah. 296-323H:-His grand father Qaddah was Majusi(fire worshipper).
He came to Qirwan-Maghrif and claimed to be Alvi/Fatimi.****He established a false Alvi/Fatimi kingdom.****2-Qaim be Amrillah bin Mehdi. 323-333H.****3-Mansur Ismaeel bin Qaim. 333-341H.****4-Mazuddin bin Mansur. 341-365H:- He captured Egypt in 362H.****5-Aziz Bazzaz bin Mazuddin. 365-386H.****6-Hakim bin Aziz Bazzaz. 386-411H:- He was killed.****7-Zahir bin Hakim. 411-428H.****8-Mustansir bin Zahir 428-487H:- He ruled for 60 years longest period.****9-Mustali bin Mustansir. 487-495H.****10-Amir bin Mustli. 495-524H:- He was killed.****11-Hafizuddin bin Mohammed****bin Mustansir. 524-544H.****12-Zahir bin Hafizuddin. 544-549H:- He was killed.****13-Faiz be Nasrullah bin Zahir 549-555H.****14-Adhuddin bin Hafizuddin.555-567H.****Fatimi kingdom ended and Abbasi Khilafat started.**

Zangi Kingdom In Different Countries**Sultan Imaduddin Zangi**

521H-He founded & started the kingdom from Musal.

522H-Captured Hims.

533H-Captured Balbak.

534H-Captured City Zore.

537H-Sultan Imaduddin died.

Sultan Imaduddin had 3 sons:-

1-Nuruddin 2-Saifuddin 3-Qutbuddin.

Musal

537H-Saifuddin bin Imaduddin

541H-Qutbuddin bin Imaduddin

576H-Saifuddin Ghazi bin Maudud

589H-Azuddin Masood bin Maudud

589H-Nuruddin Arsalan bin Masood

616H-Naseeruddin bin Mahmood

631H-Badrudin Lulu slave

657H-Ismaeel bin Lulu

660H-Kingdom ended. Tatars captured.

Halb

537H-Nuruddin bin Imaduddin

541H-Ismaeel. He handed over to

Sultan Salhuddin Ayubi

Damisq & Roman Territories

549H-Nuruddin bin Imaduddin

Jazeera

541H-Qutbuddin bin Imaduddin

576H-Sanjar

600H-Mazuddin Mahmood bin Sanjar

648H-Masood bin Mahmood

Ayubi kingdom took over Jazeera.

Zaydia regain control on Yemen
1000H-1381H(1592-1962AD)=381 yrs.

Zaydia/Yafarya State in Sana-Yemen

246H-387H(860-997AD)= 141 yrs.

246H-Abdur Raheem bin Ibraheem was Asst. Ruler of Sana deputed by Governor of Yemen. His administration was very good. He died. His son ***Yafer also*** ruled properly. People liked him very much so he became the ruler of Sana and formed ***Yafarya State***. ***Yafarya family*** ruled upto ***387H***.

Zirids Kingdom in Northwest Africa
362H-543H(972-1148AD)= 181 yrs.

Background /History**Background of Khilafat Usmania**

At the end of Khilafat Banu Abbas the kingdom was broken into pieces and the muslim countries were about to vanish, when Almighty Allah consolidated the muslim power by the Turks.

Turks were gypsies and illiterate but were brave & civilized. With the acceptance of Islam an ambition of Jihad was developed which again established a Islamic Kingdom in the world.

Ameer Usman Khan established the Khilafat/Sultanat Usmania in which 37 Sultan ruled from 687-1342H(1288-1924AD)=655 years.

Ameer Usman started taking the territories of Byzantine kingdom.

Sultan Aur Khan took over Barusa & Nikaya. Qarasi came under Usmania kingdom. 759H(1358AD)-Captured Gelipoli and started capturing European territories of Byzantine kingdom.

After few years captured Adrianople & Philpopolis. Leaving Qustuntunia entire Balqan was captured.

Sultan Murad defeated the Crusade army and gave them such a lesson that from North no one dared to attack on Usmania Kingdom. For 200 years victories continued.

855H(1453AD)-Sultan Mohammed Sani/Fateh captured Qustuntunia and Byzantine kingdom was destroyed and finished.

877H(1475AD)-Karimia & Aegean Islands were captured. Fort Toronto of Italy was captured.

Sultan Saleem Awal captured Khurasan & Diyar Bakr.

923H(1517AD)-Sham, Egypt & Arab territories were captured.

928H(1522AD)-Sultan Sulaiman Aazam captured Rhodes Island, Belgrade.

932H(1526AD)-Sultan Slaiman defeated Hungary in the battlefield of Mohakas. 20,000 christians were killed including King Louis of Hungary. For 150 years Hungary was a province of Turkey.

935H(1529AD)-Duke Ferdinand of Vienna use to pay tax.

Sultan Sulaiman's Admiral terrified the Coastal territories of Gulf of Rome and cleared the way upto Spain.

944H(1538AD)-Sulaiman defeated the Pope & King of Rome was defeated badly in the Naval battle.

Sultan Sulaiman kingdom was from Budapest (Danube) to Aswan & from Farat(Euphrates) to Gibraltar. Sulaiman Azam period was the peak of Usmania kingdom.

979H(1571AD)-Cyprus was captured.

1048H(1638AD)-Baghdad was captured.

1055H(1645AD)-Candia & Islands were taken away from Venus.

Decline of Usmania Kingdom

1060H(1650AD)-Defeat of Usmania kingdom started.

1066H(1656AD)-Algeria/Algiers got independence.

1110H(1699AD)-Hungary, Podolia, Transilvania went away.

1116H(1705AD)-Tunis got independence.

1197H(1783AD)-Karimia was taken back by Russia.

Mohammed Ali freed Egypt.

1245H(1830AD)-Algiers was captured by France.

1295H(1878AD)-Batum was taken over by Russia.

Cyprus was taken over by Britain.

Romania & Montenegro got independence.

Greece took away Thistly.

Bosnia & Herzigonía was taken by Austria.

1297H(1881AD)-Tunis was captured by **France**.

1330H(1912AD)-Tripoli was taken by **Italy**.

1334H(1916AD)-Arabs Took over **Hijaz**.

Therese was captured by **greece**.

1338H(1920AD)-Allied forces captured **Qustuntunia**.

Governing body of Usmania Kingdom

Sultan

Full command on Army & Public life and wealth.

President/Chief Minister:-Responsible for Ministries & Government offices, Judiciary with consultation of **Shaikhul Islam**,

Shaikhul Islam:-Responsible for Religious affairs, Call for war, Peace agreement & Appointment/Dismissal of Sultan.

Religion of Usmania Kingdom

Turks were true Hanafi Muslims, obedient to the commandments of Almighty Allah bearing good moral characters, honesty & justice. Their character influenced the people to enter into **Islam**.

Turks were pious, religious and having firm belief.

Turks were brave, non-prejudice and cooperative and helpful.

Turks believed and followed big Shaikhs due to which some were misguided by **False Shaikh**.

Turks view about Khilafat

Turks believed in Khilafat and respected the Khulafa so much so that they use to take permission for their kingdom from Khulafa Banu Abbas.

Khilafat/Saltanat-e-Usmania**700 H.to 1330 H. = 1300 AD.to 1918 AD.****History of Turks**

Turks were from the **Aghar** nation. They were gypsy's roaming in Eastern & Central **Asia**. They were rough & tough attacking, killing and looting the civilized populations, due to which people use to fear them.

In **600AD** they formed a strong **kingdom** between the **Northern Mongolia & china border till Black Sea**. The **kingdom** was in two portions, **Northern Turkey & Western Turkey**. One tribe of Western Turks adapted the title of **Khaqan**.

In **86H-705AD** **Qutayba bin Muslim** in the period of **Khalifa Waleed bin Abdul Malik** captured the **Turkish localities, Bekand, Bukhara, Samarqand, Farghana, Kashghar etc.** and **Islamic Kingdom** was established.

In **100H-718AD** in the period of **Umar bin Aziz Ra** several **Turkish Kings** accepted **Islam**.

In **105H-723AD** in the period of **Hisham**, the **Turks of Samarqand & Bukhara** accepted **Islam**.

Ameer Ar Tughral- Father of the founder of Khilafat Usmania

Ar Tughral accepted **Islam** on the hands of **Alauddin Saljuqi**.

676H-1277AD **Alauddin Kaikbad Saljuqi- Sultan of Qunya** made **Ar Tughral- Commander in Chief** of his army because he defeated the **Tatari's & Romans**.

686H-1287AD **Alauddin** made **Ar Tughral- Deputy Ruler** of his kingdom.

687H-1288AD **Ar Tughral** died and his son **Usman** became the **Deputy Ruler**.

1-Ameer Usman Khan bin Ar Tughral- Founder of Usmania Kingdom

687H-727H (1288-1327AD)=40 yrs.

Age:- 71 yrs.

Birth:- 656H.

Death:- 727H.

Qualities

His father trained & taught him in **Islamic ways**.

He was brave, courageous, polite, very hard on the enemy but very kind hearted for his people.

His way of fighting was like of **Sahaba**. He use to invite the enemy first towards **Islam**, then second choice to pay tax, lastly to fight.

His life was very simple. He was very generous whatever booty was obtained he use to distribute them to the pors and amongst the army. He never kept for himself.

He was very hospitable. His kindheartedness was very famous.

He captured **Asian Byzantine territories and spreaded Islam**.

Victories

687H- Batu Khan Grand son of **Changez Khan** defeated **Alauddin** and ended **Saljuqi kingdom**.

687H- Usman declared his independent kingdom.

688H- Defeated **Nicholas** and captured **Quraja Hisar**.

690-697H- Usman organized his kingdom on the pattern of **Alauddin Saljuqi** and appointed **Turks** on key posts . He appointed **Turk soldiers** in his army.

701H- Usman defeated the army of the **King of Qustuntunia**. Within 6 years he captured several **Byzantine forts** and his kingdom reached upto **Black sea**.

717H- Usman sieged the **Byzantine** important city **Barusa**. till the army surrendered.

726H- Aur Khan s/o Usman entered **Barusa** victorious.

2-Sultan Aur Khan bin Usman

727H-760H (1327-1359AD)=33 yrs.

Age:- 76 Yrs.

Birth:- 684H.

Death:- 760H.

Presidency

727H-Alauddin:- Brother of Aur Khan.

756H-Sulaiman Pasha:- Son of Aur Khan.

Kingdom:- Area=20,000 Sqml. **Population=** 1,000,000.

On North West Asia and in Europe- Zanp, Geli Poli & Threese.

Capital:- Barusa.

Qualities

Usman gave their sons **Aur Khan & Alauddin Islamic Education & training.**

He had best quality of Rulership.

He was very particular in following, spreading & implementing **Islam.**

He was very patient and generous.

He honoured the Ulama & pious Shakhs.

Reforms made by President Alauddin

He minted gold & silver coins in the name of **Aur Khan.**

The name of **Aur Khan** was read in khutba/Friday speech.

Separate dresses were fixed for citizens, villagers, muslims & non-muslims.

A regular organized army with all facilities and reasonable salaries was prepared. Regular training was given to the soldiers and army officers.

The army soldiers & officers were given titles and properties for their family requirements.

At a time there was 500,000 Turks soldiers in the army.

Turkish army was kind hearted, they didn't harm the women, children & old people. But they were hard on young one's. The christian enemy use to fear the Turkish army.

Aur Khan gave the title of **Pasha to Alauddin.** **He** was the first one to receive this title.

He had a best quality of administration.

Victories

727H-Nicomedia was captured.

730H-Naisa was captured from Christians. People of **Naisa** was fed up by the cruelty of Byzantine kingdom, so they willingly accepted **Islam.**

737H-Qarasi and Northern & Western portion of Anotolia was captured.

750H-Kantakozene captured **Qustuntunia** with the help 30,000 army of **Aur Khan**

754H-John Pleologis & Queen Aina attacked on **Qustuntunia.** **Aur Khan** sent his son **Prince Usman Pasha** with 20,000 army for the help of **Kantakozene** and defeated the enemy.

755H-Sulaiman Pasha s/o Aur Khan captured **Zanp.**

756H-Sulaiman Pasha captured **Gelipoli & big portion of Threese.**

Death of Sulaiman Pasha

759H-Sulaiman fell down from the horse while hunting and died.

760H-Aur Khan was shocked by the death of his son Sulaiman and died.

Masjid & Madrasa:- **Aur Khan** constructed a grandeur Masjid & Madrasa in **Naisa & Barusa.**

Several **Mosques & Guest houses** were constructed. The teaching in madrasa became so famous that students from **Iran & Arab**

countries use

to come for learning.

Language:- **Turkish** language was introduced in schools & offices.

Scholars:- **Ibne Batuta-** The famous muslim tourist of the world.

3-Sultan Murad Awal bin Aur Khan

760H-791H (1359-1389AD)= 30 yrs.

Age:- 65 yrs.

Birth:- 720H.

Death:- 791H.

Prime Minister:- Khairuddin Pasha

Commander in Chief:- 1-Lala Shaheen. 2-Taimur Tash.

Kingdom:- Sultan Murad captured **European territories** 5 times more than his father.

Bulgaria, Serbia, Bosnia, Theresese, Maqdonia & Hungary was captured, and the **Usmania Kingdom** reached upto **River Danube**.

Capital:- 1-Demonica of Therese. 2-Aderna (after 3 years.).

Qualities

Murad was one of the dignified **Sultan**.

In his 30 years of Rulership, 24 years he remained in the battlefield, and he was **victorious in all the battles**.

He was brave & courageous, and use to forgive his enemy.

He was religious, polite, humble. kind hearted, generous and use to take care of the poor.

Revolt of Ameer Kirmania

760H-Murad crushed the revolt of Ameer Kirmania.

Victories

764H-Murad fought with **Byzantine**, captured two important forts of **Threese** and ultimately captured entire **Threese**.

764H-Commander in Chief **Lala Shaheen** entered **Bulgaria** and captured **Philpopolis**.

764H-King of **Qustuntunia** made peace treaty with **Murad**.

764H-Pope **Arban V** seeing the victories of **Turks**, attacked with 20,000 joint forces of **Hungary, Serbia, Bosnia & Vilachia**. **Lala shaheen** with a small force defeated the joint force at **River Marteza** and killed the entire army. **King of Hungary** hardly escaped. Entire area of **South Balqan** was captured.

770H-Ameer of **Kirman** married his daughter to **Prince Bayazeed s/o Sultan Murad** and in dowry gave a large area of **Kirman & fort**.

779H-Murad purchased the **city Aaq** from **Ameer of Hameed State**, due to which the **Usmania Kingdom** reached upto **Kirmania**.

782H-Shah **Serbia & Bulgaria** rioted and stopped paying tax. **Commander in Chief Taimur Tash** attacked and captured **Munastar & Astab** and sieged **Sophia**. After 3 years of siege it was captured.

783H-Prime Minister **Khairuddin Pasha** captured **Salaneek**.

788H-Shah **Serbia & Bulgaria** again attacked. **General Ali Pasha** with 20,000 army defeated them and captured **Fort Qartwa & Shomla**.

791H-Sultan **Murad** defeated the joint force and crushed them totally at the field of **Kasoda**. Suddenly a Serbian called **Milosh Kobilowich** decieved **Sultan Murad** and wounded him with dagger. **Murad** ordered a severe attack. **Shah Siberia** was arrested and assassinated.

Death of Sultan Murad:- Murad died because of the severe wound.

Reforms

He made reforms and strengthened his kingdom. He brought peace and comfort.

He made reforms in his army and strengthened his army.

He allotted lands for Royal expenses, and separate lands for mosques and religious organizations.

The christians always use to do conspiracy, so he deputed them on different tasks like, Cleaning of stables, fixing and removing of tents, looting after the carriage carts etc.

Scholars:- **Ibne Khuldun-** The famous Muslim history writer.

4-Sultan Ba Yazeed Awal bin Murad

791H-805H (1389-1403AD)= 14 yrs.

Age:-44 yrs.

Birth:-761H.

Death:-805H.

Capital:-Aderna

Kingdom:-Only Turkistan was left with **Usmania kingdom** after the battle between **Bayazeed & Taimur**.

Commander in Chief:-Taimur Tash was also **Deputy Ruler of Asia**.

Qualities

He was a religious scholar.

He was a brave & courageous warrior.

His victories started from young age.

Victories & Battles

792H-Shah Serbia-Stephen was defeated in the **Battle of Kasoda** and agreed to pay tax.

Also married his sister **Princess Despinia** to **Sultan Ba Yazeed**.

792H-Bayazeed made new peace treaty with **King of Qustuntunia**. **King** agreed to pay 30,000 golden coins/year as tax and handed over **Fort Philadelphia of Byzantine kingdom to Sultan**.

For muslims of **Qustuntunia** an Islamic Court was established and a Turkish Qazi was posted. A huge mosque was also constructed. 6,000 **Usmani force** was also posted.

793H-Captured Turkish States Aydeen Iftishar & Saru Khan. Then he captured **Qastumuni & Aaq**.

794H-Captured Vilachya & Fort Nailopolis.

795H-Bayazeed sent his son **Prince Sulaiman Pasha** to **Bulgaria**. He captured **Bulgaria**.

The kingdom of **Asqaf Azam ended** and he was exiled. People of **Bulgaria** willingly accepted **Islam**.

797H-King of Hungary alarmed by the victory of **Bulgaria** so he requested the **Pope**, he announced **Crusade war** against muslims. **The kings of European countries** jointly attacked on **muslim army**. The European command was with **Count de Nafer**. **Crusades** fought bravely but was defeated thousands were killed 10,000 were arrested. **Count** was also arrested, when he was brought for assassination **Sultan with mercy freed him**. **All the muslim countries enjoyed the happiness of this victory**. **The Abbasi Khalifa Motawakal Alallah of Egypt** sent gift to **Sultan**.

798H-Bayazeed sent army to attack on **Austria & Hungary**. They captured **Peter Warden City**. Another army recaptured the **forts on the bank of Danube**.

800H-Bayazeed attacked on **Greece** and captured **Thistly, Dorees & Locarpees**.

On the other hand his army captured **Mooria**.

803H-Taimur attacked on **Armeenia** and entered the **Usmania kingdom**. **700,000 Tatars** army killed thousands of **Turks**. **Prince Ar Tughral s/o Sultan Bayazeed** was also killed.

804H-Taimur & Ba Yazeed wrote letters but no solution resulted. Ultimately two great muslim **King's** came in the battlefield at **Angora**. **Ba Yazeed** came with 120,000 army against 700,000 army of **Taimur**. **Taimur with tears prayed whole night for the victory in front of Almighty Allah**. After great killing **Ba Yazeed** was arrested. His 3 sons managed to escape. **Prince Sulaiman** escaped to **Europe**. **Prince Mohammed** escaped to **Imasia** and **Prince Eisa** to **Kirmania**. **Prince Mustafa disappeared**.

Taimur respected Sultan Ba Yazeed. **Tears came out from the eyes of Taimur on the arrest of a great muslim king**.

Taimur said to Ba Yazeed, this defeat of yours is because of your own mistake. If you would have listened to me I would helped you in fighting against the non muslims of Europe.

805H-Ba Yazeed died in the arrest because of sadness.

The fight between Bayazeed and Taimur was a great loss to the muslims, specially to Usmania kIngdom. Western Asia & Eastern Europe slipped off from Usmania kingdom, only small portion of Turkistan was left with Usmania kingdom.

5-Sultan Mohammed Awal bin Bayazeed

816H-824H (1413-1421AD)=8 yrs.

Age:-41 yrs.

Birth:-783H.

Death:-824H. Barusa

Since the death of Bayazeed his 3 sons went on fighting for the kingdom till the 2 died in 816H.

Capital:-Barusa

Kingdom:-Recaptured & strengthened the kingdom of his father Bayazeed.

Qualities

He was very religious, paid handsome salary to the servants of Harmain Sharifain.

*He constructed a large madrasa beside **Jame masjid Barusa** and dining room for the poors.*

He was brave patient & humble.

He had good moral character, broad hearted, just & abided promise.

*In his short period of rulership he not only finished the internal disputes, but by god gifted army and political ability and talents strengthened the **Usmania kingdom** as was before the **Taimur** attack.*

He used the tactics of establishing peace, and maintained good relationswith the neighboring rulers.

His people were happy with him, even the bios christians liked his kind behavior.

Mischief of Pir Qalicha

***Qazi Badruddin, Pir Qalicha and a jew** formed a new religion in which all muslims & non-muslims were brother. This movement spreaded very fast and thousands of peoples entered this religion and became a danger for the kingdom. Sultan **Mohammed crushed** this movement and killed the leaders. Thousands of followers were also killed and this mischief movement was washed away.*

6-Sultan Murad Sani bin Sultan Mohammed

824H-855H (1421-1451AD)=31 yrs.

Age:-49 yrs.

Birth:-806H.

Death:-855H. In Aderna, and buried in Barusa.

Capital:-Aderna

Kingdom:-Turkistan, Albania, Cities on the shore of Greece.

Qualities

He became Sultan at the age of 18 only, but he had full ability of rulership.

He observed justice, and implemented justice & peace in his kingdom.

He was broad hearted, kind, self confident, generous and very religious.

He was a kind & dignified king.

He built masjid, madrasa, rest houses & hospitals in every city.

He use to gift 2,500 golden coins to the pious persons of Makka, Madina & Baitul Muqaddas.

Battles & victories

***825H-Rulers of Anotolia & King of Qustuntunia** sent an army in the command of **Mustafa** to attack on **Murad**. **Murad** sent **Prime Minister Bayazeed Pasha**, but he was defeated and martyred, because the Turkish army betrayed **Bayazeed** and joined **Mustafa**.*

825H-Mustafa took the **Naval fleet of King of Qustuntunia** crossed **Danyal** to attack on **Murad**. **Murad** himself took the Turkish army defeated and arrested **Mustafa**. **Mustafa** was assassinated. This was the end of a betrayer.

826H-Murad attacked on **Kirmania** and Ameer **Kirmania** was killed. **Murad** handed over the Rulership to his son **Ibraheem** on payment of tax. All the **Ameer's of Anotolia** surrendered and started paying tax. **Ameer Qastumuni** handed over half of his territory and married his daughter to **Murad**.

831H-Ameer Kirmania died **Kirmania** came under **Usmania kingdom**.

832H-King of Qustuntunia-Menovail died his son **John Pleulogis** fearing **Murad's** attack requested for peace. **Murad** agreed on payment of 30,000 yearly. **King** also handed over the **Greece** cities on the bank of **River Strania** and on the shore of **Red sea**.

833H-Murad captured **Salunika**.

834H-Murad captured **Serbia**.

846H-Murad attacked on **Belgrade** but returned unsuccessful.

847H-General Fareed Pasha attacked on **Naharman Staut in Translunia**. **Honyad** ki 20,000 Turks, arrested **Fareed Pasha** and his son and killed them both. **Murad** sent 80,000 Turkish army under the command of **Shahabuddin**, but was defeated and **Shahabuddin** was arrested.

848H-Pope of Europe announced **Crusade war** and defeated the **Sultan army**. **Murad** made peace treaty with **Honyad**. **Serbia** was given back and no war pact was signed for 10 years.

Death of Prince Alauddin

Murad's eldest son **Prince Alauddin** died. **Murad** became so sad that he crowned his young son **Mohammed** of 14 years old, and secluded himself .

849H-King of Hungary broke the peace treaty and attacked on **Bulgaria under Usmania Kingdom**. **Murad** was forced to come out. **He** faced the Crusade army at **Darna** on the shore of **Black sea**. **Crusade army** flew away and **King of Hungary** was killed by a Turk. **Cardinal** was also killed by Turks. **Honyad** saved his life by running away from the battlefield. **Murad** again secluded himself.

849H-Inkisharia army revolted. **Murad** again had to come out. **He** crushed the revolt and moved towards **Moro in Greece**, sieged the **Fort Koranth** and captured it.

850H-Iskandar Buk rioted in **Albania**. **Murad** went and crushed the riot.

850H-Honyad came with a huge Crusade army. **Murad** defeated them badly. **Honyad** was wounded and died.

851H-Murad reattacked on **Albania** sieged **Iskandar Buk**. **He** agreed to pay tax and to be obedient.

Scholars

Allama Taftazani Ra.

7-Sultan Mohammed (Fateh) Sani bin Murad Sani

855H-886H (1451-1481AD)= 31 yrs.

Age:-55 yrs.

Birth:-831H.

Death:-886H. Qustuntunia(Istanbul).

Capital:-Qustuntunia.

Kingdom:-Turkistan, Qustuntunia, Cities of Europe on sea shore,Serbia, Bosnia, Mura & Roman Island.

Prime Minister:-Kadak Ahmed Pasha.

Qualities

He had good moral character, kind hearted but strict and hard on enemy.

He was brave, strong, swordsman.

He was expert in knowledge & techniques, and good religious scholar.

He could speak Arabic, Persian, Ibrani, Latin & Greece languages also.

He built several masjid & madaris in all the cities.

*He also opened a degree college for **Mufti & Qazi**, and prepared the syllabus himself.*

*His **Mufti & Qazi** was not only for teaching, but they were given command to fight in the battlefield.*

Battle & Victories

*855H-Tarabzun was taxed. Made peace treaty with **Honyad**.*

Victory of Qustuntunia/Costantinople/Istanbul.

*857H-Qustuntin XI was the last **Byzantine Ruler**.*

***Sultan** constructed a protection wall and big cannons were brought from **Hungary** which were pulled by 60 pairs of bulls. When the preparation was completed **Sultan** himself took 90,000 army and sent War Ships in the command of **Ameer Babta Oghli** to surround from sea side.*

***Pope** also prepared 90,000 Crusade army and sent in the command of **Cardinal Sedore**. It included the army of **Italy, Spain, Venus & Geneva**. **Geneva** also sent **John Jestinani** with two war ships. **France, Germany, Hungary & Poland** did not participated because they took lesson from the previous defeat.*

***Turkish Naval fleet** was defeated by the **Geneva war ship**. Seeing this **Sultan** prepared a path of wooden planks made slippery with fats on the hill between **Bosphorous and Seaport**, and 80 ships were pulled over the hill by bulls and brought in the seaport in one night. whole night the entire army was busy in worshipping and praying in front of **Almighty Allah**. Romans fought bravely but was defeated **Qaisar/Scissors Qustuntin** was killed. The city wall was broken by cannons and **Turkish army** rushed in the city. **Qustuntunia/Istanbul** was captured and the prediction of **Prophet SA** was fulfilled.*

***Sultan** entered **Qustuntunia** and when he reached at the door of the famous Church **Aya Suphia**, **azan** was called and **Zohar prayer** was offered, since then it was made **Jame Masjid**.*

***Sultan** gave all the religious facilities to the christians. Their churches were handed over to them.*

*The popes & saints were free from paying tax. The result was that the christians who left Qustuntunia returned back and most of them accepted **Islam**, seeing the good behavior of muslims.*

*The **Victory of Qustuntunia** was celebrated with joy and happiness throughout the muslim world. **Congratulations** came to **Sultan** from all over the muslim world.*

***Sultan** first of all constructed a beautiful **Jame masjid at the tomb of Abu Ayub Ansari RA**. **Qustuntunia** was made the **Capital of Usmania kingdom**. All the **Sultan's** were now crowned in **Qustuntunia**.*

*859H-Sultan took over **Serbia** on the death of **King of Serbia**.*

*860H-Sultan fought with **General Honyad** 24,000 Turks were martyred **Sultan** was also wounded and came back without success. **Honyad** was also wounded and later on died.*

*863H-Sultan attacked on **Mura** and captured it. Then captured **Bosnia. Trabzone & Isfandyar** was also captured in **Asia**.*

*After these victories **Sultan** prepared a great strong **Naval fleet** which was better than all the fleets even better than **Geneva & Venus fleets**.*

*881H-Hassan Ozone revolted and captured from **Frat to Umudar**. **Sultan** himself went to **Azarbaijan** and defeated **Hassan Ozone**.*

*883H-Sultan captured **Fort Karvia & Ashqudra of Albania**.*

*883H-Sultan sent an army to **Hungary** they captured **Transilvania in Hungary**. **Count Cats** came and defeated the **Turks, thousands of Turks** were martyred, and hundreds were arrested. They killed the prisoners and spread sheets on the dead bodies and ate food. This was the barbarism of the christians, and still they are called civilized.*

*884H-Prime Minister **Kadak Ahmed Pasha** was sent to the **Islands of Roman sea**. He captured **Otrant** and came back.*

885H-Sultan sent a **Naval fleet to Rhodes Island** to crush the **corrupt adulterator Saints** always exiting for Crusade war. For 3 months they sieged the Island, but had to come back without any result.

8-Sultan Bayazeed Sani bin Mohammed Fateh

886H-918H (1481-1512AD)= 32 yrs.

Age:-52 yrs.

Birth:-866H.

Death:-918H.

Kingdom:-

Prime Minister:-Ali Pasha

Qualities

He was well mannered, brave, pious & scholar loving.

Revolt by Ameer Cham

Ameer Cham brother of Sultan Bayazeed revolted and captured **Barusa**. **Sultan** sent **Inkishari** army. They crushed the revolt. **Ameer Cham** flew away to Rhodes Island.

Pope Nosan VIII wrote to **Sultan**, if you give 300,000 Dok I will slaughter Ameer Cham. This was the character of the **Pope**.

King of France-Charles VIII with the intention to capture **Qustuntunia** sieged **Rome** and tried to take **Ameer Cham**. **Pope** poisoned him and sent his body to **Astana**. He was buried in **Barusa**.

Sultan Mohammed Fateh captured entire **Balqan**. **Only Belgrade** was left which was with **Hungary**. **Bayazeed** tried to capture it but could not.

Egypt

893H-King of Egypt captured **Tarsus & Aderna**. **Sultan** collected the army to attack on Egypt but they agreed for peace.

Iran

Hassan Ozone died and **Shah Ismaeel Safvi** established **Shiyee kingdom in Iran**. **Shah Qaul shiyee** started propagating shiyaism in **Anotolia**. **Ameer Anotolia** turned him out.

Shah Qaul reached **Kotahia** and started propagating shiyaism. **Prime Minister Ali Pasha** fought bravely crushed the wretchedness and both **Shah Qaul & Prime Minister** died.

Relation with Europe

Europe was afraid of Usmania kingdom so now they started sending delegates for having good relations.

897H-First Russian ambassador came from Moscow with gifts and trade pact was signed.

Bolunia State also signed agreement regarding **Baghdan**.

Duke Milano of Florence & Pope Alexander VI made relations so as to take help of Land & Naval force of **Sultan**.

Victories in Europe

Turkish Naval force attacked on **Greece Islands** and took away from **Venus**. **Turks** also captured **Rhode Stowe**. Ultimately **Venus** requested for peace treaty which was agreed.

9-Sultan Saleem Awal bin Bayazeed Sani

918H-926H (1512-1520AD)= 8 yrs.

Age:-54 yrs.

Birth:-872H.

Death:-926H.

Prime Minister

918H-Younus Pasha:-Killed in 923H because of not supporting attack on Egypt.

923H-Pir Mohammed Pasha.

Kingdom:-Turkistan, Anotolia, Qustuntunia, Cyprus Cities of Europe on Sea shore, Siberia, Bosnia, Iraq,Sham, Palastine & Egypt.

Qualities

He was intellectual, brave, courageous & awful.

He had a dignified personality and was a best administrator

He was a good scholar and established religious schools, colleges & universities.

Fight with Brothers

*The 2 brothers attacked on **Saleem** to snatch his kingdom. **Saleem** defeated them badly and killed them.*

Shah Ismaeel Safvi(Shiya)of Iran

*He captured **Sarwan, Tabrez, Khurasan, Dyar Bakr & Iraq**. His intention was to overthrow **Usmania** kingdom and establish Shiya kingdom. He made pact with Egypt to fight with **Turks**. He started making shiya by force in **Anotolia**, and openly abusing **Sahaba RA**.*

***Sultan** heard this news and became furious, and sent the army to **Anotolia** who killed 40,000 shiya exploiters.*

*920H-Sultan attacked on **Iran** defeated and gave lesson to **Ismaeel Safvi shiya**. **Sultan** stayed in **Tabrez** for 3 months and sent **Mulla Idrees the famous scholar** to capture **Dyar bakr**. **Idrees** captured **Dyar bakr**.*

*921H-Ameer of **Zulqadria State** was always creating problem for the Turkish army, he was arrested and his head was cut off and sent to his master **Sultan Ghauri of Egypt**. Then **Sultan Saleem** name was read in the **Khutba/Friday prayer in Zulqadria**.*

*922H-Sultan attacked on **Egypt**. **Sultan Ghauri of Egypt** fell down from the horse and died, and the Egyptian army flew away.*

*923H-Sultan **Saleem** capturing **Sham & Palastine** reached **Egypt**. **Sultan Tuman bai of Egypt** defended but was arrested and hanged. **Egypt** was captured. **Sultan Saleem** stayed in **Qahira/Cairo** for a month, and participated in changing the cover of **Kaba**. **Shareef Makka** congratulated on victory of **Egypt**. **Sultan Saleem** adopted the title of **KHADIMUL HARMAIN SHAREEFAIN**.*

***Sultan** stayed in **Damishq/Damascus** for a month, constructed Jame Masjid at the tomb of **Ibne Arabi**.*

*924H-Sultan **Saleem** took the last **Abbasi Khalifa Motawakal Alallah** with him from **Egypt** to **Qustuntunia**. **Khalifa Abbasi** collected all the **Scholars & leaders in Usmania** kingdom at **Jame Aya Suphia** and handed over the **Usmani flag, Sword & Mosalla of Prophet SA** to **Sultan Saleem** and honoured him with the **Islamic Khilafat**. Like this the **Islamic Khilafat** came to **Family of Usman**.*

*925H-Algeria & Tripoli came under **Usmania** kingdom.*

10-Sultan Sulaiman Azam bin Saleem Sani

926H-974H (1520-1567AD)=48 yrs.

Age:-74 yrs.

Birth:-900H.

Death:-974H.

Prime Minister

Kingdom

Balqan, Hijaz, Yemen, Iraq, Sham, Palastine, Egypt, Tripoli, Tunis, Algeria, Turkistan, Balqan, Siberia, Bosnia, Tabrez, Karimia, Hungary, Rhodes Island,

Qualities

He was brave, courageous, kind, humble & honoured the scholars.

Revolt in Sham

*927H-Ameer **Ghazali of Sham** revolted. **Farhad Pasha** crushed the revolt. Arrested **Ameer Ghazali** cut off his head and sent to **Qustuntunia**.*

Battles & Victories

*927H-Sultan **Sulaiman** sent his messenger to **King of Hungary** for collecting tax. He killed the messenger. **Sultan** attacked and captured **Belgrade**. Now entire **Balqan** was captured.*

928H-Sultan captured Rhodes Island.

929H-Sultan captured Karimia.

930H-Sultan attacked with 100,000 army and 300 cannons on King of Sharlkan and captured Hungary.

930H-Sharlkan made his brother Ferdinand, King of Austria. He attacked on Hungary and captured the Capital Budeen/Budapest. Sultan attacked with 150,000 army and recaptured Budapest. Sultan advanced to Austria and sieged Vienna but because of extreme cold weather had to return back. This was the last point in Europe where Turkish army reached.

940H-King Tahmasip s/o Ismaeel Safvi attacked and captured Tabrez. Sultan reattacked defeated Tahmasip and recaptured Tabrez. Then he advanced and captured Baghdad. Sultan stayed for few days and repaired the Tomb of Abu Hanifa Ra & Abdul QadirJilani Ra.

941H-Barbarusa Khairuddin Pasha who was ruling on a portion of Algeria requested to include his territory in Usmania kingdom. Sultan accepted it and made Barbarusa - Admiral of Usmania Fleet.

942H-Andra duria a famous Admiral of Sharlkan Naval fleet attacked on Tunis and destroyed it. Sultan sent Barbarusa. He defeated Andra dura and obtained huge booty from there.

942H-Bahadur Shah Gujrati asked help from Sultan against Portugees who were attacking and destroying muslim population. Sultan sent Sulaiman Pasha-Ruler of Egypt with 75 Naval ships carrying 20,000 army and huge cannons. First of all they captured Aden then they destroyed the Portugees forts at Gujrat shore. While returning back they captured Yemen.

943H-Barbarusa Pasha captured Crete Island etc.

Now Sultani Fleet was biggest fleet, even bigger than Spanish fleet.

944H-France made trade pact with Sultan.

953H-Barbarusa died and Turghud Pasha was made the Admiral.

954H-King of Sharlkan also made peace treaty with Sultan and agreed to pay 30,000 Ashrafi tax per year.

965H-Shah Tahmasip was again defeated. He handed over Fort Qurs and made peace treaty.

966H-Admiral Turghud Pasha sieged Malta and was martyred.

11-Sultan Saleem Sani bin Sulaiman

974H-982H (1567-1575AD)=8 yrs.

Age:-52 yrs.

Birth:-930H.

Death:-982H.

Prime Minister:-Mohammed Pasha Aaqil.

Kingdom:-Same

Qualities

He was incapable of ruling. Prime Minister managed to maintain the Grace of the kingdom.

Agreements

Trade pact with France was revived due to which the christian Turks were influenced by France which later became problem for Usmania kingdom.

Revolt in Yemen

976H-Imam Zaydia Muttahir bin Sharfuddin revolted in Yemen. Prime Minister gave the Rulership of Yemen to Usman Pasha and sent him with a huge army to attack on Yemen. Sanan Pasha- Ruler of Egypt was also ordered to help him. Imam Yemen was defeated and peace treaty was signed.

978H-Lala Mustafa with 100,000 Naval force attacked on Qibris/Cyprus and captured it. Cyprus remained under Usmania kingdom untill 1304H.

980H-Lala Mustafa attacked on Crete & Shore of Adriatic sea by the Naval force of 255 ships. 75 ships of Spain, 145 of Venus, 12 of Europe & 9 of the wretched Saints of Malta

jointly attacked and 135 muslim ships were drowned the rest were arrested. 20,000 Turks were martyred and 30,000 were arrested. All the **Europe** enjoyed with happiness the defeat of Turks. **980H-Prime Minister Mohammed Pasha** within 6 months built 250 war ships and again the superiority of **Turks** was on the **Roman Sea**.

981H-Dawn John captured **Tunis** by the **Spanish fleet**. **Qaleech Ali Pasha** with **Turkish Fleet** defeated them and turned them out of **Tunis**.

12-Sultan Murad Khan Salis bin Saleem

982H-1003H (1575-1595AD)=21 yrs.

Age:-50 yrs.

Birth:-953H.

Death:-1003H.

First of all he killed all his 5 brothers.

Prime Minister

1-Mohammed Pasha

2-Sinan Pasha

Kingdom:-Same

Qualities

He was busy in enjoying songs & dance, and the women started interfering in the kingdom.

He left 25 sons and 27 daughters at death.

Incidence

Wine became common in the army because of interaction with christians.

983H-King of Bulunio left for **France**. **Ruler of Transilvania** became the Ruler of Bulunio also, like this both the country came under **Usmania kingdom**.

France, Venus & England made trade pact with **Turks**. **Queen Elizabeth** took special permission to use their flags on their ships while in **Bay of Rome**.

986H-Sultan of Morocco died, his son **Mohammed Mustansir** and his brother **Shareef Abdul Malik** fought for the kingdom. **Mustansir** took help from **Portugal & Shareef** took help from **Usmania kingdom**. **Prime Minister** ordered **Ramzan Pasha- Ruler of Algeria** to attack. **He** defeated the **Portugees**, both **King of Portugal & Mustansir** alongwith 20,000 army were killed. **Abdul Malik Sani** became the **Ruler of Morocco** under **Usmania Kingdom**.

988H-Irani's again started fighting. **Turkish army** captured **Tiflis, Shamakhi till Qafqaz/Caucasus**. **Usman Pasha** captured **Garjistan**. **Farhad Pasha** captured **Tabrez & Shurwan**.

990H-Prime Minister Sanan Pasha crushed the revolt in **Romania & Transilvania** but they again attacked and pushed them back in **River Danube** till **Nicopoli**.

13-Sultan Mohammed Salis bin Murad

1003H-1012H (1595-1604AD)=9 yrs.

Age:-38 yrs.

Birth:-974H.

Death:-1012H.

First of all killed his 19 brothers and buried them alongwith his father.

Payed the debts of his father Murad, because he was extravagant in spending.

Qualities

He was brave and courageous having the ability of rulership.

Incidence

Corruption in the kingdom started. All over riots & revolts were rising. The army was being defeated everywhere.

He himself took the command and fought bravely. **He** captured **Ghaneem, Fort Arloo**.

He crushed the revolt of **Anotolia** after a long fight.

Shah Abbas(shiya) captured **Tabrez**. **Ameer Trabzone Hassan Pasha** was sent to deal with.

14-Sultan Ahmed Awal bin Mohammed Salis**1012H-1026H (1604-1617AD)= 14 yrs.****Age:-28 yrs.****Birth:-998H.****Death:-1026H.****Sultan took over power at the age of 14 only, and the kingdom was in a very bad situation.****Prime Minister:-Murad Shah of 85 yrs. Age.****Qualities****Incidence****On Iran border Shah Abbas was advancing.****On Western border Austrian army was advancing.****On Eastern territory revolts were happening, in the leadership of John Polad & Fakhruddin.****Prime Minister gave the Rulership of Angora to the biggest revolter Qalandar Oghli, due to which the unity of revolters shattered. Fakhruddin flew away to Sham, and John Polad was pardoned and gave the rulership of Tamswar.****Yousuf Pasha who revolted in Saru Khan, Mushta & Aydeen was defeated and killed. Peace came in the kingdom.****Sanan Pasha defeated Shah Abbas. He requested for peace treaty which was accepted.****Shah Abbas died and Nasu Pasha made new agreement.****1015H-Mohammed Pasha fought with Austria, ultimately Austria handed over Hungary and peace treaty was signed.****1019H-Holland made trade pact with Usmania kingdom. Tobacco was introduced by this trade.****Mufti Azam gave Fatwa of its being Haram/Unlawful, but the army was addicted, so it could not be stopped.****1021H-Prime Minister collected the Turkish fleet in Bay of Rome due to the fear of Malta Spain & Italy, due to which Russian fleet started rioting in Black Sea. Sultan killed the Prime Minister in punishment.****15-Sultan Mustafa Awal bin Mohammed Salis****1026H = 3 months****1031H-1032H (1622-1623AD)= 1 yr.****Age:-****Birth:-****Death:-1032H.****Prime Minister:-Daud Pasha was killed by Inkisharia army.****His period of 18 months was full of riots, killing, looting and disturbance in the kingdom.****Yousuf Pasha-Ruler of Tripoli-Sham declared independence and formed his own government.****Abaza Pasha-captured Siwas & Angora and formed his independent government.****Prime Minister Kamankash Pasha controlled the situation, threw down Mustafa and brought Murad on throne.****16-Sultan Usman Khan Sani bin Ahmed Awal****1027H-1031H (1618-1622AD)= 4 yrs.****Age:-18 yrs.****Birth:-1013H.****Death:-1031H.**

First of all he killed his brother.

Ameer of Bulunia started creating problems. **Usman** attacked on **Bulunian** but was defeated 30,000 **Turks** were martyred. **Inkisharia army** refused to fight. **Usman** tried to form a new army but could not succeed.

Inkisharia army became more strong, they revolted killed **Usman** and brought back **Mustafa**.

17-Sultan Murad Rabe bin Ahmed

1032H-1049H (1623-1639AD)= 17 yrs.

Age:-31 yrs.

Birth:-1018H.

Death:-1049H.

Prime Minister:-

Qualities

He was brave, courageous and had administrative control.

1032H-Bakeer Agha killed Ruler of Baghdad and formed independent government. **Hafiz Pasha** was sent to crush the revolt. **Bakeer** took help from **Shah Abbas of Iran**, and at the same time let enter the **Turkish army**. **Bakeer** betrayed the **Turkish army**, so they had to leave Iran.

Shah Abbas entered **Baghdad** and killed **Bakeer**. This was the result of his treachery.

1038H-Turkish commander **Khusru Pasha** attacked **Hamdan** defeated the **Iranian army**. Then sieged **Baghdad** but **Inkisharia army** again refused to fight.

Inkisharia became so disobedient that they killed **Prime Minister** in front of **Sultan**.

Sultan became furious and took the control in his own hand.

1045H-Sultan himself took **Inkisharia** and captured **Ariwan & Tabrez**.

1046H-Recaptured **Baghdad**. **Iranians** requested **Turkish Sultan** to give back **Ariwan** and they will leave **Baghdad** under **Sultan** control. This was agreed and a long dispute was solved.

1048H-Sultan crushed the revolt in **Bulunian**. His victories would have continued but his life did not allow.

18-Sultan Ibraheem Khan bin Ahmed Awal

1049H-1053H (1639-1643AD)=4 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-1053H.

He was busy in lust & luxuries of the world.

1051H-Yousuf Pasha captured crete.

Inkisharia again became strong and overthrew **Ibraheem** and brought his 7 years old son in power.

People tried to bring him back but **Inkisharia** killed him.

19-Sultan Mohammed Rabe bin Ibraheem

1053H-1099H (1643-1688AD)=46 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-1046H.

Death:-

He was brought in power at the age of 7 only.

Inkisharia became more strong, looting & killing became common in the kingdom. Armed & Naval forces became weak. Naval fleets were defeated at different places. Enemy took over the Islands.

Qualities

He was fond of roaming & hunting and didn't take interest in kingdom affairs.

Prime Minister

Mohammed Pasha Koprili of 95 years age was brought in power. He died in 1072H.

Ahmed Pasha Koprili-Son of Mohammed Pasha Koprili.

He killed the leaders of **Inkisharia** and controlled them.

He killed the **Roman Batreek**.

He strengthened the **Naval fleet**, and within one year defeated the Naval fleet of **Venus**, and turned them out of sea, and recaptured all the Islands.

Transilvania & Romania were compelled to pay tax.

1072H-Koprili died. His son Ahmed Pasha Koprili was made Prime Minister. He was also brave, courageous & talented administrator.

1072H-Russian Qawaziq came under control.

1082H-Ahmed Pasha with Sultan attacked on **Bulunia** and took back **Ukraine**.

1087H-After 15 years of successful ruling Ahmed Pasha died.

1088H-Roman Pope, Russia & Europe jointly decided to turn out **Usmani's** from **Europe**.

Austria took back **Hungary**. **Venus** took back **Mura**.

1099H-He was overthrown and his brother **Sulaiman** was brought in power.

20-Sultan Sulaiman Sani bin Sultan Ibraheem

1099H-1102H (1688-1691AD)= 3 yrs.

Age:-50 yrs.

Birth:-1052H.

Death:-1102H.

Inkisharia again started looting & killing the general public.

Austrian army took benefit of internal riots & disturbances and captured **Belgrade**.

Sultan brought **Mustafa** the grandson of **Koprili** as **Prije Minister**.

Mustafa took control of the army and recaptured the lost territories.

Mustafa brought back the lost grace, honour & dignity of the kingdom.

21-Sultan Ahmed Sani bin Ibraheem

1102H-1106H (1691-1695AD)=4 yrs.

Age:-53 yrs.

Birth:-1053H.

Death:-1106H.

Prime Minister

Mustafa Koprili:-Died in 1103H.

Urbaji Pasha:-

Venus & Russia both were attacking to take back their territories from **Usmania** kingdom.

22-Sultan Mustafa Sani bin Mohammed Rabe

1106H-1115H (1695-1704AD)= 9 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-1074H

Death:-

Prime Minister

Hussain Pasha.

Mustafa Pasha.

Rami Pasha.

Battles

1106H-Sultan Mustafa made the attack of **Great Peter of Russia** unsuccessful. Then attacked on **Hungary** and captured **Fort Lepa**. Then defeated Commander of **General Fitrifi of Hungary** and killed 6,000 of his army.

1107H-Got victory on **Austria**. But **Commander Ogeen of Austria** defeated the **Turkish army** and killed many of them. Prime Minister **Almas Pasha** was also killed. **Sultan** managed to escape. **Ogeen** captured **Bosnia**.

1108H-Prime Minister Hussain Pasha Koprili stopped the advancement of **Austria** and recaptured **Bosnia**.

1108H-Turkish Admiral recaptured **Rhodes Island** from **Venus**.

Roftash Pact

1115H-Usmania kingdom had to leave Hungary & Transylvania for **Austria**. Ukraine for **Bulunia**.

Azaq for **Russia**. Mura & Dalmasia for **Venus**.

1115H-Due to the conflict between Inkisharia & Shaikhul Islam, Sultan Mustafa was dismissed and his brother **Ahmed** was brought in power.

23-Sultan Ahmed Salis bin Mohammed Rabe

1115H-1143H (1704-1731AD)=28 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-1083H.

Death:-

Prime Minister

Hassan Pasha

Mohammed Pasha

Yousuf Pasha

Ali Pasha

Qualities

Sultan was fond of play, songs, music and dances.

Reforms

Hassan opened many madaris, supported the scholars.

Hassan developed Ship Building Industry.

Sultan Ahmed made the first printing press in **Usmania kingdom**.

Great Peter

Peter of Zar Russia gave proposal to his country to be close to **India & Qustuntunia**, because those who will have the treasure of **India** he will not be dependent on the world, and those who will capture **Qustuntunia** will rule on the whole world. For this purpose he attacked on **Charles XII of Sweden**.

1123H-Mohammed Pasha sieged **Great Peter & Queen Catherine** the in **Fort besde River Prute**. The **Queen** sent her jewelry & jewels on which he lifted the siege.

Sultan dismissed **Mohammed Pasha** and **Yousuf Pasha** was made **Prime Minister**. He made peace treaty with **Peter**, but after few months **Peter** did not fulfill the treaty due to which battle started. **Holland & England** in the interest of their trade interfered and peace treaty was arranged.

1127H-Monty Negro revolted with the help of **Venus**. **Prime Minister Ali Pasha** attended and captured all the **Usmania** territories. **Venus** with the help of **France & Austria** defeated and killed **Ali Pasha**. **England & Fleming** interfered, peace was arranged and **Turkey** had to give back **Belgrade & Serbia**.

1128H-Ibraheem Pasha was made Prime Minister. He made a grandeur palace, luxurious gardens at the shore of **Bosphorous** and daily music and dance show was arranged in which **Sultan** also participated.

Incidence of Iran

Mir Ashraf of Turkish army captured **Arminia & Garjistan**.

Shah Tahmasip came with **Nadir Khan** and defeated **Meer Ashraf** sat on the throne and captured **Tabrez**.

Leaders of Inkisharia killed the **Prime Minister** dismissed the **Sultan** and brought his nephew **Mahmood** on throne.

24-Sultan Mahmood Awal bin Mustafa Sani

1143H-1168H (1731-1755AD)=25 yrs.

Age:-60 yrs.

Birth:-1108H.

Death:-1168H.

Prime Minister

Tubal Usman Pasha.

Qualities

Sultan was brave, courageous, kind hearted, generous & well mannered.

Battles

1149H-Nadir Shah of Iran attacked on **Baghdad**. **Tubal Usman Pasha** was killed. **Nadir** defeated the **Turks at Musal**. Peace was made between the two kingdoms and **Iran territory** was marked.

1153H-Russia & Austria attacked on **Usmanian territories**. **Ali Pasha-Ruler of Bosnia and Karprali Pasha** defeated and killed the Russian. **Ali Pasha** captured Belgrade. **Prime Minister Yakun Pasha** also killed the **Russians**. **Khan Karimia & Usman Pasha** also killed the **Russians**. **French ambassador intervened** and peace treaty was signed. **Austria & Russia** handed over **Belgrade & Azaq** respectively to **Turkey**. Moreover **Russia** was not allowed to keep war ships in **Black Sea**.

1154H-King of France on the death of **King of Austria** attacked on **Austria**, and asked the **Sultan** for help, but the **Sultan** did not pay any attention which later resulted problems from **Russia**

1156H-Nadir Shah attacked on **Baghdad** defeated the **Turkish army**, but. **Sultan** managed to protect the **Usmanian territory**. **Nadir Shah** requested **Sultan Mahmood** to accept the fifth sect of **Fiqah Jafria** and allow fifth **Musalla of Fiqah Jafria at Kaaba**, but he totally refused.

Reforms

Sultan for 9 years paid attention on the internal development.

Sultan had interest in religious knowledge so he made grandeur libraries in **Jame Aya Suphia & Jame Masjid Fateh**.

Sultan made several **madaris** and libraries and made a **Jame Noor-e-Usmania**

25-Sultan Usman Salis bin Mustafa Sani

1168H-1171H (1755-1758AD)=3 yrs.

Age:-61 yrs.

Birth:-1110H.

Death:-1171H.

Prime Minister

7 Prime Ministers in 3 years. Last was **Mohammed Raghieb Pasha**.

Qualities

Sultan was fond of Chess, play & songs.

Sultan looked after the welfare of the public.

Too many fire accidents happened in his time.

Sultan liked animals and horses too much once his horse died. He built a grave for it.

Sultan was ill mannered.

26-Sultan Mustafa Salis bin Ahmed Salis

1171H-1187H (1758-1773AD)=16 yrs.

Age:-59 yrs.

Birth:-1128H.

Death:-1187H.

Prime Minister

Raghib Pasha:- He organized the kingdom and made development internally. Built madaris & libraries in different places.

Qualities

Sultan was greedy and miser but in the **Battle with Russia** he spent all his savings.

He constructed a mosque on the grave of his mother.

He repaired the **Jame Mohammed Fateh**.

Incidence of Russia

1183H-Russians improved their Naval force, equipped it with latest arms & ammunitions.

Russia with the help of **Austria & Urosia** attacked on **Usmanian territories** and captured upto **Romania**. Then they crossed **Baltic Ocean** and along the Western coast anchored at **Port Crown of Greece**. People of **Mura** revolted on the initiative of **Russia**, but they were crushed by **Turkish army**.

Turkish fleet defeated the **Russian fleet** but their two **Torpedo ships** managed to enter **Gulf of Chashma**, and destroyed the **Turkish Fleet**.

Russian Admiral Elphinston captured **Lamnoose Island** and made it the **Naval Force Center**.

to attack on **Qustuntunia**.

Turkish Naval Force development

A commander of Hungary under **Usmania kingdom** strengthened the Forts at **Danyal Valley**.

Installed it with heavy guns and equipped the merchant ships with mortar guns converting to war ships. A factory of mortar guns and war ships started heavy production. A modern college started giving training to the **Turks** from where large number of **Turks** came out fully trained. Amongst them was **Admiral Qabudan Hassan Buk** who defeated the **Russian admiral** badly and turned him out of **Lamnoose Island**.

Treachery of Ameer Saleem

Russian's trapped **Ameer Saleem** who was under **Usmania kingdom**. **Russian's** captured **Karimia** and did not fulfill the promise made to **Ameer Saleem**. **Russian's** reached upto **Balqan**.

Turks faced the **Russian's** bravely and did not give up.

Revolt in Egypt

Ali Buk Ruler of Egypt revolted on the incentive of **Russia**, he captured **Sham** and he wanted to attack on **Anotolia** but **Ameer Mohammed Buk** defeated **Ali Buk** arrested the **Russian officers**, cut off their heads and sent to **Sultan** in **Qustuntunia**.

27-Sultan Abdul Hameed Awal bin Ahmed Salis

1187H-1203H (1773-1789AD) = 16 yrs.

Age:-66 yrs.

Birth:-1137H.

Death:-1203H.

Prime Minister

Khaleel Pasha.

Khwaja Yousuf Pasha.

Qualities

Sultan was kind hearted but unaware of politics and unable to rule the kingdom.

Peace treaty

1188H-Prime Minister made peace treaty with **Russian Field Marshal Romanzof** and **Turkey** handed over **Garjistan & Charkas to Russia**. **Karimia** was made an independent country.

Incidence

Karim Khan who occupied **Iran** attacked on **Baghdad** and captured **Basra**.

Ruler of Baghdad Sulaiman Pasha fought bravely and turned **Karim Khan** out of **Basra**.

1198H-Russia captured **Karimia**.

1201H-Russia & Austria attacked simultaneously. **Prime Minister Khwaja Yousuf** fought bravely and defeated **Austria**, and arrested 50,000 **Austrian**, and killed thousands of them. On the other hand **Russia** defeated **Turkish army**.

28-Sultan Saleem Salis bin Mustafa Salis

1203H-1222H (1789-1807AD)= 19 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:- 1175H.

Death:-

Prime Minister

Shareef Hussain Pasha

Qualities

Sultan was brave, kind hearted & knowledgeable, but weak in decision making.

Incidence

1205H-Austria made pact with **Turkey**, and returned **Belgrade & Serbia**.

1206H-Russia made pact with **Turkey**, with the help of **England**, and **Turkey** gave up **Karimia & Besribia** to **Russia**.

1213H-France attacked with 36,000 army under command of **Nepolian Bonapaart** and captured **Malta** and sieged **Iskandria** and defeated **Ibraheem Buk & Murad Buk**.

1213H-Turkish Naval Force army alongwith England & Russia defeated **France**.

Nepolian flew away to **Cairo**.

1215H-Nepolian was defeated and he left **Egypt**.

1216H-Nepolian said to **Sultan** that **Russia** has captured **Greece Islands** and **England** has captured **Egypt** which is dangerous for you. So if you develop relations with **France** you can come out from danger. Therefore new pact was made with **France**, according to which the territory between **Egypt & Greece Islands** was accepted under **Usmania Kingdom**.

1220H-Russia & England brought their Naval Fleet and asked for developing relations. On refusal by **Sultan** they attacked on **Gelipoli** and sieged **Iskandria**. **Ruler of Egypt**

Mohammed Ali Pasha with wisdom and tactics made **both the fleets** to retreat with disgrace.

Reforms

Sultan got time for reforms within the kingdom. **He** prepared an army of 12,000 on modern style.

Developed huge **Mortar Gun & Ship Industry**. Established modern **Military College** for army training.

29-Sultan Mustafa Rabe bin Abdul Hameed Awal

1222H-1223H (1807-1808AD)= 1 yr.

Age:- 30 yrs.

Birth:- 1193H.

Death:- 1223H.

Prime Minister

Hilmi Ibraheem Pasha.

Qualities

Incidence

As soon as Mustafa came in power he abolished the rules enforced by **Sultan Saleem**.

Inkisharia became happy but **Prime Minister Hilmi** became sad. **Inkisharia** killed **Hilmi**.

1222H-France & Russia wanted to attack on **Usmania kingdom** and distribute the **occupied European territories** amongst each other, but fight between **France & Russia** started.

Russia was defeated, so he made pact with **Usmania kingdom**.

1223H-Army Generals wanted to dismiss **Mustafa** and bring back **Sultan Saleem**, but the guards of the palace killed **Saleem**. So **Mahmood** brother of **Mustafa** was brought on throne.

30-Sultan Mahmood Sani bin Abdul Hameed Awal

1223H-1255H (1808-1839AD)= 32 yrs.

Age:-55 yrs.

Birth:-1200H.

Death:-1255H. In Astana.

Prime Minister

Alamdard Mustafa.

Qualities

Sultan had good moral character. He was brave and kind, but his ministers and army leaders did not supported him in spite of that he tried his best to save the **kingdom**.

He observed justice.

He introduced western dress and Tarbush/Turkish cap.

People of every religion were wearing the same European dress due to which it was difficult to differentiate between muslims and non-muslims.

Teaching of every religion started.

First Turkish language Newspaper started in 1839AD.

Hospitals, clinics & Medical College was opened, where surgery was particularly taught.

1830AD- Slavery & selling of women was stopped.

Incidence

Inkisharia killed the **Prime Minister** and wanted to bring back in power **Sultan Mustafa**.

Therefore **Sultan Mahmood** killed **Mustafa**.

1224H-Russia attacked and came inside **Usmania territories** upto **Bulgaria**. Therefore **Usmania kingdom** made pact with **Russia** and gave up the forts of **Bandar, Kelly, Khuneen & Aaq. River Prut** became the border between **Usmania kingdom & Russia**.

Shaikh Mohammed bin Abdul Wahab Najadi

Age:-76 yrs.

Birth:-1102H - 1691AD. In Aya near Najad.

Death:-1178H - 1765AD.

Teachings & Reforms

The condition of arabs in **Najad** became worst socially, economically and from religious point of view. So **Shaikh** after completing his religious studies from **Shaikh Abdullah bin Ibraheem in Madina**, returned back and started teaching in **Aynia-Najad**. His teaching was on **Unity of Almighty Allah**. His followers increased in large number.

Ameer Mohammed Ibne Saud-Chief of Arab tribe of Najad also became the follower of the **Shaikh**.

1118H-1707AD. All the Arab tribes in Riyadh and its surrounding became the follower of the Shaikh.

1178H-1765AD. Shaikh & Ameer Mohammed bin Saud died. His son Abdul Aziz became the Ameer. He was brave, he collected the Arabs and started attacks on Iraq. Prince Saud s/o Abdul Aziz wanted to capture Turkish kingdom.

1216H-1802AD. Prince Saud prepared 30,000 army and attacked on Najaf Ashraf & Karbala defeated the Ruler and took away the treasures.

1217H-1803AD.- Ameer Abdul Aziz was killed by an Iranian. His son Saud became Ameer.

1218H-1804AD.- Ameer Saud captured Makka & Madina and took away the treasures and took away the gold plates on the Tomb of Prophet SA. This was all done in the name of Islam.- Ultimately the Najadi army captured entire Arab except Yemen & Hazar Maut.

1224H-1809AD.- Ameer Saud with 6,000 army captured Sham.

1226H-1811AD.- Sultan Mahmood sent Mohammed Ali Pasha-Ruler of Egypt to deal with the Najadi Army, but in the life time of Ameer Saud could not succeed.

1229H-1814AD.- Ameer Saud died, his son Abdullah became Ameer.

1230H-1815AD.- Mohammed Ali Pasha sent his son Ibraheem Pasha. He defeated Abdullah bin Saud by mortar gun attacks, arrested him and sent to Qustuntunia, where he was assassinated.

Revolt in Greece

People of **Greece** revolted for independence. **Ibraheem Pasha** went and crushed the revolt.

End of Inkisharia

Inkisharia revolted and sieged the Palace. **Sultan Mahmood** collected the muslims and fought against the Inkisharia and killed them alongwith their leaders in the field of **Juwai**. After 300 years

Inkisharia were finished because of their mischief.

Independence of Greece

People of **Greece** again started independence movement. **Russia** supported them and drowned all the ships anchored at the port of **Saqar Island**, in which 3,000 Turks were martyred.

Ultimately **Greece** was given independence by **Usmania kingdom** on condition to pay 500,000 Qarsh yearly to **Usmania kingdom**.

Russia captured Serbia

1243H-Russia attacked on **Serbia**, and **Qustuntunia** became in danger. **European** interfered and brought peace by giving up **Siberia to Russia**.

France captured Algeria

1246H-France captured **Algeria**, but **Usmania kingdom** could not do anything because of its weakness. **Syed Abdul Qadir leader of National Liberation Front** fought for 17 years but failed.

Battle of Egypt

Mohammed Ali Pasha sent his son **Ibraheem Pasha**. He captured several cities of **Sham**. **Sultan Mahmood** had to take help of **Russia**. **Turkish army** with the help of **Russia** defeated **Ibraheem Pasha**, and it was agreed that **Mohammed Ali Pasha** will be **Ruler Egypt, Sham & Halab**. And **Ibraheem Pasha** will be **Ruler of Crete Island**.

2-Khilafat-e-Usmania-Contd.31-Sultan Abdul Majeed Awal bin Mahmood Sani

1255H-1277H (1839-1861AD)=22 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-1277H.

Prime Minister

Rasheed Pasha

Qualities

Incidence

-**Sultan** sent **Hafiz Pasha** to stop **Mohammed Ali Pasha** from increasing arms & ammunition, but **Ibraheem Pasha** defeated him. Seeing this condition **Sultan** made pact with **England, Prushia & Russia**, and confined **Mohammed Ali Pasha** as **Ruler of Egypt only**.

1270H-Russia sent forces in **Romania** and drowned the **Usmanian ships in Sinoop**.

-**Turkish** united **France & Italy** and defeated **Russia at Sabastupole**.

1271-73H:-**Peace talk** was held in **France** and **Europe** decided to give **Sabastupole to Russia and Fort Qars to Turkey**. **Gulf of Danyal** was closed for all the **Naval fleets**.

Usmania Kingdom was accepted as a **Civilized Western Kingdom**.

-**Daruzi & Christian** fought in **Lebanon**. **Europe** jumped in the support of christians. **Sultan** sent **Fawad Pasha** and it was decided to appoint one representative from each group.

1259H-1843AD:-**Fortunes of Saud family restored by Faisal**.

Reforms

Sultan made judicial rights equal for every nation, and stopped cruelty on weak.

Organized the Land & Naval forces.

Sultan made laws in judiciary courts on the pattern of **France Government**.

32-Sultan Abdul Aziz bin Mahmood Sani

1277H-1293H (1861-1876AD)=16 yrs.

Age:-48 yrs.

Birth:-1245H.

Death:-1293H.

Prime Minister

Aali Pasha:-He studied in **England**. So because of him **Sultan** created good relations with **Europe**.

Mahmood Nadeem Pasha:-Incapable man.

Reforms

Sultan formed an advisory committee.

He developed the **Naval Force** so strong that it became the 2nd. Biggest **Naval Power** of the world.

Sultan was broad minded and he wanted to make his country like **Europe**. So he traveled in Europe. First he went to Egypt.

1283H-1867AD.-**Sultan alongwith his Princess and Ameers** went to **France**. In **Paris** he attended the meetings and had meals with the **Emperor**.

Then he went to **England**, met **Queen Victoria**. She gave a hot welcome to Sultan and served well. **He** met Minister of India **Sir Stafford North Court**, he invited him on meal.

Then he went to **Vienna**, and returned back.

1284H-1868AD.-**Prince of Whales s/o Queen Victoria alongwith his wife** came to **Oustuntunia** and remained guest of **Sultan**.

Then Empress of France came to **Sultan**.

Then Emperor Joseph King of Austria became guest of **Sultan** in his special **Palace**.

Remained day & night with him. There was no difference in appearance between the two. Except

Sultan's going to mosque and King's going to Church only differentiated between muslim & christian.

Sultan was Europeanised, because of which he became extravagant, spending in luxuries & plays.

Prime Minister died Mahmood Nadeem Pasha became Prime Minister, he was an incapable man due to which bribery, adultery became common. Posts and positions were being sold. Law & order was shattered. Riots & revolts started at different places.

In Bosnia & Herzegovina thousands of muslims were martyred by christians.

Sultan was busy in making pact with **Russia**, the result was that millions of muslims were martyred in **Black mountain, Serbia & Bulgaria**.

The riots spread so much that ultimately Prime Minister & Sultan had to be dismissed and Sultan Murad 5th. was brought in power.

Sultan Abdul Aziz suicided due to sorrow & sadness.

1285H-1869AD:-Suez Canal was opened.

33-Sultan Murad Khamis bin Abdul Hameed

1293H for few months.

Age:-80 yrs.

Birth:-1252H.

Death:-1332H.

Prime Minister:-Rushdi Pasha

Sultan crushed the revolt in **Balqan**.

Hassan Buk Charkas, in revenge of **Sultan Abdul Aziz dismissal** killed **Commander in Chief Hussain Pasha & Prime Minister Rushdi Pasha**.

Murad fell in mental illness and 3 months of treatment could not cure him, so he was dismissed. He remained in '**illuminated Palace**' and died in 1332H.

34-Sultan Abdul Hameed Sani bin Abdul Majeed

1293H-1328H (1876-1910AD)=35 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-1336H-1918AD.

Prime Minister

Midhat Pasha

Incidence

The social, economical & political condition of the kingdom was very bad. Riots & revolts were raising throughout the kingdom.

Midhat Pasha under the present condition prepared a Governing Regulation for the kingdom.

Sultan announced the regulation which brought peace & happiness in the general public.

1294-95H:-Russia, Serbia & Montenegro at war with Turkey.

Battle of Palona

Russia attacked crossed River Tuna and reached **Palona**, and advanced till **San Stepheno**.

European felt the danger and stopped **Russian** advancement. **San Stepheno Pact** was made.

England & Austria did not agree to the pact and **Berlin pact** was made. According to which

Ardhan Batoom & Fort Qaras was given to **Russia**. **Bulgaria** was made a separate state

under **Usmania** kingdom. **Romania, Serbia & Qartagh** became independent states. **Taslia**

was given to **Greece**.

Sultan broke the **Democratic government** and those who wanted democracy were turned out of the kingdom.

1295H-1878AD:-Treaty of San Stefano negotiated by Russia & Turkey.

1295H-1878AD:-Berlin congress: Independence of Serbia, Montenegro & Romania from Usmania kingdom.

1295H-1878AD.- England also wanted to have his share so he showed the danger of capturing **Baghdad & Basra by Russia** to **Sultan** and said that our forces if allowed in **Cyprus** would protect from this danger. **Prime Minister Safwat Pasha** was **British agent**, he supported and **England** captured **Cyprus** without fighting.

1296H-1879AD.- France captured **Tunis**.

1296H-1879AD.- England captured **Egypt**, and killed muslim men, women, children & old badly

1297H-1880AD.- Sudan agitated against the killing of muslims in **Egypt**. **England** attacked on **Sudan** but a great honourable religious leader **Mehdi Sudani** killed the **Englishmen**.

1300H-1883AD.- England sent **Lord Kitchens** with a great army who bribed the **Sudani** leaders, and with the help of these betrayers **England** managed to defeat the **Sudani's**. As **Mehdi Sudani** died earlier, the **Englishmen** took out his body from grave and humiliated it. This was the behavior of the **Lord** of a so called civilized nation.

1302H-1885AD.- Eastern Rome Aly separated from **Usmania kingdom** and made confederation with **Bulgaria**.

1310H-1893AD- French conquer **Dahomey**.

1312H-1895AD.- Arminians rioted and hundreds were killed.

1313H-1896AD.- Crete was taken over by **Russia, England, France & Italy**.

1320H-1902AD:-Fighting continued with **Usman** backed clan **Rashidi & Wahabi** upto 1902.

Abdul Aziz bin Saud

1320H-1372H(1902-1953AD)

Founder of Saudi Arabia.

1902-The Wahabi leader fought and captured most of the surrounding of **Macca** till **Riyadh** and made the capital in **Riyadh**.

1916- Shareef Hussain in World War-I proclaimed himself **King of Arabia**. **British** established relation with **Abdul Aziz bin Saud** supported him against **Shareef Hussain & Rashidi**.

Turkish Youth Movement

Joint power of Europe was busy in distributing the **Usmania kingdom** and the **Ministers** were under the control of **Europe**. Seeing this condition the youths of **Turkey** formed a committee called "**Turkish Youth**".

The leaders of **Turkish Youth** were **Niazi buk, Anwar buk & Mustafa Kemal Pasha**.

Mustafa Kemal Pasha

Birth:-March 1881AD

Graduated from Army College-Minaster

He became revolutionary minded by reading the books.

He wrote a poetry against the cruelty of Sultan Abdul Hameed.

He started giving speech in the gatherings of Turkish Youth movement.

He raised the slogan of "Turkey is for Turks".

It was during his study in Army College when Greece jumped in the war against Usmania kingdom and started killing muslims young, old, men, women & children, savagely.

Sultan Abdul Hameed eyes were now opened and he sent an army in which Army College students were also sent. Mustafa Kemal was the leader of the students, he fought bravely and defeated the Greece army at Crete Island.

Mustafa was sent to the Army University Qustuntunia.

He then went to Army Officers College and became Lieutenant.

He started making his colleagues revolutionary minded.

He started publishing Newspaper **Hurriat**. This created revolutionary movement in general public.

He completed his studies and was given the rank of **Yuzbashi**.

He was given residence in **Islambul a locality in Qustuntunia**.

He formed a committee named **Jamayat Hurriyat**.

He met **Anwar Bey & daughter of Russian Ambassador.**
Sultan arrested him.

His arrest did not effect the movement, its branches spread throughout the kingdom.
 Now all the clever & naughty youth came out in politics.

1891AD-All the youths turned out from **Usmania kingdom** collected in **Geneva** and formed a committee "**Usmani Committee for Unit & Development**". Later when the number increased its headquarter was based in **Paris** and branches were established in **London** and capital of other **European countries**.

1907AD-A congress of Usmani Revolutionaries was held in **Paris** in which all revolutionary committees of **Arminia, Bulgaria, Arab jews, Albany etc.** participated.

Mustafa Kemal was released and was made **Army Officer**.

Anwar Bey & Niazi Bey announced the revolution big posters were pasted in different languages. **Sultan, Commander in Chief, General Inspector & Major army Generals** were also informed officially.

Mustafa Kemal being in the army tried to influence **Sultan** for acceptance of the revolutionaries demand and on the other hand supported the revolutionaries with weapons and money.

The army also refused to fight against the **Revolutionary Committee**.

Sultan had to allow the **Revolutionary Committee** for the announcement of **Democracy**

1908AD-Democratic Government was established. **Salunika** was made the **Capital of Democratic Government**. **The Youth Committee** was dissolved.

1908AD-Western countries took benefit.:-

Greece captured **Crete**.

Prince Ferdinand revolted in **Bulgaria**.

1908-Bulgaria declares full independence.

1908-Bosnia-Herzegovina annexed by **Austro-Hungarian Empire**.

Serbia claimed for independence.

1908AD-Sultan was a politician he paralyzed the parliament. The army became against the democratic rules because it was against Islamic laws. So some of the leaders of the **Committee** was killed.

1909AD-Mustafa Kemal went to **Tripoli** and met the **Arab leader Shaikh Ahmed bin Syed Mohammed Shareef Sanusi** and opened **Army College** for **Arab Badvien's**

1909AD-Thousands of Sultan's supporters agitated against **Democratic Government**.

Mukhtar Pasha could not face the agitation, **Democratic Government** was dissolved and again **Kingdom** was formed. **Nazim Pasha Minister of Defense** imposed curfew in **Qustuntunia**.

Kamil Pasha became **Prime Minister**.

1910AD-Mustafa Kemal came back, started making speeches, motivated the youngsters and formed "**Young Turkish Party**" and became the leader of this party. The party demanded the dismissal of **Nazim Pasha**. **Prime Minister** did not take any action.

An army brigade sieged the **Prime Minister House** and raised slogan for the removal of the **Prime Minister**. Ultimately the Prime minister was removed and **Hussain Hilmi Pasha friend of Mustafa Kemal** became the **Prime Minister**.

Sultan killed **Prince Yousuf Azuddin** and his army defeated the **Young Turkish Party**.

Prime Minister Hilmi Pasha was removed and **Adham Pasha** took his place.

1909AD-Mustafa Kemal left **Qustuntunia** and went to **Salunika**. **Niazi Bey** and other party leaders collected and started preparation to attack on **Qustuntunia**. **3rd. army core**

commander was **Mahmood Shaukat Pasha**. **Commander in Chief** was **Mustafa Kemal** himself. **Niazi Bey** was the **Commander of Minister army**. **Anwar Bey** was along **Niazi**.

Mustafa Kemal attacked and defeated the **Sultan army**. **Mustafa** took "**Fatwa**" from **Shaikhul Islam** for the dismissal of **Sultan**.

1328H. April 1909AD-Sultan Abdul Hameed was dismissed and sent to **Salunika**. He remained in **Army Palace** for **9 years** and died in **1918AD**.

35-Sultan Mohammed Khamis bin Abdul Majeed**1328H-1336H (1909-1917AD)=8 yrs.****Age:-****Birth:-****Death:-1336H.****Tripoli****1329H(1911AD)-Italy attacked on Tripoli with 23,000 army. Britain & France stopped the way of Turkish help through Egypt & Africa.****Anwar Bey & Mustafa Kemal reached Tripoli and with the help of local Arabs defeated the Italians badly.****1330H(1912AD)-Balqan started fight with Turkey, so Anwar Bey & Mustafa Kemal left Tripoli for Qustuntunia. Italy again attacked on Tripoli. Arabs fought bravely. Ameer Ali Pasha came from Sham fought bravely and was martyred. Ali Nazmi Bey 15 years old student of army college came secretly fought bravely and was martyred. Shaikh Abdullah Trablasi and his 11 years old daughter fought bravely and was martyred. Turks & Arabs jointly fought bravely and only 3,000 Mujahid defeated 13,000 Italian army.****1331H(1913AD)-But ultimately Italy attacked with great army and captured Tripoli. 1330H(1912AD)-Anwar Bey saw that Shukri Pasha has been surrounded by the enemy at Adrianople, so he sent an army in the Command of Mahmood Shaukat Pasha & Mustafa Kemal. During this time Serbia, Bulgaria, Greece & Montenegro started fight with each other.****1331H(1913AD)-Prime Minister Kamil Pasha opponent of Mustafa Kemal started making no war pact with Britain and agreement was to be signed on 23rd. Jan.****Mustafa Kemal & Anwar Bey reached Qustuntunia and asked Kamil Pasha not to sign the agreement. Kamil Pasha did not agree, so by force resignation was taken from them and new cabinet was approved from Sultan Mohammed as follows:-****Prime Minister:-Mahmood Shaukat Pasha.****Foreign Minister:-Talat Pasha.****Defense Minister:-Izat Pasha.****Governor Qustuntunia:-Anwar Pasha.****World War-I****1332H(1914AD)- World War started in Europe.****President Prince Saeed Haleem made a secret pact with Germany.****Britain attacked on Bay of Danyal by War ships. Turkish army defeated them badly.****Britain attacked on Iraq through Basra. Turkish defeated them badly.****British army flew away. General Townshend and his army was arrested.****1916-British surrender to Turks at Kut al Amara in Mesopotamia.****1916-Russians take Erzurum-Turkey.****Revolt by Shareef Makka****1334H(Nov.1916AD)-Shareef Hussain of Makka took millions of money from Jamal Pasha to prepare an army of 15,000 arab army for Egypt war, but he took the help of Britain turned out the Turks from Hijaz and proclaimed Independence. Turkey was defeated by Russia due to which he had to bring his army from Iraq.****Britain got the chance to capture Baghdad, Sham & Palastine to Musal.****1335H(Aug.1917AD)-Allied Powers distributed Turkish territory in the conference of Paris:-****Russia took Armenia, Eastern Anotolia, Aastana & Bay of Danyal.****Britain took Haifa & Baghdad.****France took Iskandria/Alexandra & Musal.****Italy took Western Anotolia.****Palastine became the joint property.**

Shareef Hussain was dreaming for the entire Arab Rulership, but now his own Rulership was in the hands of Britain.

1917-US declares war on Central Powers; Bolshevik revolution in Russia.

1917-Belfour Declaration commits Britain to creation of Jewish state in Palestine.

1917-British take Baghdad & Jerusalem.

36-Sultan Abdul Waheed Khan bin

1336H-1341H (1918-1923AD)=5 yrs.

Age:-

Birth:-

Death:-

1918AD-President Wilson of America entered the war with Allied Power. They got victory and World War ended.

Because of the opinion of Talat pasha, Anwar Pasha & Jamal Pasha Turkish Government entered the war, now they disappeared and went to Berlin.

1918AD-Allied forces entered Qustuntunia and started interfering in the Government policies.

Greece with the help of Britain captured Samarna Seaport.

1919AD-In Paris conference 10 Allied countries voted for ending the Turkish Government.

1920AD-Allied forces took control of Turkish Government. Britain arrested 66 members of Ahrar and imprisoned them in Malta. British President's son in law Fareed Pasha was made President and a dummy ministry was formed controlled by Britain.

Mustafa Kemal

Mustafa Kemal made speeches motivated the Turks, collected them on one platform.

1919AD-Mustafa Kemal took his friends and companions reached Anotolia and held a conference in which 80 members from Anotolia participated, and formed a National Guard Committee, and an Emergency tour motivating the nation.

1920AD-Mustafa Kemal was elected President of the National Party. All the Ahrar escaped from Qustuntunia reached Anotolia and joined National Party.

Turks started fight with old broken weapons with Greece who was killing the women, children & old savagely. On the other hand Turks fought bravely with the French who captured South East of Anotolia & Saleshia in the North of Sham, and defeated them badly.

French made peace treaty and returned back Saleshia.

Aug. 1921AD-Mustafa Kemal with 200,000 army attacked on Greece who captured the Turkish territories. Defeated them and took back Barusa & Izmir.

Then he attacked on Samarna and defeated 300,000 Greece army, most of them were killed and arrested, very few managed to escape. Too much booty was also obtained.

Europe was surprised to see the bravery of Turks and became so afraid that they made peace pact and left Qustuntunia.

Lausanne Conference-Switzerland

Nov. 1922AD-Asmat Pasha from Turkey attended the conference, debated with Lord Carson of England and made them quiet. Qustuntunia, Therese, Anotolia & Asia came back in Turkish territories. Turks became independent as before.

1922-USSR(Union of Soviet Socialist Republic) formed.

Oct. 1923AD-Allied forces left Qustuntunia and Sultan Abdul Waheed Khan also left with British ship to Malta.

31 Oct. 1924AD-Mustafa Kemal became the President of Democratic Republic of Turkey, and was given the title of Ataturk. The capital was shifted to Ankara.

Khulafa Usmania**687H-1342H(1288-1924AD)=655 yrs.****Kingdom:-****Capital:- Qustuntunia.****Total Khulafa/Sultan = 37.****1-Ameer/Sultan Usman Khan bin Artughral**

687-727H=40 yrs. 1288-1326AD.

2-Sultan Aur Khan bin Ameer Usman.

727-760H=33 yrs. 1326-1360AD.

3-Sultan Murad Awal bin Aur Khan

760-791H=31 yrs, 1360-1389AD.

4-Sultan Bayazeed Awal bin Murad.

791-805H=14 yrs. 1389-1402AD.

Note:-For 11 years sons of Sultan fought for kingdom.**5-Sultan Mohammed Awal bin Bayazeed.**

816-824H=8 yrs. 1413-1421AD.

6-Sultan Murad Sani bin Mohammed Awal.

824-855H=31 yrs. 1421-1451AD.

7-Sultan Mohammed Sani bin Murad Sani.

855-886H=31 yrs. 1451-1481AD.

8-Sultan Bayazeed Sani bin Mohammed Sani.

886-918H=32 yrs. 1481-1512AD.

9-Sultan Saleem Awal bin Bayazeed Sani.

918-926H=8 yrs. 1512-1520AD.

10-Sultan Sulaiman Aazam bin Saleem.

926-974H=47 yrs. 1520-1566AD.

11-Sultan Saleem Sani bin Sulaiman.

974-982H=8 yrs. 1566-1574AD.

12-Sultan Murad Salis bin Saleem Sani.

982-1003H=21 yrs. 1574-1595AD.

13-Sultan Mohammed Salis bin Murad Salis.

1003-1012H=9 yrs. 1595-1603AD.

14-Sultan Ahmed Awal bin Mohammed Salis.

1012-1026H=14 yrs. 1603-1617AD.

15-Sultan Mustafa Awal bin Mohammed Salis.

1026H=3 months+1031-1032H=1 yr. 1617+1622-1623AD

16-Sultan Usman Sani bin Ahmed Awal.

1027-1031H=4 yrs. 1618-1622AD.

17-Sultan Murad Rabe bin Ahmed Awal.

1032-1049H=17 yrs. 1623-1639AD.

18-Sultan Ibraheem bin Ahmed Awal.

1049-1053H=4 yrs. 1639-1643AD.

19-Sultan Mohammed Rabe bin Ibraheem.

1053-1099H=46 yrs.1643-1688AD.

20-Sultan Sulaiman Sani bin Ibraheem.

1099-1102H=3 yrs. 1688-1691AD.

21-Sultan Ahmed Sani bin Ibraheem.

1102-1106H=4 yrs. 1691-1695AD.

22-Sultan Mustafa Sani bin Mohammed Rabe.

1106-1115H=9 yrs.1695-1703AD.

23-Sultan Ahmed Salis bin Mohammed Rabe.

- 1115-1143H=28 yrs. 1703-1730AD.
24-Sultan Mahmood Awal bin Mustafa.
 1143-1168H=25 yrs. 1730-1754AD.
25-Sultan Usman Salis bin Mustafa.
 1168-1171H=3 yrs. 1754-1757AD.
26-Sultan Mustafa Salis bin Ahmed Salis.
 1171-1187H=16 yrs. 1757-1773AD.
27-Sultan Abdul Hameed Awal bin Ahmed Salis.
 1187-1203H=16 yrs. 1773-1789AD.
28-Sultan Saleem Salis bin Mustafa Salis.
 1203-1222H=19 yrs. 1789-1807AD.
29-Sultan Mustafa Rabe bin Abdul Hameed Awal.
 1222-1223H=1 yr. 1807-1808AD.
30-Sultan Mahmood Sani bin Abdul Hameed Awal.
 1223-1255H=32 yrs. 1808-1839AD.
31-Sultan Abdul Majeed Awal bin Mahmood Sani.
 1255-1277H=22 yrs. 1839-1861AD.
32-Sultan Abdul Aziz bin Mahmood Sani.
 1277-1293H=16 yrs. 1861-1876AD.
33-Sultan Murad Khamis Bin Abdul Majeed.
 1293H=Few months. 1876AD.
34-Sultan Abdul Hameed Sani bin Abdul Majeed.
 1293-1328H=35 yrs. 1876-1910AD.
35-Sultan Mohammed Khamis bin Abdul Majeed.
 1328-1336H=8 yrs. 1910-1918AD.
36-Sultan Abdul Waheed Khan bin
 1336-1341H=5 yrs. 1918-1923AD.
37-Sultan Abdul Majeed bin Abdul Waheed.
 1341-1342H=1 yr. 1923-1924AD.

Architecture/Construction

Architect Sinan

896H-996H. 1491-1588AD

*In his 97 yrs age he constructed 131 mosques and over 200 buildings all over the empire many commissioned by **Sultan**. Moreover he solved difficult problems of road and bridge building. His most famous work is the **Sulaimania Mosque in Istanbul** where **Sulaiman the magnificent** is buried.*

HIND-ISLAMIC HISTORY

1-Muslim Kingdom in Hind

1st. Ancient Civilization:- Starts from Babul/Babylon & Nenva.

2nd. Ancient Civilization:- Starts from Egypt & Hind/India.

Hind/Indian Civilization

The history of this civilization is very old and very little is known about it.

The people in the start were uncivilized and illiterate, but gradually they developed some qualities & knowledge, such as **Waidanat/Medical treatment, Philosophy, Astronomy & Palmistry.**

Muslims arrived in **Hind** and gave them knowledge & correct belief, such as

Unity of God, Equality of human rights, nice behavior & Literacy. Also prevented them from **Killing of daughters, Burning to death of widows, but rather getting them married.**

A kingdom was established and fighting of local rulers was finished.

Learning was made common due to which great religious, literary & scientific scholars came out.

In the beginning of Islamic era few famous scholars came out from Sindh-Hind.

Islamic History of Hind

Khilafat-e-Rashida Period

Umar Farooq RA. Period

15H-Usman bin Abul Aas RA-Ruler of Bahrain & Oman sent his brother **Mugheera to Deebal.** He fought and came victorious.

Usman Ghani RA. Period

Abdullah bin Amir RA. Governor of Iraq sent **Hakeem bin Jibila to the border of Hind** to collect information about **Hind.** He came back and reported that "In **Hind** water is little, dates are of cheap quality, looters are brave, if the army is less, will be destroyed and if more, will die with hunger. **Usman RA** did not sent any army.

Ali RA. Period

39H-Harris bin Murra Abdi entered from **Frontier** and arrested thousands of fighters.

42H-He advanced to **Qiqan/Qallat**, where he and his people were killed in the fight except few.

Khilafat Banu Umayya Period

Ameer Muavia RA. Period

44H-Mohallab bin Abi Safra attacked on **Bana & Aalahwar** the city located between Multan & Kabul. **Mohllab** killed 18 **Turks** and defeated them.

-Abdullah bin Amir-Governor Iraq made **Abdullah bin Sawar-Governor of Sindh.** He attacked on **Qayqan** and returned victorious with lot of booties. He presented Qayqani horses to **Ameer Moavia RA.** He reattacked on **Qayqan** but was killed by **Turkish army.**

-Ziyad bin Abu Sufyan made **Sanan bin Salma, Ruler of Sindh.** He was a god fearing person. He captured **Makran** and developed a big city. He settled there and established Islamic rules.

Then **Ziyad** made **Rashid bin Umar, Governor of Sindh.** He came to **Makran** and captured **Qayqan.** Then he attacked on **Mayad tribe** the pirates of **Sindh**, where he was killed. **Sanan bin Salma** tookover the command. He was made the **Governor of Sindh** for two years.

-Abbad bin Ziyad attacked via **Sajistan** and captured **Rozbar, Seestan, Qandhar.**

-Then Ziyad made **Munzir bin Jarood, Governor of Hind border.** He captured **Buqan, Qayqan & Qusdar** and died in **Qusdar.**

-Ubaidullah bin Ziyad made **Ibne Qari, Ruler of Hind border.** He captured **Sindh** after severe fights.

Abdul Malik bin Marwan Period

Hajjaj-Governor of Iraq made Saeed bin Aslam, Governor of Hind border. Then he made Muja-aa bin Saar, Governor. He captured Qandabeel and died after a year in Makran.

Then Mohammed bin Haroon was made Governor.

Victory of Sindh:-

Some arab traders died in **Sirandeeep** island. The kind king of Sirandeeep returned their family to Iraq by ship with valuable gifts for **Waleed bin Abdul Malik**. On the way at **Deebal** the police of Raja Dahir looted the goods and arrested the women & children. One woman cried out "**Oh Hajjaj help us.**" This news reached Hajjaj.

Hajjaj sent **Abdullah Aslami** with 6,000 army but he was defeated and martyred. Then he sent **Budayl bin Bijilly**. He fell down from the horse and martyred.

Waleed bin Abdul Malik Period

Victories by Mohammed bin Qasim:-

Third time **Hajjaj** sent his very young nephew **Mohammed bin Qasim** of only 17 years age with 6,000 army and made him the **Governor of Sindh**.

Mohammed bin Qasim came to Makran prepared his army and advanced towards **Sindh**.

Letter of Hajjaj to Mohammed bin Qasim:-

Wherever you camp dig trenches all around. Most of the night spend in worshipping.

Install the catapult named Urus, aiming towards the temple-----

93H-He captured Qanzpur (Panjgur). Then Armabeel(Arman Bela).

94H-Sieged Deebal city, stoned with the great catapult captured the city. Constructed a Jama masjid and settled 4,000 muslims. Captured the cities on way.

95H-Crossed river Sindh fought fiercely with Raja Dahir. Raja Dahir was killed in the battlefield. He advanced victorious defeated the queen in Darawarh. Then he defeated Jai Singh s/o Raja Dahir.

95H-Captured Sadandri, the people became muslim. Captured Ror and constructed a Jama masjid.

96H-Captured Sika crossed river Biyas and captured Multan.

The gold obtained from Multan was dumped in a room of size 30'x24'. Therefore Multan was called the "Mine of gold" by Arabs.

The total booty obtained from Sindh valued 12,000,000 Dirham.

In Multan he heard the news of death of Hajjaj.

96H-He advanced towards Keeraj, captured the cities on way and defeated Raja Dohar of Keeraj and killed him.

Waleed died and kindled the light of Islam in Sindh by Mohammed bin Qasim.

Hajjaj advices to Mohammed bin Qasim were remarkable, which was full of piety, to obey & establish complete Islamic rules. Due to which Islam spread in Hind and people loved Mohammed bin Qasim.

In one of his letter he writes to Mohammed bin Qasim:- Never be reluctant in offering 5 times salat. Be humble and weep in front of Allah while you are in Takbeer, Qirat, Qyam & Quood, Ruku & Sojud. Always remain busy in reciting Quran. Make zikr of Allah and ask help from Allah. If you will depend on the mercy of Allah, you will be surely successful. All your actions in establishing the government should be in accordance of Islamic laws. Always fulfill your promises and take care of the rights of general public.

Sulaiman bin Abdul Malik Period

Sulaiman made Yazeed bin Abi Kabsha, Governor of Sindh. He arrested Mohammed bin Qasim. People of Hind wept on the arrest of Mohammed bin Qasim. Saleh-Governor of Iraq killed Mohammed bin Qasim because Hajjaj killed his brother Adam who was a khariji.

Umar bin Abdul Azeez Period

99H-Umar nominated Amar bin Muslim Bahili Ameer of Sindh and sent messages to the leaders of the tribes inviting them to Islam. Most of the wise leaders accepted Islam, amongst them was the son of Raja Dahir, Jai Singh.

Hisham bin Abdul Malik Period

107H-Junaid bin Abdur Rehman was made Ameer of Hind. He captured Marwar, Gujrat and reached till the border of Kashmir.

111H-Junaid was made Governor of Khurasan and Tameem bin Zayd was nominated Governor of Hind. He was an unsuccessful ruler and died earlier.

Hakam bin Awana Kalbi was made Governor. He developed a fort type city named Mahfuza and maintained peace in the territory. Then he captured some more territories and developed a new city Mansura and made the capital of Islamic State.

121H-Hakam was killed in a battle. Amar bin Mohammed bin Qasim was made Governor of Hind. He killed Marwan bin Yazeed bin Mohallab in a fight and crushed the riot. He maintained peace in the territory.

Waleed bin Yazeed Period

125H-Yazeed bin Erar became Governor of Hind. He was the last governor of Amvi Period.

Marwan bin Mohammed period

130H-Mansur bin Jamhur Kalbi killed Yazeed bin Erar and formed his independent kingdom.

Khilafat Banu Abbas Period

Saffah Period

134H-Musa bin Kaab Tamimi attacked with 12,000 army defeated Mansur. Mansur fled away in the desert where he died with thirst. Musa nominated his son Aynia and returned to Iraq.

Aynia was unsuccessful in controlling the Arab tribal riots.

Mansur Period

142H-Umar bin Hafs was sent as Ruler. Aynia revolted. Umar arrested him and was sent to Khalifa, but on the way he was killed. In this period Shiyyi & Khariji preachers came in Sindh. Umar supported Shiyyi. Khariji returned back but shiyyi continued preaching. Abdullah al Ashtar bin Nafs Zakiya started preaching shiyaism.

151H-Khalifa Mansur came to know about Abdullah al Ashtar so he ordered for his arrest. Another supporter in the name of Ashtar was sent to the capital where he was assassinated.

Khalifa Mansur sent Umar as Ruler of Africa and sent Hisham bin Amar Salbi as Ruler of Sindh and ordered for the arrest of Ashtar, but he also supported him. His brother Safih bin Amar Salbi attacked and killed Ashtar.

Hisham captured Bahruich, Multan & Qandhar and returned back to Iraq where he died.

157H-Mobad bin Khalil Tamimi was made Ruler. He died in 159H.

159H-Ruh bin Hatim was made Ruler. He was called back same year.

160H-Bustam bin Umar was made Ruler. He was also called back.

161H-Ruh was again sent to Sindh, but soon he was called back.

161H-Nasar bin Mohammed was sent as Ruler. He was also called back.

161H-Mohammed bin Sulaiman was sent as Ruler. He went back.

161H-Nasar was again sent to Sindh. He was again called back

161H-Zahar bin Abbas was sent. He was also called back.

161H-Nasar came third time and he remained till 164H and died.

164H-Lais bin Zareef slave of Mehdi came with the army and crushed the riots.

Haroon Rasheed Period

170H-Salim Younusi was sent as Ruler of Sindh. He ruled for 4 years.

174H-Ishaq bin Sulaiman Hashmi came, he died same year.

175H-Yousuf bin Ishaq became the Ruler.

176H-Taifur bin Abdullah came. Riots again started.

177H-Jabir Ashas Tae came. He was unsuccessful.

178H-Saeed bin Sulaim came.

179H-Eisa bin Jafar came. He was also unsuccessful.

180H-Abdur Rehman came. He was also unsuccessful.

181H-Ayub bin Jafar came. He was also unsuccessful.

184H-Daud bin Yazeed Mohallabi came. He crushed the arab tribal riots and ruled successfully for 20 years and died in 205H.

Mamoonur Rasheed Period

205H-Basheer s/o Daud was made the Ruler on condition to pay tax. After some years he stopped paying tax.

211H-Mamoon sent **Hajib bin Saleh** but he was defeated by **Basheer**.

213H-Anan bin Ubad Salbi came and arrested **Basheer** and took him to **Baghdad**.

214H-Moosa bin Yahya bin Khalid Barmaki came and ruled upto 218H.

Motasim bin Haroon Period

218H-Imran bin Moosa came.

Wasiq billah Period

227H-Eitakh Turkish became ruler.

Motawakal Period

232H-Haroon bin Abi Khalid became ruler. **Umar bin Abdul Aziz Habari** killed **Ibne Khalid** and became ruler. **Khalifa** awarded him the Rulership. The arab tribes started fight. The **Hindu Raja's** took benefit and captured most of the territories. Now two muslim rulership was formed one in **Mansura** and the other in **Multan**.

Following Arab tribes settled in Sindh:-

-Banu Bana in Multan.

-Hebari Qureishi in Mansura.

-Banu Saqeef in Bhakar Alwar.

-Banu Tameem, Abbasi, Siddiqi, Farooqi, Usmani, Ashari, Banu Asad, Banu Utba, Sadaat etc. Due to inter marriage and combined living the arab tradition changed into Sindhi tradition and the names also distorted.

240H-Umar bin Abdul Aziz Hebari of Qureish formed independent government and became the **Ruler of Sindh**. He ruled for 30 years and died.

270H-Abdullah his son became the ruler.

279H-When Fatimi kingdom was formed in **Egypt**, **Mehdi** sent his first preacher **Hasheem** brother of **Preacher Abul Qasim bin Farrukh** came to **Sindh** for preaching shiyaism.

363H-Haleem bin Shaban of Fatimi kingdom came with big army and captured **Multan**.

370H-Sumra tribe of Sindh accepted **Ismaeeli religion**.

401H-Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi captured **Multan** and ended the **Ismaeeli kingdom in Multan**.

401H-Sumra tribe captured **Mansura** from **Hebari** tribe.

419H-Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi captured **Mansura** and ended **Ismaeeli kingdom**.

419H-Fatimi Imam of Egypt gave the title of **Shaikh** to **Sumra** tribe.

421H-Sultan Mahmood died. Since then **Sumra** tribe was trying to capture **Multan**

444H-Sumra Shaikh took the benefit of fight between **Ghaznavi family** and captured **Sindh & Multan**.

571H-Sultan Mohammed Ghauri captured Multan. **Sumra Shaikh** settled in **Ach**.

574H-Ghauri captured **Ach** and **Sindh & Multan** came under the **Capital Delhi**.

752H-Huma tribe tookover the power from **Sumra Shaikh(Ismaeli)**.

Ghaznavi Kingdom

366H-581H(976-1185AD)=215 yrs.

Sultan Alaptageen

Alaptageen was one of the Ameer of **Samania kingdom**. He remained commander in chief of **Khurasan**.

He came to **Ghazni** and formed his independent kingdom.

Sultan Subuktageen

Subuktageen was the son-in-law of **Alaptageen** and from the generation of **Nausherwan Adil**.

366H-Subuktageen tookover the power after the death of **Alaptageen**.

367H-Raja Jaipal of Punjab attacked on **Subuktageen** with huge army of elephant.

Subuktageen with his young son **Mahmood** came with the **Turks** in the battlefield. Due to heavy snowfall **Raja Jaipal** surrendered and made peace treaty on payment of 1 million dirham and 50 elephants. **Raja Jaipal** came back to **Hind** and arrested the messengers of **Subuktageen** and refused the payment agreed on.

Subuktageen at once attacked on **Hind**. **Raja Jaipal** took help of the army of **Delhi, Qannauj & Kalenjer**. Both the army fought bravely between **Khayber & Peshawar**. **Hindi** army was defeated and the territory upto **Peshawar** was captured by **Subuktageen**.

Sultan Mahmood Ghaznavi s/o Subuktageen

388H-421H(998-1030AD)=33 yrs.

Qualities

He was a great **Muslim Conqueror**.

He never compelled the hindus to accept **Islam**. They entered in **Islam** by their own will and wish.

He never dismantled the temples during peace time.

He gave officers rank to the hindus in the army & in his court.

He was no less a great scholar. Persian was his mother tongue. He also knew Arabic.

He had the knowledge of **Fiqa, hadees & history of Arab & Ajam/Non arab**.

He honoured the scholars and gave handsome salaries to them.

He also established a big library.

Sultan Mahmood attacked all around his kingdom and expanded his kingdom.

390H(1000AD)-He attacked on Southern **Hind** defeated the **Jats** and captured the border districts.

391H(1001AD)-He fought with **Raja Jaipal** and arrested him. He paid tax and freed himself and then he haded over the kingdom to **Anandpal** and burnt himself to death.

395H(1005AD)-He captured **Bheera**. The ruler flew away and suicided.

396H(1006AD)-He captured **Multan**.

398H(1007AD)-He punished **Sikhpal s/o Anandpal** who accepted **Islam** and then reverted.

399H(1008AD)-He defeated the joint army of all the **Raja's of Hind**. He captured the **Fort of Nagar Kot** and collected valuable jewels from the temples as booty.

401H(1010AD)-He came to **Multan** and arrested **Abul Futuh Daud**.

404H(1013AD)-He tookover the **Fort Nanduna** from **Raja Bheempal**.

405H(1014AD)-He captured **Thanisra**.

406H(1015AD)-He returned from **Kashmir** unsuccessful.

409H(1018AD)-He captured **Qanauj & Mathra**.

413H(1022AD)-He captured **Punjab** and made his slave **Ayaz**, first **Ruler of Lahore**.

414H(1023AD)-He captured Gawalyar & Kalanjar.

416H(1025AD)-He attacked on the temple of Somnat.

417H(1026AD)-He captured the temple & Gujrat.

417H(1026AD)-He crushed the pirates of Multan.

419H(1027AD)-He crushed the riots of Jat.

Ultimately he captured the province of Punjab, Sindh & Multan. Kashmir, Qannauj, Kalenjar, Gawalyar & Gujrat were paying tax. From the temples he collected lots of wealth. In the temple of Somnat there was a chain of gold weighing 7 tones in which bells were hanging. The chandeliers were lighten by jewels & Almas.

Sultan Mohammed Ghaznavi

421H-1030AD

Tookover power after the death of Sultan Mahmood.

His brother Masood attacked and arrested him and tookover power.

Sultan Masood Ghaznavi

421H-432H(1030-1041AD)=11 yrs.

424H-He captured the Fort Sarasti in Kashmir.

425H-Commander in chief Ahmed Nialatgeen started attacks and captured upto Banaras and became independent.

426H-Masood sent a hindu commander Salar Tilak. He attacked with the help of Jats and killed Nialatgeen.

429H-He captured Fort Bansi & Sonipat and made his son Majdood, Governor of Punjab and Ayaz his assistant.

432H-He crushed the attack by Saljuqi kingdom and returned with heavy amount of booty, but on the way his Turkish & Hindu army looted the wealth and arrested him, and later on killed him.

Sultan Maudood Ghaznavi

432H-441H(1031-1049AD)=19 yrs.

Sultan Maudood came in power after the death of his father.

433H-While Maudood was busy fighting with Saljuqi, his brother Majdood captured Punjab.

435H-Maudood attacked on Punjab, but Majdood saved Lahore, meanwhile he was found dead in his tent. His assistant Ayaz also died.

435H-Personal riots amongst Ghaznavi's and fights with Saljuqi gave the chance to the hindu's and they started capturing their territories. The surrounding territories were taken back by the Rajput and now they advanced to attack on Lahore. Realizing the fact, ghaznavi again united and the Rajput returned back without fighting.

480H-Maudood made his son Abul Qasim Mahmood, Hakim of Lahore and Ali, commander in chief of Hind army. He crushed the riots of Peshawar, Kashmir & Multan, but could not capture the forts of Hansi, Thanesar & Nagar kot.

Sultan Abdur Rasheed bin Maudood

443H-444H(1051-1052AD)=1 yr.

Abdur Rasheed the younger son of Maudood came into power after the death of his father.

Sultan made Navishtageen Karkhi, Ruler of Hind & Sindh. He captured the Fort Nagar kot again.

Sultan Farakhzad bin Masood

444H-450H(1052-1058AD)=6 yrs.

Sultan Ibraheem bin Masood

450H-492H(1058-1099AD)=42 yrs.

473H-He captured Ajudhan/Pak Pattan, Ropal, Netikal & forts of Saharanpur.

Sultan Masood bin Ibraheem

492H-508H(1099-1114AD)=16 yrs.

Sultan made Tifatgeen, Hakim of Punjab. He crossed River Ganges and captured different cities and returned Lahore with lot of booties.

Sultan Arsalan

508H-511H(1114-1117AD)=3 yrs.

Two new powers Ghauri & Khwarzam were rising, one tookover Saljuqi and the other Ghaznavi.

Sanjar Saljuqi captured Ghazni, arrested Arsalan and killed him.

Mohammed Baheem was Ruler of Punjab.

Sultan Bahram Shah bin Masood

511H-547H(1117-1152AD)=36 yrs.

Mohammed Baheem Ruler of Hind captured Fort Nagore and developed a large army. Then he fought with different Raja's, and became independent.

Sultan Bahram came to Hind. Baheem fought with Sultan in Multan, but was defeated and killed. Sultan made Hussain bin Ibraheem, Ruler of Hind.

544H-Allauddin Ghauri captured Ghazni and burnt the city.

547H-Sultan came to Hind in 544H. He could not bear the destruction of Ghazni. So he died in grief in 547H.

Khusru Shah bin Bahram Shah

547H-555H(1152-1160AD)=8 yrs.

Now the Ghaznavi kingdom was only in Punjab Hind, and capital was Lahore.

Malik Khusru

555H-582H(1160-1186AD)=27 yrs.

For 20 years he ruled peacefully and successfully on his territory in Hind/India.

575H-Raja Jammu invited Sultan Shahabuddin Ghauri of Ghazni to attack on Punjab. He came and captured Peshawar, Multan & Sindh.

576H-Shahabuddin reattacked on Lahore. Malik Khusru locked himself in the fort, so Shahabuddin had to return back.

580H-Shahabuddin came again and captured the fort of Sialkot and strengthened it.

582H-Shahabuddin attacked on Lahore and arrested Malik Khusru and his entire family and took them to Ghazni and imprisoned them in the Fort of Zablistan.

Ghaznavi kingdom ended in Punjab Hind/India.

588H-Khusru died in the prison.

Great Scholars & Pious Shaikhs

-Al Bairuni:-He was expert of mathematics, trigonometry, astronomy & philosophy.

-Shaikh Amar bin Saeed Lahori(581H):-He was Faqih & Mohaddis.

-Shaikh Abul Qasim bin Mohammed Lahori:-He was a famous Mohaddis.

-Hazrat Fakhruddin Hussain Zanjani Lahori:-He was a famous Shaikh.

-Hazrat Abul Hassan Ali Hajveri(Data Ganj Baksh RA.465H):-A very famous Shaikh. Kashful mahjub is his very popular book on Tasauwuf.

-Shaikh Abu Bakr Gardezi(531H):-Buried in Multan.

Sultan Azzuddin Hussain

Grandfather of Shahabuddin Ghauri formed Ghauri kingdom. He was from the generation of Arabic & Iranian.

Sultan Mazuddin/Shahabuddin Ghauri bin Shaam

553H-603H(1158-1206AD)=50 yrs.

Birth:-532H

Death:-603H

Incidents & Victories

553H-He captured Ghazni.

581H-He captured Lahore and ended the Ghaznavi kingdom.

587H-He captured Bhatinda which was under Pirthivi Raj kingdom.

588H-Pirthivi Raj attacked on Shahabuddin both the army fought in the battlefield Tarawari. Pirthivi Raj was killed in the battle. Delhi & Ajmer was captured.

580H-Shahabuddin made his slave Outbuddin Aibak his assistant in Ajmer and returned back to Ghaur.

588H-Outbuddin started his victory. He captured Merath.

589H-Outbuddin captured Aligarh.

590H-Shahabuddin came to Hind defeated Raja Jai Chand killed him and captured Qannauj to Banaras.

591H-Outbuddin captured Patan the capital of Gujrat.

592H- " defeated Raja Bheem and captured Anhalwara.

593H- " recaptured Gujrat & Gawalyar.

596H-Shahabuddin sent Ikhtyaruddin bin Bakhtyar Khilji with an army. He captured Bihar, Bengal, Kalenjar, Mahuba, kalpi & Badayun.

597H-Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti Ajmeri Ra founds first sufi order in Indian subcontinent.

602H-Shahabuddin came to Hind/India. This time Islamic kingdom spread from Peshawar to Bengal throughout the length & width.

603H-Shahabuddin was martyred by the the Infidels while he was sleeping.

Sultan Outbuddin Aibak

603H-607H(1206- 1210AD)=4 yrs.

Outbuddin was tatari a slave of Shahabuddin Ghauri. He was very brave pious and obedient.

Outbuddin established Dehli as capital.

Outbuddin ruled on entire Hind only for 4 years, but peace, justice & comfort came in the kingdom. He himself was very brave, pious, just & generous.

607H-He fell down from the horse and died. Muslim, Hindu and everyone mourned on his death.

Aaraam bin Outbuddin

607H-608H:- Unsuccessful ruler.

Sultan Shamsuddin Altamash son-in-law of Outbuddin

608H-633H(1211-1236AD)=25 yrs.

Qualities

He was also a slave of Sultan Shahabuddin Ghauri. His forefather was from Turkan Farakhtae.

He was very brave, pious, just and generous.

He established justice, for that he hanged two bells on both side of his door. The oppressed use to come at night and ring the bells. Sultan himself use to come and make justice. There are so many stories of his justice in the history.

He was very generous and use to serve the poor and guests.

His Islamic services are well known.

He was no doubt a powerful King of Hind/India, but he was very simple living and God fearing.

He never misbehaved.

He was made the Ruler of Gawalyar ,by Sultan Shahabuddin.

Sultan Outbuddin married his daughter to Altamash.

He was made Sultan on the death of Outbuddin.

He ruled on Hind with wisdom.

He established true Islamic laws and banned music, dance and all other wretchedness.

Sultan's Worship

Sultan generally use to come to his **Shaikh Khwaja Outbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki** and worship with him.

Sultan never missed his five times salat.

Story of Death of Bakhtiar Kaki RA.

Khwaja Bakhtiar died on 14 R.Awal 632H. His Khalifa Khwaja Abu Saeed announced that Hazrat Bakhtiar has advised that my Funeral prayer should be lead by the one who has never done Haraam/Unlawful deed and never missed before Asar sunna salat. No one came out. So Sultan Altamash came out and said that I wanted to keep it secret but I am helpless in front of Khwaja's order, and he lead the funeral prayer.

Tomb of Bakhtiar Kaki & Sultan Altamash is in Delhi.

Even Changez Khan did not dare to cross River Sindh because of the fear of true Islamic kingdom.

624H-He captured **Bengal** and he was successful 9n all attacks.

626H-Abbasi Khalifa Mustansir sent the **Royal dress in the honour of Sultan.**

630H-He crushed the revolt of **Gawalyar.**

631H-Captured the **Fort Bhalla and Temple Mahakal.**

Victories

He captured **Badayun, Lakhnau, Bihar, Multan, Ach, Lahore, Banaras, Debal, Qannauj, Gawalyar, Sialkot, Malda etc.**

Khanqah & Madaris

Biggest khanqah was of Khwaja Outbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki RA.

Piety Islamic manners & etiquette were taught in these khanqah.

The students use to practice hardship & hunger, so as to use these students as Islamic missionaries.

Famous Scholars

-**Nooruddin Mohammed Aufi.**

-**Kamaluddin Junaidi:-He was Wazeer Nizamul Mulk. He also remained Wazeer in the court of**

Khalifa Abbasi.

-**Qazi Saaduddin Kurdi.**

-**Qazi Naseeruddin.**

-**Qazi Jalaluddin.**

-**Qazi Kabiruddin.**

Shaikh/Peer of Sultan Altamash

Khwaja Outbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki RA.

Khwaja Ghareeb Nawaz.

Famous Shaikhs

Shaikh Jalaluddin Tabrezi:- Multan.

Shaikh Ziauddin Zakaria:- Multan.

Shaikhul Islam Jamaluddin Bostami

Children of Sultan Altamash

Sultan Nasiruddin

Sultan Raziuddin

Sultan Mazuddin Bahram Shah

Sultan Outbuddin Mohammed

Sultan Malik Jamaluddin Masood

Malik Shahabuddin Mohammed

Sultan Elauddin Masood Shah

Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmood

Sultan Ghayasuddin Mohammed Shah

Sultan Ruknuddin Feroz Shah

Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmood Shah
Razia Sultana.

Sultana Razia binte Shamsuddin Altamash

634H-638H(1237-1241AD)=4 yrs.

Sultan Altamash loved his daughter **Razia** too much, because she was obedient to her father and use to worship with her father. She use to help her father in making Wudhu/ablution.

Sultan was so much pleased with her daughter **Razia** that he decided to give her the **Power** after himself.

After the death of Altamash his son Ruknuddin was given the Power but he killed his brother Mazuddin. Razia was sad and annoyed. One day she went for Jumma prayer, and after the prayer she gave a speech regarding his oppressed murdered brother which motivated the people and they killed Ruknuddin.

The courtiers decided and put Razia on throne.

Some of the courtiers were in favour and some were against and they started conspiring against her.

Razia was brave, wise & tactful, so with wisdom she tackled the matter and defeated her opponent.

Mazuddin Bahram Shah bin Shamsuddin Altamash defeated his sister **Razia** and she disappeared. Later on her dead body was found and buried.

There are few stories about her death but none is confirmed.

Qualities

She was a religious women and follower of **Imam Abu Hanifa RA.**

She was very punctual of salat and particular in making zikr of **Allah.**

634H-Qurmati's attacked on **Jama masjid Delhi on Friday prayer** and killed few thousands of muslims. **Razia's wazeer** came with some soldiers and killed all the **Qurmati's.**

The Qurmati's when they were defeated and crushed by the Abasi Khulafa they flew away to Hind/India.

Hassan bin Sabah(jew) was the founder of this group and shiya were the followers.

Hilaku Khan crushed them and tried to finished them from the earth.

Sultan Mazuddin Bahram Shah bin Altamash

638H-639H(1241-1242AD)=1 yr.

He was killed by his wazeer.

Sultan Alauddin Masood Shah bin Ruknuddin Feroze

639H-644H(1242-1246AD)=4 yrs.

642H-Raja Jainagar attacked on **Lakhnowti. Sultan sent Samar Khan, he defeated the Raja and became Ruler of Lakhnowti.**

642H-Mango Khan Moghal attacked on **Ouch. Masood Khan** himself came to face, but the **Moghals returned back.**

644H-Masood Shah started cruelty and indulged in songs & play and enjoyment. The result was that riots and disturbance started in the kingdom, so the courtiers arrested him and his uncle **Nasiruddin** was throned.

Sultan Nasiruddin Mahmood Shah bin Altamash

644H-664H(1246-1265AD)=20 yrs.

Qualities

He was brave, just, honest & pious worshipper.

He never spent a single penny of the treasury on himself.

*He earned his expenses from writing **Quran**.*

He had only one wife and no maid servant. One day his wife complaint of burning her hand due to cooking bread. He said that the treasury is of general public otherwise I would have purchased a maid servant for you.

*He had great honour & fear of **Prophet SA** in his heart.*

*Story of fear & honour of **Prophet SA**.*

*He had an assistant named Mohammed and he use to call him by his name. One day he called him Tajuddin. He didn't came for two days. **Sultan** called him and asked the reason of not coming. He said you didn't called me by name so I thought you are angry. So I felt sad and went home. **Sultan** said I was not angry but because I was not in Wudhu/Ablution so I could not say **Mohammed**.*

***Sultan** was mostly busy in the worship of **Almighty Allah** so **Ghayasuddin Balban** was looking after the kingdom affairs.*

***Ghayasuddin** was very brave, full of wisdom and successful administrator.*

***Ghayasuddin** was most successful ruler.*

Incidence, Battles & Victories

*644H-Balban was sent towards the **Raja of Kohistan Judi** who supported the **Modhals**.*

*645H-Nasiruddin captured **Fort Nanda/Talinda in Qannauj** and **Balban** defeated **Rana Mulki**.*

*646H-Balban attacked on **Raja of Ratanbur** and **Khwaja Bahauddin Aibak** was martyred.*

*647H-Sultan married his daughter to **Balban**.*

*648H-Azuddin revolted in **Multan**, but returned to **Auch** unsuccessful.*

*649H-Azuddin revolted in **Nagore**, but when **Nasiruddin** reached there he surrendered.*

***Sultan** defeated **Raja Nahar Dev** and captured **Narv**.*

*650H-Balban attacked on **Gawalyar**. **Sultan** traveled to **Lahore & Ghazni via Auch & Multan**.*

*651H-Balban made his center **Nagore** and went on attacking against **Nahardev**.*

*652H-Sultan obtained lot of booty from **Bijnaur** and he returned back to **Delhi**.*

*653H-Qatlagh Khan revolted, **Balban** pushed him back upto **Kalenger**.*

*655H-Azuddin Balban & Qatlagh Khan revolted and advanced towards **Delhi**, but was defeated*

*656H-Sultan moved towards **Multan** to face the **Moghals** who reached upto **Multan**, but they returned back.*

*658H-Balban crushed the riots of **Mewati**. A deligate came to **Delhi** from **Hilaku Khan**.*

664H-Sultan died.

Sultan Ghayasuddin Balban

664H-686H(1265-1287AD)=22 yrs.

***Balban** was a Turk and he was arrested during **Tatari attack**. He was purchased by **Khwaja Jamaluddin Misri**. He nourished him like his son and gave education, training and dedicated **Islamic moral character**. **Khwaja** then brought him to **Sultan Altamash**.*

***Balban** by nature had good qualities, so he got rise quickly.*

*In **Razia** period **Balban** was **Ameer of hunters**.*

*In **Bahram Shah** period **Balban** was **Ameer Akhor**.*

*In **Alauddin Masood** period **Balban** became **Ameer of Guards**.*

*In **Nasiruddin** period **Balban** was solely incharge of the kingdom.*

*After the death of **Nasiruddin** the courtiers made him **Sultan**.*

Qualities

He was religious, pious, kind & well mannered.

He was generous and soft to the general public.

He was ver hard on the rioters & revolters.

He was very kind & merciful but he maintained his awe & dignity.

His awe, dignity & terror was on the heart of people.

He never use to be free with anyone.

His period was of justice, peace, mercy & comfort. General public was very happy with him.

He was very brave and wise.

Kingdoms Administration

Balban was very careful in maintaining the administration. All the people in his administration was sincere, honest and pious. Sober and well mannered people were allowed to come in his court. He himself never laughed with voice nor anyone dared to laugh with voice.

*It was his wise administration that in spite of facing the challenges of **Moghals** on one side, the internal revolts of **Hindu Raja's** on the other side. **He** ruled the kingdom successfully in **Nasiruddin period and n his own period, i.e more than 40 years.***

*It was his brave and wise administration that even **Changez Khan** who terrified the entire world of that time did not dare to attack on Hind/India.*

Generosity of Balban

*During **Changez Khani mutiny 15 princess of Turkistan, Mawaraun Nahar, Khurasan, Iraq, Persia, Sham & Rome** took assailant in the Kingdom of Balban. Balban was so generous that every prince was resided in a separate locality as a Royal guest.*

Justice of Balban

Once Balban advised his son and said forgiveness of a king by Almighty Allah is on four things:-

*1-He should fear **Allah** and make arrangement of peace & comfort for his public.*

2-He should end wretchedness & adultery from his kingdom.

3-He should give the administrative services to the god fearing, honest & well behaved persons.

4-He should stop cruelty & oppression and should not favour anyone in doing justice.

He also warned his son that if anyone of you will do cruelty or oppression, then I will not leave you without punishment.

*Once **Malik Naeq an Ameer of Badayun** whipped a sweeper so much that he died. When **Balban** went to **Badayun**, the wife of sweeper came in the court and requested justice.*

***Balban** called **Malik Naeq** and whipped him to death. Moreover he hanged the informers who did not informed, on the main gate of the city.*

Intelligence Department

*To have correct and in time informations, **Balban** established an Intelligence department and took strict actions due to which no one dare to hide or give wrong information.*

Training of Armed forces

***Balban** gave the command to honest, religious and most reliable persons. **He** himself use to visit the army units in different part of the kingdom.*

Kindness & Mercy of Balban

*Once **Balban** came to know that the army personal of the time of **Altamash** have gone old and weak. So he ordered to take back the facilities provided by the kingdom, and take care of their sustenance only. They came weeping to the **Qazi Malik Fakhruddin**. **The Qazi came to Balban** and said "**Oh Sultan you have deprived the weaks, from your kindness.***

Tomorrow if Allah also deprive us of his mecy then what will happen. Balban wept too much and retained the facilities.

Victory of Bengal

***Tughral** slave of **Balban** was the Governor of Bengal. He revolted and formed an independent government.*

***Balban** sent twice the army to crush the revolt but retained unsuccessful. So he himself took the army and his son **Boghra Khan** and advanced towards **Bengal**. With great difficulty he managed to reach Bengal. Till that time **Tughral** flew away to **Jajnagar**. **Fortunately Balban** got the trace of **Tughral**. **Balban** attacked and killed him.*

***Balban** made his son **Boghra Khan, Governor of Bengal** and took oath to be obedient otherwise your end will be the same as of these rebellions.*

Martyrdom of Prince Mohammed Sultan

The elder son of **Balban** was **Mohammed Sultan**. He had the same qualities of his father but he was martyred while fighting with **Moghals**.

Balban could not bear this worry & concern of the death of his son and after 4 years he also died.

Sultan Mazuddin Keqbad bin Boghra Khan

686H-

Keqbad was indulged in fun & enjoyment and handed over the responsibility of the kingdom to his assistant **Nizamuddin**.

Nizamuddin took the opportunity and started planning to become **Sultan**. So first of all he killed **Kekhsaru**, and then killed the new muslims **Moghal** living in **Dehli**.

Murder of Nizamuddin

Nizamuddin was poisoned to death.

Keqbad was an unsuccessful ruler and last **Sultan** from the **Slaves family**.

Khilji Kingdom

1-Sultan Jalaluddin Khilji

689H-695H(1290-1295AD)=6 yrs.

He was a commander of **Ghayasuddin Balban**.

Qualities

He was religious, pious, kind, humble, simple & god fearing.

He never did any killing.

He always pardoned his enemy.

He always honoured the family of **Sultan Ghayasuddin Balban**.

He became Sultan but he never sat on the throne.

695H-Alauddin Khilji was nephew & Son-in-law of Jalaluddin Khilji, but because of his greediness, he killed his kind and merciful uncle.

2-Sultan Alauddin Khilji

695H-716H(1295-1316AD)=21 yrs.

He was cruel and a murderer but he was brilliant and of firm determination.

He was a successful Ruler, best administrator and a conquerer.

He defeated the **Moghals** in the battlefield **Kelly near Lahore**.

Reforms

He established **Intelligence Department**

He made **Security arrangements** on the roads.

He left drinking wine and ordered prohibition of drinking.

He ended the **Landlord system in agriculture/farming**.

He discussed and took opinion for permanent solution for the attack of **Moghals**.

He increased the armed force, with the result **Moghals** were always defeated.

His period was peaceful, comfortable and of happiness for the people.

He maintained the rates of things and everything was cheap in his period. Merchants became honest.

He constructed mosques, minarets, forts, ponds etc. in quite a large number.

In his last 10 years even the general public became honest and just.

Incidence & Victories

704H-Sultan captured **Warangal** and obtained 100 elephants, 700 horses and plenty of jewels.

706H-Malik Kafoor slave captured lot of booty and arrested **Raja Ramdev**.

709H-Malik Kafoor captured **Capital of Malabar & Maisoor**. Obtained in booty 612 elephants, 20,000 horses and 29,400 tones gold, which was distributed amongst the people.

Sultan Shahabuddin bin Alauddin

716H(1316AD)

Sultan Outbuddin Mubarak bin Alauddin
716H-720H(1316-1320AD)=4 yrs.

Nasiruddin Khusroo Shah
720H(1320AD)

Tughlaq kingdom

Sultan Ghayasuddin Tughlaq
720H-725H(1320-1325AD)=5 yrs.

He was also Turk.

He re-established the kingdom and brought peace and justice.

He was religious, pious & punctual of prayers, fasting etc.

720H-He captured Warangal.

724H-He crushed the riots of Bengal.

Sultan Mohammed bin Tughlaq
725H-752H(1325-1351AD)=27 yrs.

His kingdom was entire Hind/India including Tilanga & Daccan.

He was a great Hanafi scholar, expert in Astronomy, Mathematics,

He was very wise, brilliant having very sharp memory.

He knew Arabic & Persian.

He was very good speaker.

He had good knowledge of History.

He was religious, pious and had honour and respect of deen.

He was punctual of Fardh, Sunnat & Mustahab.

He never even touched wine, it was strictly prohibited. Beetle was commonly used.

He was very generous and took care of poor, widow & orphan.

He use to give more than enough to pious ones but still thought that I have done nothing.

He was very brave, courageous and of firm determination.

Reforms

He made separate localities for scholars, shaikhs, leaders, wazeers, army personals, carpenters, technical personals etc.

He constructed mosques, bazaars, bathrooms, etc.in each locality.

Only in Dehli there were 2,000 mosques, 1,000 madaris, khanqah & bathrooms were countless.

Wells were also plenty in number.

In army 900,000 were horsemen.

Sultan had his own textile factory.

In the court of Sultan there were 1,200 physician, 10,000 hunters riding on horses with falcon on their hands.

When Sultan use to go for hunting 100,000 horse rider & 200 elephants use to accompany him, wooden mobile houses were pulled by 200 camels, plenty of tents were also alongwith him.

Department of Intelligence was very strong. Each and every news use to reach Sultan.

Postal system was also very quick. There were 3 post offices at each mile.

Daily in the morning and evening 20,000 courtiers attended his court and then meal was served.

200 scholars sat with Sultan during meal and religious discussions were done.

734-741H:-Ibn Battuta served as Qazi in Dehli.

The Court of Justice had full power even Sultan had to come to the court in case of complaint against him. Sultan use to stand in the court unless he was allowed by the Qazi to sit.

In spite of all good qualities he could not control the riots at the end of his kingdom because of his hard and cruel decisions and orders, and his kingdom failed in the last days of his life.

746-747H-Ibn Battuta visits Southeast Asia & China.

Sultan Feroze Shah Tughlaq

752H-790H(1351-1388AD)=38 yrs.

Qualities

He was very kind, well mannered and religious.

*He established and implemented true **Islamic laws in the kingdom.***

He strictly prohibited the females to go to the graveyards.

He stopped using gold & silver utensils.

He stopped decorating the handle of swords with jewels.

He stopped the use of golden threads in the dresses.

He stopped silken dress for men.

He established peace, justice, comforts of life to the people in the kingdom.

He was fond of collecting slaves, but full facilities were provided to the slaves. Religious & technical education were given to the slaves.

He made agricultural development and improved the water supply and canal system.

He made everything cheap and easily available in his time.

His period was one of the Best period in the history. Famine and increase in rate never happened in his period.

He made industrial development in the kingdom.

He developed new cities.

He constructed rest houses with free boarding & lodging facilities.

He was fond of gardens, so he made plenty of gardens.

He constructed 3 Royal palaces.

He provided all kind of facilities to general public.

He protected the ancient memorial structures.

He made hospitals & clinics.

He constructed mosques & madaris.

He constructed roads, bridges, wells, graveyards, bathroom etc.

*His remarkable work was shifting of two minarets of 320 BC to **Dehli.***

He established charity funds for poors.

He established libraries of different religions.

*He respected the scholars and great scholars were present in his time. One of the very famous scholar was **Maulana Jalaluddin Roomi Ra.***

Victories

*760H-Peace treaty was signed with **Bengal.***

*He captured **Sindh & Nagarkot.***

Sultan Tughlaq Shah Sani(2nd) bin Fateh Khan bin Feroz Shah

790H-791H(1388-1389AD)=6 months.

He was stupid and enjoying song & play. So he was killed.

Sultan Zafar Khan

791H-792H

Sultan Nasiruddin Mohammed

792H-795H

Sultan Sikandar Shah

795H

Sultan Mahmood Shah

795H-813H

800H-Taimur went on capturing the **Hind/Indian** territories until he reached **Dehli**. **Ameer Taimur** arranged his army in **Paniput** battlefield and as usual prayed to **Almighty Allah** for victory.

Mahmood Shah fought bravely in the battlefield of **Paniput** but was defeated.

801H-Sack of Dehli lead to fall of **Tughlaq dynasty**.

801H-After staying 15 days **Taimur** left **Dehli** and offered **salat** in **Fort Ferozabad** and reached **Merath**, captured it and reached **Hardwar**, captured it and crossed **River Ganges** got victory on **Masuri, Nagarkot, Jammu** and returned **Afghnistan**.

801H-When Taimur left **Hind**, **Iqbal Khan** captured the throne of **Dehli**, and kept on fighting with **Hindu Raja's**.

801H-Mahmood Shah formed his kingdom in **Qannauj**.

808H-Iqbal Khan was killed fighting **Governor of Multan**.

815H-Mahmood Shah died and there was no one to be throned in **Dehli**.

817H-Kingdom of Hind was taken over by **Syed Family**.

Syed Family Kingdom

817H-855H(1414-1451AD)=38 yrs.

Syed Khizr Khan

817H-824H=7 yrs.

817H-Khizr Khan sent his Wazeer **Tajul Nulk** to **Ketahar**. He crushed the revolt.

819H-Wazeer Tajul Muluk went to **Gawalyar** and crushed the revolt.

820H-Khizr Khan sent **Zerak Khan-Hakim Samana** to crush the revolt by **Malik Tughai & Turks**. He came back successful.

821H-Wazeer Tajul Mulk again went to **Ketahar** and crushed the revolt by the **Raja**.

822H-Khizr Khan himself had to go to **Ketahar** and crush the revolt. Then he went to **Badayun** to crush the revolt by **Hakim Badayun Mahabat Khan**. Then he crushed the revolt in **Jalandhar**.

824H-Khizr Khan crushed the revolt in **Mevat & Gawalyar**.

824H-He fell ill and died.

Syed Mubarak Shah bin Khizr Khan.

824H-837H=13 yrs.

824H-Mubarak Shah crushed the revolt in **Lahore** and developed it.

826H-Mubarak Shah crushed the revolt in **Ketahar/Rohale Khand**.

826H-Mahabat Khan-Hakim Badayun came and asked apology.

829H-Mubarak Shah crushed the riots by **Mavati's**, and returned back **Dehli** in 831H.

833H-Mubarak Shah fought with the slave **Faulad Khan** for 4 years who revolted in **Sir Hind**, ultimately he killed him.

837H-Mubarak Shah was killed by the hindu's by the conspiracy of his **Wazeer Sarwarul Mulk** in the mosque in his city **Mubarak Abad**.

Syed Mohammed Shah bin Fareed Khan bin Khizr Khan.

837H-847H=10 yrs.

840H-Wazeer Sarwarul Mulk wanted to kill **Mohammed Shah** and become the king. So **Mohammed Shah** got him killed.

847H-Mohammed Shah died.

Syed Alauddin Shah

847H-883H=36 yrs.

He was an incapable king, moreover he made a mistake to shift the capital to **Badayun**. **855H-Ultimately Bahlul Lodhi** captured **Dehli**.

883H-Alauddin ruled for 7 years in **Dehli** and 28 years in **Badayun** and died. On his death **Syed kingdom ended**.

Lodhi Kingdom

855H-932H(1451-1526H)=77 yrs.

Lodhi was one of the tribe of Afghanistan.

Bahlul Lodhi

855H-893H=38 yrs.

Bahlul's uncle was **Hakim of Punjab**, at the time of his death he married his daughter to **Bahlul** and made him **Hakim of Punjab**. **Bahlul** made several attempts to capture **Dehli**, and ultimately he defeated **Alauddin Shah** and captured **Dehli**.

893H-Bahlul defeated **Mahmood Shah** and captured **Jonpur**.

In 38 years he captured Kara, Bahraich, Lakhnow, Kalpi, Badayun, Do-Aba, Atawa, Gawalyar, Sindh, Odepur, Sanbhal, Aligarh, Burhanabad & Punjab.

This surprising victory was because of the following qualities:-

Qualities

He was very strict in following **Islam** and strong in its implementation.

He offered five times of **Salat** in the mosque, and listened to the problems of the people and make decisions himself with wisdom and mercy.

He was brave, kind hearted and took care of the needs of poor.

He use to distribute the booties amongst the army and he himself passed his life on dry bread.

He never let the courtiers stand in front of him.

Sultan Sikandar Lodhi bin Bahlul

894H-923H=29 yrs.

Capital:- Agra.

Qualities

Sikandar was like his father and had great qualities.

He was very particular about implementation of Islamic laws.

He was unaware about greediness.

He was handsome by appearance and similarly very clean and nice from inside.

He was very simple and never wasted time in pomp & show.

He was God fearing and merciful to the everyone.

He was brave and observed justice.

He use to offer **salat** in masjid in congregation, after **Zohar** prayer he use to go to the scholar and recite **Quran**.

He slept very little at night. After **Isha** prayer he had discussions with top level scholars about the Islamic orders till midnight, after that dinner was served. His whole life was spent accordingly.

He was so honest that if the wealth of entire world was put in front of him he would not deviate from the **Commandment of Allah**.

His intelligence personals were very honest & efficient, each and every report reached the **Sultan** immediately. No one dare to deviate from his orders. The rates of each and every thing were fixed and **Sultan** himself kept check on the rates which was very cheap.

His intelligence was so efficient and perfect that people use to think that **jinn's** are under control of **Sultan**.

He made too much effort in doing justice in difficult & complicated cases.

Stories of Justice

1-Once two brothers in the army was rewarded with red jewel each. While one brother was going home the other brother gave his jewel to give it to his wife. When this brother came home he asked his wife about the jewel she refused to receive any jewel. He went to the court for justice.

The judge asked for evidence. The cheater brother brought two false witnesses. The judge because of witnesses had to give decision in the favour of cheater brother, and asked the woman

to present the jewel. She went to Agra in the court of Sultan. Sultan was sure that the jewel was not with the woman but because of the witness he could not go against the law. **Sultan** thought over it and at last asked the witness that if the jewel was given in front of you, you must have seen the jewel? They replied yes. **Sultan** gave a block of wax to each and sent them to two different places and asked them to make a sample of the shape and size of the jewel. When they came back both the samples made were entirely different. **Now Sultan** warned them to tell the fact. So they came out with the fact and the reality was found.

2-Once a Syed reported that his land was snatched by **Mian Malik** Landlord. **Sultan** ordered the judge to decide the case. The case was so complicated that two months passed and it could not be decided.

When **Sultan** knew he ordered that no one will go today unless the case is decided. The court remained opened till late night and decision was made in the favour of the **Syed**.

Sultan called **Mian Malik** landlord and when he confessed his crime three times in front of everyone and felt ashamed. **Sultan** let him free and never gave him any land in future.

3-Once a man found in his land a treasure of 15,000 ashrafi. **Qasim the Hakim** took it from him.

The man reported to **Sultan**. **Sultan** ordered the **Hakim** to return it to the man. **Hakim** said that the man does not deserve this heavy amount. **Sultan** sent an order to the **Hakim** that you stupid man, the one who has given this treasure knows better that who is deserving and who is not. We are all the slaves of Allah and He knows better that who deserves what.

Incidence & Reforms

Women were not allowed to go to graveyard.

Taazia were not allowed in **Moharram**

He constructed plenty of **Masajid** and in each mosque one **Khateeb/Speaker**, one **Qari** and one **sweeper** was appointed and monthly salary was paid to them.

In winter woolen clothing & shawls were distributed to the poors.

Every friday a fixed amount was distributed to the poors.

In **Ramadhan** too much money was distributed amongst the poors.

Sultan on Eid & 12 R.Awal use to free all those prisoner who were arrested due to non-payment of taxes.

Farming was in abundance and things were very cheap.

Businessmen and professionals were very happy and remained busy in their works.

No thieves and robbers were in the kingdom. **Caravans** traveled peacefully without any fear.

Agra a village was converted in a big beautiful city. This shows **Sultan's** interest in the development of the kingdom.

Agra to Dholpur gardens and buildings were made.

Scholars were honoured and respected too much by **Sultan and his courtiers**.

Scholars from **Persia, Arab, Hind and Bukhara** were rushing towards **Agra** and they were being rewarded by the **Sultan**.

Sultan use to honour and respect **Maulana Shaikh Abdullah** too much. Whenever **Sultan** reached during his teaching period, he quietly sat in a corner, so that the class may not be disturbed.

Sultan's court was full of scholars and most of the time religious discussions were going on.

In his period even hindus started learning Persian and benefited with **Islamic Studies**.

Sultan's good qualities were transferred in his courtiers also.

Sultan fell ill but he was not negligent about his kingdom affairs.

Sultan died in his illness in Ziqad 923H(Nov.1517AD) in **Agra** and buried in **Dehli**.

Sultan Ibraheem Lodhi bin Sikandar Lodhi

923H-932H(1517-1526AD)=9 yrs.

Sultan Ibraheem was also like his father.

His period was the best period and peaceful period.

*His period was the cheapest period of **Hind/Indian history**. Each and everything was cheap.
His period was the best period in agriculture & farming because rainfall was plenty and in time.
932H-Moghal King Babar attacked with only **12,000 army on Dehli** and defeated **100,000
army of Ibraheem Lodhi**.
Lodhi kingdom ended and Moghal kingdom started in Hind/India.*

HIND-INDIAN HISTORY-contd.**2-Moghal Kingdom in Hind**

Moghal kingdom starts from Ameer Taimur.

Ameer Taimur s/o Ameer Turaghaj

771H-807H (1370-1405AD)=36 yrs.

Age:-70 yrs.

Birth:-736H. In City Sabz(green).

Death:-807H. In Anzar.

History:-Fore father of Hilaku Khan and Ameer Taimur was the same.

Hilaku Khan made his uncle Yajal Khan - Hakim of Tabrez.

Alangar Khan s/o Yajal Khan accepted Islam. He was titled as Ameerul Umara.

Ameer Turaghaj s/o Ameer Barkal s/o Alanghar Khan was the follower of Shaikh Shamsuddin Kalal.

Kingdom:-From Wall of China to End of Asia border, and Aral sea to Persian gulf.

Jalaluddin Mohammed Miran Shah s/o Taimur

807H-810H(1405-1407AD)=2 yrs.

Sultan Mohammed Mirza s/o Jalaluddin

810H-855H(1407-1451AD)=45 yrs.

Sultan Abu Saeed Mirza s/o Mohammed Mirza

855H-873H(1451-1469AD)=18 yrs.

Sultan Umar Shaikh Mirza s/o Abu Saeed

873H-891H(1469-1486AD)=18 yrs.

Sultan Zaheeruddin Babar s/o Umar Shaikh

891H-932H(1486-1526AD)=41 yrs.

Age- 57 yrs.

Birth- 880H. In Samarqand.

Death- 937H.

History:- Babar was turned out from Samarqand by his strong Moghal enemy Uzbek.

Babar formed his kingdom in Kabul by defeating the ruler.

Babar captured Samarqand after defeating Uzbek. But after 8 months he was again defeated by Uzbek and after great difficulty he reached Kabul.

Babar strengthened his army during the 5 years stay in Kabul.

Babar attacked 5 times on Hind.

925H(1519AD)- He attacked first time via Attak on Punjab.

He captured most of the territories of Punjab and posted his governor, but as soon as he returned he lost those territories.

He captured Lahore.

931H(1525AD)- He captured Punjab.

Moghal Kingdom in Hind/India

932H-1273H(1526-1857AD)=340 yrs.

1-King Zaheeruddin Babar

932H-937H(1526-1530AD)=5 yrs.

Qualities

Babar was very strong bodied of average height. He use run on the wall of fort with two persons held under his arms.

He was a brave rider and best swimmer.

He was handsome, well mannered, gentle, kind and humane.

He was knowledgeable, a good prose and poetry writer. His book 'Tuzuk Babari'"is very popular.

He use to forgive his enemy.

He was Hanafi, religious, pious and very punctual in offering prayers and all obligatory worships.

He was a good scholar and hated customary traditions against Islam.

He was expert of Turkish language and wrote several books in prose & poetry.

He was very generous and his justice was also well known.

Incidence & Victories

932H(1526AD)- He attacked on **Dehli** with 10,000 army against a huge army of 100,000 of **Sultan Ibraheem Lodhi** at **Panipat**. He fought bravely and tactfully and with the help of **Allah** defeated the huge army. **Sultan Ibraheem Lodhi** and thousands of army were killed in the battlefield. He visited the historical buildings and settled in the Palace of **Sultan Ibraheem Lodhi in Agra**.

933H(1527AD)- **Raja Sangram Singh** attacked on **Babar**. He fought bravely and tactfully and defeated the strong **Rajput** army, and captured **Rajputana**.

Now **Babar** settled in **Agra** and developed and beautified **Agra** by constructing nice buildings and gardens.

The Afghans of Bihar revolted. **Babar** crossed river **Ganges** and defeated the **Afghans**.

Babar crushed the riots in **Bengal** and captured **Bengal**.

Babar deputed his son **Humayun** to rule in **Kabul**.

943H(1530AD)-Death of Babar:- **Humayun** came to visit his father in **Hind** and fell ill. The illnesses became serious and the hakeems lost hope. **Babar** loved his son too much, he decided to sacrifice his life for his son. He took three rounds of the bed of his son and made supplication to **Almighty Allah** with full concentration and devotion, and asked **Allah** to transfer his sons illnesses. The doa was accepted, **Humayun** got cured and **Babar** fell ill and died. He died in **Agra** and buried in **Kabul in Noor Afshan Garden**.

Babar wrote his own life history in detail with truth. He also mentions about his leaving of drinking of wine.

Scholars

President Shaikh Zainuddin.

Mulla Saaduddin Taftazani.

Mohaddis Mir Jamaluddin.

2-Naseeruddin Mohammed Humayun s/o Babar

937H-963H(1530-1556AD)=26 yrs.

Age- 50 yrs.

Birth- 913H.

Death- 963H.

Humayun gave the following Rulerships to his brothers according to the advise of his father:-

1-Mirza Kamran- Ruler of Kabul & Qandhar.

2-Mirza Askari- Ruler of Sambhal.

3-Mirza Handal- Ruler of Alwar.

Qualities

He was learned, brave and had the ability of ruling the kingdom, but unfortunately had to face defeats.

He followed the advise of his father and behaved kindly with his brothers.

Riots Revolts & Battles

The Afghans were still holding the powers at different places, so **Humayun** had to face difficulties. His biggest **Afghan** enemy was **Bahadur Shah**.

He crushed the **Afghan** riots at **Jonpur**.

He captured **Kalenjar & Bihar**.

He defeated **Bahadur Shah** and captured **Gujrat**. **Bahadur Shah** died by drowning in sea.

Sher Khan captured **Jonpur & Chinar**, and fought with **Humayun** at the battlefield of **Chaunsa**. **Humayun** was defeated and jumped in river **Ganges** to escape. **Nizam**

Saqqa(water carrier) saved his life with his leather water bag. Later Humayun rewarded him with giving one day kingdom.

Sher Khan after the victory announced his **Kingship** and adopted the title of **Sher Shah**. **Humayun** reattacked but was again defeated by **Sher Shah at Qannauj**. **Humayun** escaped to **Qandhar and then to Iran**.

Sher Shah Suri

1540-1545AD=5yrs.

King of Hind/India, captured Punjab, Frontier province, Malva, Sind, Rajputana & Kalenjar.

His actual name was **Fareed Khan**. **He** was the son of an **Afghan land lord Mian Hassan**. **1494AD-He** went to **Jonpur** and expertised in **Arabic, Persian, History & Fiqha**.

Qualities

His greatest historical record was his **System of Rulership** on the basis of which the entire **Moghal kingdom** was based later.

His 5 years of rulership was the best rulership.

He brought security, peace & comfort in his kingdom. General public specially the farmers were enjoying the life, due to which things were very cheap.

He himself strictly followed **Islam** and implemented **Islam** in his kingdom.

He respected the scholars and shaikhs.

His kingdom was real Islamic Kingdom.

Daily Routine

He use to get up early in the morning, after **Fajar** prayer recited **Quraan**, made **zikr of Allah**. Then performed the kingdom affairs. Offered **Zohar** prayer and after taking lunch took a little rest, and again looked after the kingdom affairs. **He** was very punctual in offering his prayers.

Reforms

He made reforms in the army, if any soldier did any cruelty he was punished severely.

His army consisted of 150,000 cavalry-men & 55,000 soldier-men.

His greatest reform was construction of **Grand Trunk Road, From Bengal to NWFP**.

He also constructed one road from **Agra to Rajputana** and other from **Lahore to Multan via Burhanpur**. **He** also constructed rest houses, wells and **mosques** at intervals along the road side.

He also planted trees on both sides of the roads. In the rest houses meals were arranged for muslims & hindus.

Incidence & Victories

He went to **Bihar** and entered in the courtier of **Sultan Mohammed-Ruler of Bihar**.

He killed a lion and got the title of **Sher Khan**.

He became **Assistant of Queen of Mohammed** on his death.

He had to return back to **Jonpur** at the death of the **Queen**.

He collected a strong army. While **Sultan Mahmood-King of Bengal** sent an army to capture **Bihar**. **Sher Khan** defeated the army and became the **Ruler of Bihar**.

Sher Khan captured **Jonpur & Chinar**, and fought with **Humayun** at the battlefield of **Chaunsa**. **Humayun** was defeated and jumped in river **Ganges** to escape. **Nizam**

Saqqa(water carrier) saved his life with his leather water bag. Later Humayun rewarded him with giving one day kingdom.

Sher Khan after the victory announced his **Kingship** and adopted the title of **Sher Shah**.

Humayun reattacked but was again defeated by **Sher Shah at Qannauj**. **Humayun** escaped to **Qandhar and then to Iran**.

Sher Shah Suri became the **King of Hind/India** and ruled for **5 years**.

His kingdom was real Islamic Kingdom.

1545AD- Sher Shah was wounded by explosives and later he died in this wound.

His kingdom was cause of pride in the Islamic History.

1545AD- After the death of Sher Shah, Afghan kingdom became weak. Punjab was taken over by Sikandar Lodhi.

Return of Humayun

1554AD- Humayun with 15,000 army captured **Lahore**

1555AD- He defeated Sikandar Lodhi and entered Dehli victorious.

1556AD- Unfortunately Humayun slipped from the stairs, remained unconscious for three days and died.

Reforms

Humayun established religious schools and religious teachings were common in his period.

His two new schools one in **Agra** and other in **Dehli** became very popular.

3-Jalaluddin Mohammed Akbar The Great s/o Humayun

963H-1014H(1556- 1606AD)=51 yrs.

Age- 65 yrs.

Birth- 1542AD.

Death- 1606AD. Grave at Bagh-e-Sikandari.

Qualities

Akbar was kind hearted, religious and respected the scholars in the beginning, but later he was changed because of the differences amongst the muslim scholars.

He used to offer prayers in congregation and perform **Haj**.

Political Tactics

Akbar favoured the Hindus too much, also favoured and honoured the people of each and every religion.

He also celebrated some of the customs of other religion.

Deen-e-Ilahi

Akbar established a political religion called **Deen-e-Ilahi** in which he added some of the customary things.

Akbar became the **Shaikh** and people of every religion started entering in his religion and became the follower of **Akbar**. **Muslim & Hindu** came close to each other and formed an united culture.

Revolt by Prince Saleem/Jehangeer

Prince Saleem revolted and captured **Allahabad, Awadh & Bihar**. **Akbar** dealt politically and gave him the **Rulership** of those provinces.

Incidence Battles & Victories

1554AD-Humayun sent **Akbar** at the age of **12** years with **Bairam Khan** to fight with **Sikandar Lodhi** and he got victory at **Sir Hind**.

1556AD-Akbar was throned and his name was read in the **Khutba/Friday speech**.

Akbar crushed the revolt of his wazeer **Haimu Baqqal** and was assassinated by **Bairam Khan**.

Akbar crushed the revolt by **Sikandar Lodhi**.

Akbar strengthened his kingdom and formed a **Council of Ministers** and named **Nauratan** in which muslims & hindus were included.

Members of Nauratan

Khane Azam Azeez Mirza Kokaltash

Abul Faiz Faizi

Abul Fazal

Hakeem Hummam

Raja Beerbal

Raja Todarmal

Victories

1567AD-Crushed the revolt by Ameer Udham Khan, Abdullah Khan & Asif Khan.

1572AD-Defeated the **Raja's of Jaipur, Jodhpur & Chitor** and got complete victory.
1573AD-**Akbar reached Gujrat** in only 9 days and attacked with only 300 army on the rioters, **Hussain Mirza** was arrested and **Ikhtiarul Mulk** was killed.
1575AD-Defeated the **Pathans** and captured **Bengal, Bihar & Urissa**.
1586AD-**Kashmeer** was captured and included in **Hind/India**.
1592AD-Captured complete **Sind**.
1596AD-Captured **Qandhar**.
1600AD-Captured **Ahmed Nagar**.
1601AD-Captured **Khandes**.

Akbar's Kingdom

In the North from Kabul Qandhar & Kashmeer till in the South Ahmed Nagar and in the East upto Urissa.

Madaris in Akbar's Period

Religious teaching was very common in the time of **Akbar**. Many madaris were made. All the big scholars had his own madrasa.

Religious Libraries

Akbar's Royal Library was grandeur.

Library of Faizi had 400,000 books.

The Ameer's had their own library.

Akbar got translated hundreds of books of **Sanskrit and Hindi in Persian**.

4-Nooruddin Jahangir s/o Akbar

1014H-1036H(1606-1627AD)=22 yrs.

Age- 39 yrs.

Birth-997H(1589AD)

Death-1036H(1627AD). Buried at the bank of River Ravi in Lahore.

Jahangir's Birth

Akbar's child use to die before birth or few days after birth. So **Akbar** went to **Shaikh Saleem Chishti of Fatehpur Sikri** a great Shaikh of his time for doa. **Shaikh** made doa and **Akbar** developed **Fatehpur Sikri** with royal palaces and made it the **Capital of Hind**. A child was born and was named **Sultan Saleem** later became **King Nooruddin Jahangir**.

Qualities

Jahangir was religious and imposed justice.

Jahangir's justice is very famous in the **Moghal history**. His **Chain of justice** hanging in front of his palace was very popular.

Jahangir ended the stupidity of **Deen-e-Ilahi** created by his father **Akbar**, and established true **Islamic rules**.

Visit of Kabul

1607AD-**Jahangir** visited **Kabul** and made a beautiful garden called **Bagh-e-Jahan Ara**.

Jahangir's Marriage

Jahangir married **Noor Jahan**. **She** was beautiful and having several good qualities. **She** became so popular that in fact she ruled the kingdom.

Victory of Fort of Kangra

1622AD-**Jahangir** sent **Raja Jagat Singh & Raja Bikarmajeet** to capture **Fort of Kangra**. **They** went and sieged the fort. This was a very old fort between the mountains in the North of Lahore. There are 23 minarets and 60 gates. It is 2.5 miles x 2 miles, and there are 2 big ponds inside. After 4 months of siege **Raja Talok Chand** handed over the key.

The rest of the life **Jahangir** was busy in fighting with his own sons **Shahjahan and others**.

Establishment of Islamic Schools/Madaris

He established many Islamic Madaris.

He made a law to utilize the unclaimed funds in the construction and development of madaris.

He maintained the old madaris and schools which were deserted and became the dwellings of animals & birds.

Shaikh Abdul Haq Mohaddis Dehlvi was student during the period of Jahangir.

5-Shahabuddin Mohammed Shahjahan s/o Jahangir

1036H-1068H(1627-1658AD)= 32 yrs.

Age- 77 yrs.

Birth- 1000H. At Lahore. His Grandfather **Akbar** celebrated his birth with joy and happiness.

Death-1077H. At Agra buried in Taj Mahal.

Noor Jahan wanted to make her son-in-law **Shaharyar** the king, but **Wazeer Asif Khan** arrested her and made **(Khurram)Shahjahan the king.**

Asif Khan was awarded the post of **Hasht hazari.**

Mahabat Khan was made **Commander in Chief.**

Qualities

Shahjahan was religious. **He** use to get up an hour before **Fajar prayer time**, make ablution and offer **Tahajud Prayer.**

Incidence & Battles

1038H

Shahjahan was once weighed by silver & gold and six times weighed by crops and distributed amongst the poors.

Mahabat Khan was made **Governor of Dehli.**

Mumtaz Mahal was granted One million Rupees yearly at **Nauroze festival.**

Afzal Khan Sheerazi was made **Wazeer.**

Khanjahan revolted. He was defeated. He ran away to **Nizamul Mulk.**

1039H

King crushed the revolt of **Khanjahan.** He flew away to **Nizamul Mulk.**

Kamaluddin revolted. **Saeed Khan** crushed the revolt and killed **Kamaluddin.**

Governor of Urisa Baqar Khan captured **Fort Mansoor Garh.**

1040H

Royal army attacked on **Khanjahan**, but he again escaped.

Ambassador of Iran came to the **King** with presents & gifts.

Fateh Khan crushed the revolt by **Nizamul Mulk** and killed him.

Naseer Khan captured the **Fort of Qandhar.**

1041H

Nazar Mohammed Khan-Ruler of Balkh sent his messenger with gifts to the **King.**

Governor Qasim Khan took over the **Port of Hugly** from the **Portugies** after fight and arrested 4,000 men & women.

1042H

Fort Ghata Kheri of Malwa was captured.

76 Idolater's Temples were dismantled.

Prince Aurangzeb fought with a mad elephant.

1043H

Shahjahan traveled from **Agra to Lahore-Kashmeer-Lahore.**

1044H

Capital was shifted to **Lahore.**

Nijat Khan captured **Fort Sher garh of Sirinagar-Kashmir.**

Prince Aurangzeb was made **Commander in Chief.**

1045H

Royal army dismantled the **Idolator's Temple of Nar Singh Dev.**

Fort Chaner, Sangmeer, Nasik & Turmuk was captured.

Fort Ausa & Udey was captured.

Government of Daccan was handed over to **Prince Aurangzeb.**

1046H

Prince Aurangzeb was married with the daughter of **Shahnawaz**.
Forts of Bhojpur & Tibet was captured.

1047H

Forts Qandhar was captured.

1048H

Ali Mardan Khan was made **Governor of Kashmeer**.

Shaista Khan was made **Governor of Patna**.

1049H

Ali Mardan Khan was made **Governor of Kashmeer & Lahore**.

Queen Mumtaz Mahal w/o Shahjahan died, she was buried in **Agra** at the bank of **Jamna River** and a tall beautiful **Tomb called Taj Mahal** was constructed, which is still one of the wonders of the world. **Shahjahan** was so sad that he left all the luxuries of life for two years.

1050H

Fort Tara-garh was captured.

Ali Mardan Khan was made **Governor of Kabul**.

Shah Quli Khan was made **Governor of Kashmeer**.

1051H

Aynud-daula Asif Khan-Commander in Chief died and was buried in **Lahore** at the bank of **River Ravi**.

Famine stroke in **Kashmeer**.

1052H

Shalamar Bagh/Garden & Canal was completed in **Lahore**.

Taj Mahal was completed in 5 million Rupees at **Agra**.

1053H

Prince Aurangzeb isolated himself for worship.

1054H

King's eldest daughter Begum Sahiba's recovery of health was celebrated, and on her request **Prince Aurangzeb** came out from isolation.

1055H

Fort Ghamar was captured.

Janisar Khan was sent to **Iran** to congratulate **Shah Abbas Sani** on his being throned.

1056H

Prince Aurangzeb captured **Bulkh**.

1057H

Prince Aurangzeb returned back to **India** and **Qasim s/o Khusru** was made the **Governor of Bulkh**.

1049-1058H

Fort Shahjahan-abad was completed, so the **King** went to **Dehli** and entered the fort. The fort enclosed 50,000 persons all engaged in supplying the needs of his fabulously opulent court

1058H

Baqi Beg was made **Hakim of Gujrat**.

Jan Beg was made **Hakim of Orissa**.

Shah Abbas Sani-King of Iran captured **Fort of Qandhar**.

1059H

Prince Aurangzeb sieged **Fort of Qandhar**, but returned without any result.

1060H

Subhan Quli Khan arrested **Abdur Rahman-Ruler of Ghaur** and sent him to the **King**.

1061H

Saeed Khan-Ruler of Kabul died and **Lahar Asp** was sent in his place.

Prince Aurangzeb was sent to capture **Qandhar**.

1062H

Prince Aurangzeb sieged the fort but returned unsuccessful.

1063H

Raj Singh with the permission of **Prince Dara Shikoh** went to capture **Fort of Qandhar** but returned unsuccessful.

Ambassador of Sultan Rome came to the **King**.

1064H

Prince Shikoh was awarded with **Royal Dress**.

1066H

Jama Masjid Dehli was completed in one million rupees.

Rustam Khan was made the **Governor of Kabul**.

1067H

The King developed **Kashmeer**.

Fort Bedar & Kalyan was captured.

Prince Aurangzeb was awarded **Fort Ramgarh, Bedar** and its surrounding. **Bedar** name was changed to **Muzaffarabad**.

Prince Dara Shikoh was promoted and was given the **Province of Bihar**.

Jafar Khan was made **Chief Minister**.

Qasim Khan was made the **Governor of Ahmed Abad**.

Development in Religious Teachings

Lahore, Ahmed Abad, Dehli & Jonpur were the centers of **Religious Teachings**. Students from far places **Hirat, Badakhshan** etc. use to come for learning.

Hind/India was famous for higher studies in **Asia**.

Madrasa Shaikh Chilli was popular in **Thanisar**.

Mulla Abdullah's teaching was popular in **Bihar**.

Shaikh Abdul Haq Mohaddis Dehlvi was also very popular in **India**.

Entering of Hindu's in Islam

At the time of **Akbar** hindu muslim inter marriage took place. **Shahjahan** ordered separation of such marriages or the hindu may enter into Islam. Many of such hindu's became muslim.

Shahjahan made arrangements for teaching them **Islam**.

6-Mohiuddin Mohammed Aurangzeb Alamgeer(RA) s/o Shahjahan

1068H-1118H(1658-1706AD)=50 yrs.

Age- 91 yrs.

Birth- 1027H(1618AD)

Death- 1118H(1706AD) Buried in Daulatabad.

Capital- Dehli. Its population was 2 million.

Qualities

Mulla Abul Waiz Hargami taught him basic studies.

Maulvi Syed Mohammed Qannauji taught him knowledge & etiquette.

Maulana Abdul Lateef Sultanpuri, Mulla Mohiuddin Bihari, Mulla Jevan, Shaikh Abdul

Qavi & Saadullah Khan gave him complete religious knowledge.

He also obtained the knowledge of **Hadees, Tafseer & Fiqah**.

He always kept reading the books of **Imam Ghazali Ra, Shaikh Sharfuddin Munairi & Shaikh Sheerazi Ra**.

He became Hafiz-e-Quran in one year at the age of 45.

He also practiced arabic lettering from **Syed Ali Khan Hussaini**.

He was very pious & **God** fearing.

He hated songs & play and all types of enjoyments.

He always use to warn his family and courtiers from the wrath of **Allah and hellfire**.

He was expert in the **Jehad(Religious battle) activities**, like horse riding, arrow shooting, javelin throw, sword fighting & hunting etc.

Since He was a Prince he himself took care of his responsibilities.

His secret agents use to give him the informations of the cities.

He use to check the the rates of the goods daily.

He was genius, farsighted, brave, courageous & hard working.

He fought with the mad elephant.

He respected & honoured the religious scholars too much.

*He had good faith on the honourable **Shaikhs**.*

*He went to **Shaikh Saifuddin Sir Hindi Ra**, and took advice regarding creating love & connection with **Almighty Allah**.*

*He visited the tombs of **Shaikh Nizamuddin Aulia, Khwaja Outbuddin Bakhtiar Kaki & Shaikh Naseeruddin Chiragh Dehlvi Ra**, and gifted the caretaker of the tomb.*

He visited the tomb of his parents in Taj Mahal Agra.

Alamgeer's Daily Routine

*He use to get up early morning offer **Tahajjud prayer**. Go to the mosque offered **Fajar prayer** in congregation. Recited **Quran** and go through **Hadees**. Offered **Chasht prayer** and then remained in seclusion in his private room.*

*He use to have **Darbar Aam(General Court)**. Then **Darbar-e-Khas(Special Court)**.*

*Then he use to enter his family residence. Have lunch take rest. Get up and take bath. Go to mosque and offer **Zohar/Afternoon prayer** alongwith the scholars, shaikhs, ameers and others.*

*Then he use to prepare **caps** and write **Quran** to earn for his personal expense.*

He never took a single penny from the treasury for his personal expense.

*Then he use to offer **Asar prayer** and sit in the court and performed the kingdom affairs.*

*Then he use to offer **Maghrib prayer** alongwith the courtiers.*

*After **Isha prayer** use to enter his bedroom and go through the books of **Tafseer, Hadees, Fiqah & History**. After midnight took rest.*

*He use to follow the guidance and advice of **Shaikh Masoom**.*

*He always remained in **Wudhu/Ablution**.*

*His tongue was always busy in making **Zikr/Remembrance of Allah, ie. La-Ilaha Ilallah** etc.*

He regularly fasted 3 days every month on 13, 14 & 15, and 3 days every week, monday, thursday & friday.

*He use to wake up in **Ramadhan** after passage of 2/3rd night and remained busy in worship alongwith the scholars and pious shaikhs. Last 10 days he made **Itekaf(Remained secluded in masjid)**.*

*He use to send too much amount every year to **Kaaba/Baitullah**.*

Justice of Alamgeer

*The **Court of Alamgeer** was open for every body whether rich or poor. Justice was made without any consideration of status.*

*Once **Mirza Kam Bakhsh** beloved son of **Alamgeer** was arrested for favouring someone.*

Preparation of Fatawa Alamgeeri

***Alamgeer** was very pious & religious **Hanafi follower**. He had too much worry & concern to compile a book so that the muslims could follow the complete **deen/religion**. So he formed a committee of 10 scholars in the guardianship of **Mulla Nizam** to compile the book. A library full of books was donated specially for this purpose. **Alamgeer** himself use to go through the compilation day to day and give the final decision ater discussion.*

***Ultimately** the book named **Fatawa Alamgeeri** was prepared with the expenditure of 200,000 rupees. Now this book is included in the syllabus of all the **Madaris**.*

Following are the Scholars:-

Mulla Wajihuddin Soharwardi Chishti Gopamvi

Mulla Shaikh Ahmed bin Abdul Mansoor Khateeb Farooqi.

Mulla Mohammed Jameel Jonpuri.

Qazi Mohammed Hussain Jonpuri.

Mulla Hamid Jonpuri.

Shaikh Raziuddin Bhagalpuri.

Syed Akbar.

*Syedullah Khan.
Jalaluddin Mohammed.
Syed Nizamuddin Thatvi.
Mohammed Shafi.
Mohammed Akram.
Mohammed Ghaus.
Syed Madan.
Ghulam Mohammed.
Inayatullah.*

Alamgeer got it translated in Persian by Maulana Chalpi & Abdullah Roomi.

Army Inspection

Alamgeer use to inspect his 1 million army at the time of their Salat/Prayer.

He use to see the fights of the elephants.

Mercy & Kindness of Alamgeer

He generally use to forgive the faults of others.

He forgave his deadly enemy Sevajee.

He rarely gave order of assassination.

He was very kind to his public and always took care for the welfare and comfort of his public.

He use to take care of others than his ownself.

He was soft to the public but hard on the officials.

Incidence & Battles

Once Aurangzeb was fighting with Uzbuks in Badakhshan swords were shining and arrows were showering, Aurangzeb who was only 25 years of age started praying Zohar prayer in the battlefield, when the Uzbek Chief Abdul Aziz Khan saw this sight he was surprised and stopped the fight.

1657AD-Shahjahan became ill everyone was expecting his death, so Dara Shikoh brother of Aurangzeb fought with Aurangzeb to acquire the kingdom, but he was arrested and killed.

1658AD-Aurangzeb became the King, house arrested his father Shahjahan. After 8 years at the age of 77 in 1667AD.

1681AD-Aurangzeb went on fighting for 25 years against Daccan.

1686AD-He captured Bejapur.

1687AD-He captured Golkanda.

1688AD-Marhata power in the leadership of Sevajee was increasing day by day.

Kingdom of Aurangzeb Alamgeer

The kingdom of Alamgeer was greater than Akbar.

In the East entire Bengal. In the West Punjab, Afghanistan & Kashmeer upto Tibet.

West-East:-From Karachi to Asaam.

North-South:-From Himalya mountains to Indian Ocean.

Reforms in Kingdom

Courts were established, judges, lawyers were appointed.

Music, songs, dances and all other unlawful acts were totally stopped.

Security measures were adopted on the roads and highways to protect the travelers from robbers thieves & dackoits.

140,000 rupees were fixed for poor fund.

Temple Kashi of Shevnath in Banaras which was the center of usury & adultery was dismantled. Later law was passed that no other temples will be dismantled.

Industrial Development

Indian trade and business was greater than any biggest European country.

Only one business man Abdul Ghafoor of Surat income was more than the income of entire East India Company.

Taxation System

Zakat/Charity from muslims and **Jizya/Tax** from non-muslims were collected by the government.

Religious Affairs

The kingdom was Islamic but the hindu's and other religions had full liberty to perform their religious worships. Hindu's burnt their deads but their wives were not allowed to be burnt alive.

Scholars & Shaikhs

Mofassereen:-Shaikh Ghulam Naqshbandi Lakhnavi.--1126H.

Shaikh Mulla Ahmed Jevan Methvi.--1138H.

Maulana Nooruddin.--1155H.

Mohadiseen:-Shaikh Noorul Haq bin Shaikh Abdul Haq Dehlvi.--1173H.

Haji Sibghatullah Khairabadi.--1157H.

Qazi:- Abdul Wahab.--1087H.

Shaikhul Islam Qazi Sadruddin Hargami.

Shahabuddin Gopamvi--1130H.

Mufti:- Qazi Ahmed Bihari.

Askar Shahi.

Development in Religious Teachings

Government & Private Madaris/Religious Schools were opened in each and every locality which was funded by the **government**. **Properties** were awarded to the big scholars to give them relief from the worldly needs so that they may totally devote themselves for teaching.

Alamgeer awarded the private madaris with funds from the treasury of the kingdom.

Few of the Madaris of Great Famous Shaikhs:-

Shah Abdur Rahim Dehlvi-Madarsa Rahimia-Dehli.

Mulla Zahid bin Aslam-Agra.

Shah Ghulam Naqshband Lakhnavi.

Mulla Jevan Amethvi.

Syed Outbuddin.

Habib Katu Kashmeeri.

Syed Mubarak Bilgrami.

Shaikh Mohammed Afzal Hahabadi.

Darul Uloom Firangi Mahal Lakhnow

Famous Darul Uloom of Hind from where Madrasa Nizamia started by **Mulla Outubuddin.**

After his martyrdom **Alamgeer** awarded his two sons with buildings and properties in 1105H.

His younger son Mulla Nizamuddin started his teaching and gained the popularity in the name of **Madrasa Nizamia** and the syllabus called **Dars-e-Nizami** is still being learned throughout this sub-continent. Hundreds of scholars from this family till now continued teaching in this madrasa and thousands of students after getting trained from this madrasa have spread each & every corner of **Hind** and **lightened** the **sub-continent**, with the **light of Islamic teaching.**

Following are the famous scholars:-

Mulla Nizamuddin.

Maulana Bahrul Uloom Abdul Ali.

Maulana Abdul Waali.

Maulana Abdul Hakeem.

Mulla Hassan.

Mulla Hussain.

Maulana Abdul Hye Firangi Mahli.

7-Shah Alam Bahadur Shah s/o Aurangzeb

1118H-1123H(1706-1711AD)=5 yrs.

Age- 73 yrs.

Birth- 1050H(1640AD).

Death- 1123H(1711AD). Body was buried in **Outub Saheb-Shahjahan Abad**.

Capital- Dehli.

Qualities

He became **Hafiz Quran** in childhood.

He learned **Hadees & Fiqah** and became **Faqih**.

He was very fond of reading religious books.

He worshiped at night, offered nafil salat, made zikr of **Allah**, **recited Quran** and studied books of **Tafseer, Hadees, Fiqah & pious ones**.

He remained in the court like kings but wore simple dress in the house.

He offered 5 times prayer in congregation.

He lead the prayers on **Fridays & holidays**.

His recitation of Quran was so pleasing that even the arabs use to enjoy.

Incidence & Battles

He had to fight with his brothers and defeated them all, some of them were killed.

1707AD-He crushed the revolts of **Rajput**.

He crushed the riots by the Sikh.

8-Jahandar Shah s/o Bahadur Shah

1123H-1124H(1712-1713AD)= 1 yr.

Age-

Birth-

Death- 1124H.

Mazuddin fought with his 3 brothers, killed them and became the king and adopted the title of **Jahandar Shah**.

9-Farukh Sair s/o Azeemushan s/o Moazzam s/o Aurangzeb

1124H-1131H(1713-1719AD)= 7 yrs.

Age-

Birth-

Death- 1131H.

Farukh Sair defeated **Jahandar Shah** killed him and became king.

Farukh Sair was killed by **Hassan Ali & Abdullah**.

Hassan Ali crushed the revolt by **Ajeet Singh**.

10-Nasiruddin Mohammed Shah s/o Bahadur Shah

1131H-1161H(1719-1749AD)=30 yrs.

Age- 75 yrs.

Birth- 1114H.

Death- 1749H.

Incidence

1719AD-Chela Ram Nagar revolted in **Ilahabad** but soon after died in the disease of paralysis.

1724AD-Nizamul Mulk captured **Daccan** and became the **Ruler of Daccan**.

The kingdom was shattered riots & revolts started in the entire kingdom. **Marhata & Sikh** started gaining strength.

Marhata attacked on **Dehli** but was defeated.

Nadir Shah

Nadir Shah captured **Khurasan, Hirat, Qandhar**.

Nadir Shah sent his messenger to **King Mohammed Shah** but he was busy in enjoying wine & women. So he attacked on **Hind/India**, crossed **Indus River** and advanced towards **Punjab**, captured **Lahore** and attacked on **Dehli**.

Burhanul Mulk traitor went to **Nadir Shah**. Meanwhile **King Mohammed Shah** sent **Asif Jah** to **Nadir Shah**. Both of them spoke to **Nadir Shah** and he agreed to return back on payment of **Rupees 20,000,000**.

Asif Jah went back to the **King** and gave the report. **King Mohammed Shah**. He honored him with the title of **Ameerul Umaraee and treasures**.

When **Burhanul Mulk traitor** came to know he just made **Nadir Shah** to attack on **Dehli**. **Nadir Shah** killed about 30,000 of the Royal army. Ultimately **Asif Jah** spoke to **Nadir Shah** for peace.

Nadir Shah returned back with **Taus throne** which valued Rs. 70,000,000, **Jewels** which valued 250,000,000, hundreds of elephants and Royal horses, all types of technical persons and **Hakeem Alvi Khan**.

The kingdom was now ruined, army was destroyed, treasury was emptied, western part of **River Sind** was also captured by the **Iranians**.

Sikhs & Raja's captured **Sir hind**.

Marhata's captured **Southern & Western provinces** and started attacking on **Bihar, Bengal and Urissa**.

Ali Mohammed Khan Rohela captured the portion at the junction of **Ganga & Jamna**.

Saadat Ali Khan captured **Awadh**.

Ali Wardi Khan captured **Bengal**.

Asif Jah Nizamul Mulk captured **Daccan**.

Development in Religious Teachings

Nawab Sharfuddaula Iradat Khan constructed a **Madrasa** in **Dehli** in 1125H and adjacent a mosque also.

Maulana Nooruddin Ahmedabadi constructed a **Madrasa** in **Gujrat**.

Kingdom treasury was empty therefore the rich religious & pious persons were running the **Madaris** successfully.

Shah Waliullah Mohaddis Dehlvi Ra maintained his father's **Shah Abdur Raheem** madrasa and Islamic teaching continued by him and his descendants like, **Shah Abdul Aziz, Shah Mohammed Ishaq, Shah Abdul Qadir etc.** and Islamic education reached in all the four corners of **Hind/India**.

Madrasa Nizamia.

Qazi Shahabuddin bin Mohammed Hassan Adhami established **Madrasa Shahabia**.

Hamdullah Sandelvi student of **Mulla Nizamuddin** established madrasa in **Sandela** near **Lukhnow**.

Qazi Mubarak bin Daim Adhami established madrasa in **Dehli**.

11-King Ahmed Shah s/o Mohammed Shah

1161H-1167H(1749-1754AD)=6 yrs.

Age-

Birth-

Death-

Ahmed Shah gave the important positions of the kingdom to the six sons of **Asif Jah** and was engaged in **luxuries & enjoyment**.

Ahmed Shah & Wazeerul Mulk Safdar Jang kept on fighting each other. Ultimately **Safdar Jang** was defeated. **Aaqibat Mahmood** became wazer. He consulted the scholars and overthrew the **King** and throned **Sultan Azeezuddin bin Mazuddin** entitled with **Alamgeer Sani**.

12-Alamgeer Sani s/o Jahandar Shah(Sultan Azizuddin bin Mazuddin)

1167H-1172H (1754-1759AD)=5 yrs.

Age-

Birth-

Death-1173H.

Kingdom

Alamgeer Sani kingdom were some provinces at the junction of **Ganga & Jamna River** and in the south several provinces at **Satlaj River**.

-**Gujrat** was in the hands of **Marhata**.

-**Bengal, Bihar & Urissa** were in the control of the descendants of **Ali Wardi Khan**.

-**Awadh** was under the control of **Safdar Jang**.

-**Central junction of Ganga & Jamna** was being ruled by **Bangash tribe**.

-**Rohail Khand** was the property of **Hafizul Mulk, Hafiz Rahmat Khan, Nawab Donda Khan, Nawab Najeebuddaula & Nawab Mohammed Ali Khan**.

-**Punjab** was with **Ahmed Shah Durrani**.

-**Daccan** was under dispute with the sons of **Nizamul Mulk**.

-**British traders** were also looking for availing the chance of capturing some territory.

Muslim leaders were fighting with each other, with the result **Marhatta's and Sikhs** got the chance to attack on muslims.

1762AD-Marhata's attacked with 500,000 army. **Shah Waliullah Ra.** wrote letter to **Ahmed Shah Abdali**, and also wrote letter to **Najeebuddaula** to call **Ahmed Shah** to crush the **Marhata's**. He also gave the glad tiding of the victory to the muslims.

Ahmed Shah arranged his **40,000 army** against **500,000 army of Marhata's** in the battlefield of **Panipath**, and he himself stood up praying in front of **Almighty Allah**. After fierce fighting muslims became victorious. About **200,000 Marhata army** was killed in the battlefield, the rest fled away, **Afghan army** followed them and killed hundreds of them. Thousands of them died in falling in the trenches. Women and children were arrested. **20,000 Afghan army** was also martyred.

A huge amount of booty was obtained, thousands of camels loaded with valuable goods, thousands of **horses, cattle**, plenty of **elephants** and **weapons** were obtained.

After the victory **Ahmed Shah** stayed for few days in **Dehli** and handed over the power to **King Mohammed Shah Alam Sani** and returned back to **Qandhar**.

13-Jalaluddin Mohammed Shah Alam Sani s/o Azizuddin Alamgeer sani

1172H-1221H(1759-1806AD)=49 yrs.

Age- 81 yrs.

Birth- 1140H.

Death- 1221H.

Wazeer:-Shujauddaula.

Ameerul Umara:-Najeebuddaula.

Qualities

He was fond of gaining knowledge.

He learnt **Arabic, Persian, Turkish & Sanskrit**.

He had connection with pious **Shaikhs**.

He made bait with **Syed Mohammed Durvash**, also benefitted with **Maulana Fakhruddin**.

East India Company

Britisher's established this company at the time of **King Farukh Sair** and purchased 38 villages in **Bengal** and also got permission to trade without taxation with the signature of the **President** of the company. Internally the company started conspiracy against the muslim rulers. When **Nawab Sirajuddaula** became the **Nazim of Bengal**, **Britisher's** became against him and with the help of **Nawab Karnatak** attacked on **Nawab Sirajuddaul**. He defeated the **Britisher's**.

Britisher's signed a treaty with **Nawab Sirajuddaula** on the basis of previous contract.

After sometimes **Britisher's** conspired and made pact with **Mir Jafar traitor** son-in-law of **Ali Wardi Khan** to make him **Nazim of Bengal**.

Nawab Sirajuddaul was unaware of this conspiracy. **Britisher's** attacked on **Nawab Sirajuddaul** and in the battlefield **Mir Jafar** betrayed and joined the **Britisher's**, due to which

Nawab Sirajuddaula was defeated and killed. Since then the **Britisher's** got hold in **Begal** and started dreaming for controlling the **Government of Hind/India**.

1761AD-Mir Jafar was arrested by the **Company** and his son-in-law was made **Nazim of Bengal**.

1761AD-King defeated **Raja Ram Narayn** but later the **Company** sent his army and after fierce fighting and killing the **King** had to surrender in **Patna**. **King** left for **Allahabad** on the request call by **Shujauddaula & Najeebuddaula**.

Battle of Baksar

1764AD-The King, Shujauddaula and Raja of Banaras fought with huge army with the **Company army** too many **Britisher's** were killed, but when the battle was about to won **Raja of Banaras** betrayed and joined the **Company army**. **Shujauddaula** flew away to **Nawabs of Rohail Khand** and the **King** handed himself to the **Britisher's**. This victory changed the fate of **India**, now the **Britisher's** who came for trade now became the **Ruler of three big provinces**.

Shujauddaula made peace treaty with the **Britisher's** on handing over **Allahabad & Shahjahan-abad** to **King Shah Alam Sani**.

1765AD-Mir Jafar traitor died, the **Company** made his son **Najmuddaula, Nazim of Bengal**.

Shah Alam ruled in **Allahabad** and **Shujauddaula** use to give him **Rs. 1,800/- per month** for his needs. 7 years he remained in **Allahabad** enjoying luxuries.

1771AD-King Shah Alam came to **Dehli**. **Najeebuddaula** died so the **Marhata's** welcomed the **King** and made plan to rule on entire **Hind** with the help of the **King**.

1772AD-Nawab Zabta Khan was hinderance for the **Marhata's** so they defeated him with the help of **King** and like this **Ghaus garh & Saharanpur** was captured.

1776AD-Najaf Khan Irani(Shiya) was brave, he entered in the army of **King**. He defeated the **Jat's** and then the joint force of **Sikh's & Roheela's**. **Nawab Zabta Khan** surrendered.

King gave the title of **Ameerul Umara** to **Najaf Khan**. Now he started preaching **shiyaism** and **Islamic Identity** started perishing, immodesty became common.

1781AD-Mirza Najaf Khan crushed the revolts of **Sikh's** and again the territory upto **Lahore** came under **Moghal Kingdom**.

1782AD-Mirza Najaf Khan died and the **Moghal Kingdom** was shattered. **The King** again came under the control of **Marhata's**.

1785AD-Nawab Zabta Khan died and his son **Nawab Ghulam Qadir** defeated the **Marhata's** and captured **Dehli**. He became the **Ameerul Umara**. **The Umara of the Moghal kingdom** was against the **King** because of his stupidity. They all helped **Nawab Ghulam Qadir**.

1787AD-Nawab Ghulam Qadir captured **Dehli, Fort of Aligarh**, then he had to return to **Saharanpur** because the **Sikhs** again revolted.

1788AD-Ghulam Qadir came back to **Dehli**, all the **Umara** and **Royal army** supported him, seeing this **Shah Alam** again made him **Ameerul Umara**.

Shah Alam was again & again supporting the **Marhata's** so he was dismissed and **Bedar Bakht s/o Ahmed Shah** was throned. **Marhata's** with the support of the **King** again revolted. **Ghulam Qadir** with anger tortured the **King's** family and took out the eyes of the **King**.

1789AD-The courtiers became against **Ghulam Qadir** on this cruelty. **The Marhata's** got the opportunity and killed **Ghulam Qadir** into pieces and like this he got martyrdom.

1803AD-The Marhata's after passage of time house arrested the **King**. **The 5th wife of King Shah Alam** advised him to take help from the **Britisher's**. **King** wrote letter to **Lord Valesly** for help, which was immediately accepted because the **Britisher's** feared that the **French** may not favour the **King**. **British Governor General** sent his **Commander-in-Chief** with the letter that we are always ready to help you, if you come under our protection, the **British Government** will maintain your honour and dignity and will give an handsome amount for you and your family which will be acceptable to you. **The King answered that my excellency is ready to come under protection of British Government**.

1803AD-British Commander-in-Chief General Lord Lake fought bravely & fiercely against the **Marhata's & French army General Yukeen** and got victory.,

Lord Lake came to **King** and gave glad tiding of freedom from **Marhata's. Zubdatunnisa wife of the King** said that **Shah** is wishing you success and awarding you title of **Farzand Dilband(beloved son)**. **Lord Lake** took off his cap and saluted and thanked for the award of the title. **The British Brigade** gave **Guard of Honour** to the **King**. Then the **King** entered the fort with grace & dignity and Manifested on the throne.

13th Sept. 1803AD-Commander-in-Chief General Lord Lake with his army entered the **Capital Dehli**, people welcomed him. The **General** consoled & satisfied the public. **Commander-in-Chief** left **Dehli** and **Lt. Colonel Akarloni** the **Deputy Joint General** was deputed as **Resident of Moghal Kingdom** by the **British Government**.

1804AD-Revari was captured by **British army**. **King** congratulated the **Commander-in-Chief** and honored him with special titles.

1805AD-King was informed about the terms & conditions between the **British Government** and the **King** which was as follows:-

1-The surrounding territory of **Dehli** on the right bank of **Jamna River** will be for the needs of the **Royal family** and will be under the control of **Dehli Resident**, and governed according to **British rules** and signed by **Shah Alam**.

2-The **Civil & Criminal Court** in the territory given to the **King** will be ruled according to **Islamic laws** and punishment of sentenced to death will be given with the prior permission of the **King**. Cutting of any part of a body will be forbidden.

The **King** was a puppet of **British Government**.

Nov. 1806AD-He destroyed the **Moghal Kingdom** and died.

Scholars & Shaikhs

Shah Fakhruddin bin Shah Nizamuddin Aurangabadi- Birth-1126H. Death- 1199H.

Mazhar Jan-e-Jana bin Mirza Jan Dehlvi- Birth- Death- 1195H. Martyred by Mirza Najaf Khan

Irani.

Shah Abdul Aziz bin Shah Waliullah Dehlvi- Birth- 1159H. Death- 1239H.

Shah Rafiuddin " " " " Birth- Death- 1232H.

Shah Abdul Qadir " " " " Birth- Death- 1230H.

Shah Abdul Ghani " " " "

Hafiz Fakhruddin

Princess of Shah Alam

1-Prince Jahandar Shah

Deputy Ruler-1174H-1185H.

Age-39 yrs.

Birth-1162H.

Death-1201H.

14-Akbar Shah Sani s/o Shah Alam

1221H-1253H(1806-1837AD)=32 yrs.

Age-84 yrs.

Birth-1173H.

Death-1253H.

The Resident of the Company joined the celebration of the **King** being throned.

Gradually the honour and dignity of the King was ignored.

Religious Condition

Islamic Identities were finished. **Idolatory** ways & customs were introduced in the muslim society. **Innovations** were introduced in Islam.

Nikah/Islamic way of marriage was finished.

Khatna/Circumcision was stopped.

Taziyah procession in Moharram was taken out with pomp & show.

*Shah Mohammed Ismaeel Shaheed Ra, took the step against **Idolatory Customs & Innovations.***

*1824AD- Shah Ismaeel Shaheed made bayet with **Shah Ahmed Shaheed Barelvi Ra** and started preparing an army for **Jihad. Started Jihad movement via Thanesar, Malir, Kotla, Mamdot, Bhawalpur, Hyderabad Sindh, Khangarh to Qandhar, then to Kabul, via Khayber valley to Punjab. Several fights took place with the Sikhs. Sultan Mohammed Khan Pathan** betrayed. **Muslim army** came to **Balakot.***

Sardar Sher Singh** attacked with huge army the **Pathans** flew away with the fear of cannons, **Shah Ahmed Shaheed & Shah Ismaeel Shaheed** was martyred at **Balakot.

*1832AD-Dehli was taken away by the **Company.***

*1835AD-Currency was also coined in the name of the **Company.***

15-Bahadur Shah Zafar s/o Akbar Shah sani

1253H-1273H(1837-1857AD)=20 yrs.

Age-89 yrs.

Birth-1189H.

Death-1278H.

Qualities

He was a good Qari.

He learnt Arabic & Persian.

*He was very brave, expert in **archery, sword fighting, horse riding & elephant riding.***

He was a good poet.

He was religious & pious.

He was humble, polite and well behaved.

*He use to respect & regard the **Shaikhs.***

*He made bayt with a **Shaikh.***

*He himself use to take bayt and had several followers. The **Resident of the Company** passed a rule that no army officers will make bayt with the **Shah.***

He use to take care of his general public.

Daily Routine

*He use to get up at **Tahajjud** offered Nafil Salat and made Zikr of **Allah**, then took rest, then offered **Fajar Salat.** Then held the **Court** dealt with the political and public affairs. Then entered the harem in Palace, took lunch and rest. Then offered **Zohar Salat** and remained busy in remembrance of **Allah.** Then offered **Asar prayer.** Then held the **Cabinet meeting.** Then offered **Maghrib prayer** and took dinner. After offering **Isha prayer** went to bed.*

British Authority

*Since the **Battle of Plassy** the Britisher's were capturing the **Moghal Kingdom.** Day by day they were dominating and gaining control cunningly by causing the provinces to fight with each other and with the excuse of supporting the weak.*

*1854AD-The **British Lt. Governor** in his letter use to address the **Shah "May it please be noted your majesty"** and ended with **"Your majestys faithful servant"**. But on 22*

Aug. 1854

*Mr. **Calion, Lt. Governor of Agra** addressed the **Shah** with **"My dear Zafar"** and ended with **"Sincerely"**. This badly shocked the **Shah.***

*The **Shah** became too old and weak and was under the control of his wife **Zenat Mahal** and the **Wazeer Ahsanullah Khan** who was the agent of the **Britishers.***

*1856AD-**Shah** appointed his son **Prince Jawan Bakht** as heir to the throne, but next day the **Company** called the eldest son **Mirza Qavaish** and made him the **Successor** on condition that the title of **Shah** is abolished and will be called **Prince** only. The pension which was 125,000 will be reduced to 15,000 only.*

1857AD-The maternal grandson of Shah Abdul Aziz Ra, became fed up with the insults, hardships and interference in the religious affairs by the **British Government** and therefore announced the country of enemy and waged **war/Jehad** against infidel.

Maulvi Ahmedullah Shah took bayt with his followers to fight against the **Britishers**. He also gave training of fighting tactics to his followers. His speech was attended by thousands of hindu's and muslims. The 19th regiment of **British Indian army** became against the **Britishers**.

May 1857AD-The soldiers of the regiment revolted and killed the army officers, even the public came out and supported the soldiers. All of them came to **Dehli to Shah**.

Shah sat on the throne and formed a **Council to deal with the battle affairs**. **Mirza Jawan Bakht** was made the **Wazeer of War**.

Lord Hestings started siezing the properties of the leaders.

Royal Announcement

Announcement was made by the Shah that a Law of Justice is passed to stop killing of the Britishers and all the cases may be brought in the Court of Shah where justice will be done and no cruelty will be done to anyone.

There was no effect of this announcement on the general public. Looting and killing continued in the city under the leadership of rakish princess.

Leader of the Mujahideen Maulvi Syed Sarfraz Ali one of the follower of Syed Ahmed Shaheed Ra, was taking bayt for Jihad. One of the commissioned officer Bakht Khan took bayt and brought his artillery and 3 regiments to Dehli.

July 1857AD-Shah made General Bakht Khan his assistant and commander in chief. He lifted the tax on sugar & salt. He also announced that any prince seen looting, his nose will be cut.

The fatwa/sentence by Qazi was given for Jead by Maulana Fazlul Haq, people started coming from different cities to join in jihad.

General Bakht Khan started jihad and started defeating the Britishers at every battle.

Britishers bought Munshi Rajab Ali, Zeenat Mahal & Mirza Moghal. They blew up the magazine. Chaman Lal started sending and disclosing the schemes made by the General.

Prince Mirza Moghal and other princess started conspiracy against the General. Wherever the army was sent in the leadership of the princess, they came back defeated.

Defeat

The result of the conspiracy by Moghal princess and National traitors was that the victory by the muslims turned into defeat.

General Bakht Khan took away his confident persons and tried the Shah to take with him so that later jihad may be continued, but the Shah refused. The result was, Shah was arrested alongwith Mirza Jawan Bakht & Zeenat Mahal. The heads of all the princess were cut off and presented to the Shah.

This was the end of about 330 years of Moghal kingdom & about 880 years of Muslim Kingdom in Hind/India.

Jan.1858AD-The court gave the decision of exile to the Shah on accusation of Revolt, murder and provoking the army. So Shah was exiled to Rangoon where he died and buried in Nov.1862AD.

At his death he said a couplet which meant:-

How unfortunate is Zafar that he could not get a piece of land for his burial in his homeland.